Pageは通巻ページ数（各頁中央最下段にある）を示す。

No. 1.

PART SECOND:
PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ELEMENTS.

CHAPTER I.

General Introduction.

PAGE.

§ 1. Classses of Pronouns 155
§§ 2. Grammatical Forms of Pronouns 158
§§ 3. Uses of the Cases 159
§ 4. Syntax of Pronouns 169

CHAPTER II.

Personal Pronouns.

§ 1. First Personal Pronouns 172
§§ 2. Second Personal Pronouns 172
§§ 3. Third Personal Pronouns 173
§§ 4. Uses of "It" 174
§ 5. Reflexive Pronouns 181

CHAPTER III.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

§ 1. Definite Demonstratives 190
§§ 2. Indefinite Demonstratives 200
§§ 3. Indefinite Pronominals 209
§§ 4. Distributive Adjectives or Pronouns 214
§§ 5. Dual Adjectives or Pronouns 218
§§ 6. Alternative Adjectives or Pronouns 221
§ 7. Repetitive Pronouns 225

CHAPTER IV.

Relative Pronouns.

§ 1. "Who" and "Which" 231
§§ 2. "That" 236
§§ 3. Omission of the Relative 238
§§ 4. Omission of the Antecedent 239
§§ 5. "What" 240
§§ 6. "Whoever," "Whatever," "Whichever" 243
§§ 7. "As," "Than," and "But" 247
§ 8. Correlative Pronouns 251

PART FIFTH: VERBAL CONSTRUCTION. PAGE. 542

CHAPTER XVII.

Transitive and Intransitive.

§ 1. Transitive with Neuter Subject 542
§ 2. Transitive as Intransitive 544
§ 3. Intransitive as Transitive 552

CHAPTER XVIII.

Neuter Construction.

§ 1. Neuter Verbs of "Being" 564
§ 2. Neuter Verbs of "Becoming" 566
§ 3. Neuter Verbs of "Keeping" 566
§ 4. Neuter Verbs of "Proving" 567
§ 5. Idiomatic Combinations of Neuter Verbs and Complements 567

CHAPTER XIX.

Factitive Construction.

§ 1. The Factitive Verb "Make" 570
§ 2. Other Factitive Verbs of "Making" 572
§ 3. Verbs of Factitive Construction 572
§ 4. Factitive Verbs of Judgment 574
§ 5. Factitive Verbs of Designation and Declaration 575
§ 6. Idiomatic Combinations of Factitive Verbs and Complements 577
§ 7. Neuter and Factitive Counterparts 579
§ 8. Neuter and Factitive Equivalents 581

CHAPTER XX.

Dative Construction.

§ 1. Dative Verbs of "Giving" 584
§ 2. Dative Verbs of "Telling" and "Showing" 587
§ 3. Dative Verbs of "Rendering" 588
§ 4. Dative Verbs of "Winning" and "Losing" 588
§ 5. Occasional Datives 588
§ 6. Idiomatic Datives 589

CHAPTER XXI.

Passive Construction. PAGE.

§ 1. Passive with "Be" 592
§ 2. Absolute Passive 593
§ 3. Indirect Passive 595
§ 4. Reflexive Passive 596
§ 5. Idiomatic Passive 596

CHAPTER XXII.

Reflexive Construction.

§ 1. Permanent Reflexives 599
§ 2. Special Reflexives 600
§ 4. Reflexive and Non-Reflexive Uses of Certain Verbs 601
§ 5. Synonyms Reflexive and Non-Reflexive 602
§ 6. Idiomatic Reflexive with Complements 603

CHAPTER XXIII.

Impersonal Construction.

§ 1. True Impersonal Verbs 604
§ 2. Verbs of Impersonal Construction 605
§ 3. Impersonal Uses of "It is" 606
§ 4. "There is" 608

No. 2:

VERBS.

HIGHER ENGLISH LESSONS

No. 2—VERBS.

PART FIRST: GENERAL INTRODUCTION.

The study of Verbs resolves itself into two heads: —

I. **The Classes of Verbs,** under which head the subjects requiring special consideration are —

(*a*) **Auxiliary Verbs** (Part II.);
(*b*) **Verbal Constructions** (Part V.).

II. **The Grammatical Forms of Verbs,** under which head the subjects requiring special consideration are —

(*a*) **Verbs Finite: Mood and Tense** (Part III.);
(*b*) **Verbs Infinite: Infinitive, Participles, and Gerunds** (Part IV.).

CHAPTER I.

Classes of Verbs.

Verbs are classed —

(*a*) According to *Construction*, as —
  (α) **Transitive** and **Intransitive**;
  (β) **Complete** and **Incomplete**;
  (γ) **Personal** and **Impersonal**;

(*b*) According to *Function*, as —
  (δ) **Principal** and **Auxiliary**;

(*c*) According to *Use*, as —
  (ε) **Finite** and **Infinite.**

(*d*) According to *Form*, as —
  (ζ) **Regular** and **Irregular.**

§ 1. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.

Verbs are usually divided into two classes — those which take an object being called *Transitive*, while those which require no object are called *Intransitive*. But this classification is not an absolute one, as nearly every transitive verb may be used intransitively, and *vice versa*.

(1) **Transitive as Intransitive :** — For instance, such verbs as *eat, drink, see, hear, read, write, study, learn*, etc., are usually called Transitive ; but they may be used Intransitively without any object. Compare : —

Transitive : — They *ate the meat* and *drank the wine*.
Intransitive : — They *ate* and *drank* heartily.

Transitive : — They *sell the book* very dear.
Intransitive : — The book *sells* very well.

Transitive : — I *feed my horse* on corn and beans.
Intransitive : — The horse *feeds* on corn and beans.

[The subject will be treated of in Part V.]

(2) **Intransitive as Transitive :** — Again such verbs as *go, come, walk, run, stand, speak, talk, live, die*, etc., are usually called Intransitive ; but they may be used transitively with an object. Compare : —

Intransitive : — I am to *go* into business.
Transitive : — I am to *go shares* with my uncle.

Intransitive : — I manage not to *run* into debt.
Transitive : — I do not like to *run the risk*.

Intransitive : — My friend has *stood* by me.
Transitive : — His friendship has *stood* the test.

[The subject will be treated of in Part V.]

(3) **Either Transitive or Intransitive :** — Many Verbs of *Motion* and *Change*, may be used as either Transitive or Intransitive. Compare : —

Transitive : — The wind *moves* the ship.
Intransitive : — The ship *moves* on the waters.

Transitive : — They *stopped* the train.
Intransitive : — The train *stopped*.

Transitive : — One *turns* a wheel.
Intransitive : — A wheel *turns*.

[The subject will be treated of in Part V.]

(4) **Idiomatic Transitive Construction :** — In Japanese Transitive Verbs are not used with Neuter Subjects ; while, on the contrary, they may be used with any sort of subject in English. Compare : —

The wind *shook* the house. (風デ家ガ搖レタ)
The flood *carried away* the bridge. (洪水デ橋ガ落チタ)

EXERCISE : —*Translate the following, making use of Transitive Verbs.*

(1) 學問ヲスルト人ノ品格ヲ高メル (2) 風デ家ガ潰レタ (3) 熱ニ依リテ水ハ蒸氣ニ變ズル (4) 霜ノ爲ニ作物ガ害ヲ受ケタ (5) 屋根ニテ雨露ヲ凌グ (6) 其火事ニテ多クノ家ガ燒ケタ

Hence arises a Transitive Construction which must be rendered by means of the Japanese Intransitive. The Idiomatic Transitive Construction with Neuter Subjects is much used in English for the sake of brevity. Compare : —

Intransitive : — He has *become* rich by industry.
Transitive : — Industry has *made* him rich.

Intransitive : — What have you *come* here for ?
Transitive : — What has *brought* you here ?

Intransitive : — After an hour's walk, we *came* to.....
Transitive : — An hour's walk *brought* us to.....

Intransitive : — I *could not* start on account of the rain.
Transitive : — The rain *prevented* me from starting.

Intransitive : — We *can* predict the weather by means of the barometer.
Transitive : — The barometer *enables* us to predict the weather.

[The subject will be treated of in Part V.]

(5) **Forms of Transitive Verbs :** — Transitive Verbs have three constructions in their subjective and objective relations : —

(*a*) **Active** : — He *killed* his enemy.
(*b*) **Passive** : — He *was killed* by his enemy.
(*c*) **Reflexive** : — He *killed himself*.

(*a*) **ACTIVE FORM** : — This is the usual form of the Transitive Verb, with the Agent for its Subject.

(*b*) **PASSIVE FORM**: — When the Object of the Action is made the Subject of the Verb, the Transitive Verb is put in the Passive Form: —

We must *do* something.—Something must *be done.*
I will *pay* the money.— The money shall *be paid.*
I will *avenge* you.— You shall *be avenged.*

In Japanese, the Passive Form is not used with Neuter Subjects; but in English it may be used with any sort of subject: —

This book *is* much *read* in England.
A ship must *be built* of hard wood.
The answers must *be written* in English.

[The Passive Construction will be treated of in Part V.]

(*c*) **REFLEXIVE FORM**: — A Transitive Verb, when followed by a Reflexive Object, denotes an action which the Agent does to itself: —

To know oneself is a difficult thing.
Respect yourself, or no one else will respect you.
How did he *destroy himself?* Did he *hang himself* or *shoot himself?* — No, he *drowned himself* in a river.

Note 1: — The Reflexive Form may be regarded as either an Active or a Passive Form, and is called the Middle Voice in the Classical Languages: —

He *killed* himself.= He *was killed by* himself.

Note 2: — The Passive or Reflexive form of a Transitive Verb is equivalent in sense to the Corresponding Intransitive: —

To be made / *To make oneself* } = *to become.*

To be killed / *To kill oneself* } = *to die.*

To be raised / *To raise oneself* } = *to rise.*

Compare: —

{ He *was made* (= *became*) king.
{ He *made himself* (= *became*) king.

{ He *rose* (= *was raised*) to a high position.
{ He *rose* (= *raised himself*) by his own merit.

Note 3: — Hence arises the following difference of idiom: —

{ 彼ハ自分ノ働キデ陞ッタ
{ He *raised himself* by his own merit.

{ 君ハ勉強ガ過ギルト病氣ニナル
{ If you work too hard, you will *make yourself* sick.

{ 彼ハ勉強ニ依テ學者ニナッタ
{ He *made himself* a scholar by dint of application.

Note 4: — There are some Transitive Verbs in English which have no Corresponding Intransitives, as — *to revenge* (讐ヲ報ユル), *to content* (人ヲ滿足サセル), etc. If we want to express an intransitive meaning (復讐スル滿足セル etc.) with such verbs, we must make use of either the passive or the reflexive form: —

{ He resolved *to be revenged.*
{ He resolved *to revenge himself.*

{ How can you *be contented* with such a small income?
{ How can you *content yourself* with such a small .....?

{ He *was addicted* to drinking.
{ He *addicted himself* to drinking.

Explain why the Verb is used in the reflexive form in the following: —

How do they *amuse themselves* on board ship? I have *enjoyed myself* very much to-day. The defeated general *concealed himself* in a deserted cottage If you *overwork yourself*, you will *make yourself* sick. He *makes himself* sick by *overeating himself*. Having no other resource, I *betook myself* to teaching. A good opportunity *presented itself*. You need not *make yourself* uneasy about the matter. You need not *give yourself* such trouble. You may *spare yourself* the trouble. When I woke up, I *found myself* lying on the floor. It is no use trying to *excuse yourself*.

[The Reflexive Construction will be treated of in Part V.]

(6) **Kinds of Transitive Verbs**: — There are three classes of Transitive Verbs — *Dative*, *Factitive*, and *Causative* — which are of constructive importance: —

(*a*) **DATIVE VERBS**: — Some Transitive Verbs take Two Objects, as —

	(I.)	(II.)
Give	.....the devil.....	.....his due.
Tell	.....us.....	.....a story.

The first is the *Indirect* or *Personal Object* (誰ニ), and the second is the *Direct* or *Neuter Object* (何ヲ). This being most frequently the case with the verb *give* and others of like meaning, the Indirect Object is called the Dative (or *Giving*) Case in most languages; and Transitive Verbs taking the Indirect Object may be called Dative Verbs.

The Indirect Object usually shows a relation which may be expressed by means of the preposition *to*: —

Give *me* the book. = Give the book *to me*.
He sent *me* a present. = He sent a present *to me*.
Tell *us* a story. = Tell a story *to us*.

The Indirect Object sometimes shows a relation which may be expressed by means of the preposition *for*: —

I'll make *you* a kite. = I'll make a kite *for you*.
I'll buy *you* a bycicle. = I'll buy a bycicle *for you*.
Get *me* a ticket. = Get a ticket *for me*.

Note 1: — When either the Direct or the Indirect Object is a pronoun, it is placed before the noun; when both are pronouns, the Direct Object is placed first. When the Indirect Object is to be emphasized, it is placed last, whether it be a noun or a pronoun. Compare: —

I gave *the man* the letter (or *to the man*).
I gave *him* the letter.
I gave it *to the man*. I gave it (*to*) *him*.

I gave *him* the letter.
I gave the letter *to him*, not *to his brother*.

Note 2: — There are several verbs to which the Dative Construction gives a new meaning. Compare: —

I will *save* you.
I will *save you* the trouble.

What did you *give* for your horse?
What did you *give him* for his trouble?

EXERCISE: — *Explain the difference in meaning and construction.*

1. I *owe* you everything.
   I *owe* everything to you.
2. Wine will *do* you harm.
   The frost will *do* harm to the crops.
3. I can *refuse* him nothing.
   To such a man, I can *refuse* nothing.

4. His uncle *left* the matter to him.
   His uncle *left* him his property.
5. He has *left* you something.
   He has *left* something for you.
6. I *wrote* him a note.
   I *wrote* a letter for him.
7. I *read* the letter to him.
   I *read* the letter for him.
8. I want to *ask* you a question.
   I want to *ask* a favour of you.
9. I *threw* the dog a bone.
   I *threw* a stone at the dog.
10. They *deny* the truth.
    They *deny* me justice.
11. I will *spare* you.
    I will *spare* you the trouble.

[The Dative Construction will be treated of in Part V.]

(*b*) **FACTITIVE VERBS**: — Some Transitive Verbs require something besides the object to make any sense, as —

He *made* her.....

The verb *make* is here used as an Incomplete Transitive Verb, and requires some noun or adjective to complete the sense. The noun or adjective used to complete the sense of the verb is its complement: —

He *made* her *his wife*.
He *made* her *happy*.

Verbs used as Incomplete Transitive Verbs generally denote some mode of *making*, and are therefore called Factitive (or *Making*) Verbs: —

I have *named* him *John*, but they *call* him *Jack*.
They *appointed* him *governor*.
They *elected* Washington *president*.
They *crowned* Edward *king*.

[There are several verbs of Factitive Construction, but not of Factitive Meaning, which will be treated of in Part V.]

(*c*) **CAUSATIVE VERBS**: — Transitive Verbs are mostly causative in sense: —

To send = *to cause to go*.
To bring = *to cause to come*.
To leave = *to cause to remain*.

Compare: —

I will *send* him to school.
I will *let* or *make* him *go* to school.

Bring him here. *Take* me with you.
Let him *come* here. *Let* me *go* with you.

There are a few pairs of Corresponding Transitives and Intransitives, which are derived from the same root. In these cases, it is always the Transitive or Causative Verb that is derived from the Intransitive Root.

Intransitive Root.	*Transitive or Causative.*
To Sit.....	**To Set** (= *cause to sit*) **To Seat** (= *cause to sit*)
To Lie.....	**To Lay** (= *cause to lie*)
To Rise.....	**To Raise** (= *cause to rise*) **To Rouse** (= *cause to rise or wake*)

A hundred people can *sit* in this room.
This room can *seat* a hundred people.

I *sit* down.
I *set* a book on the shelf.

I *lie* down.
I *lay* a book down on the table.

The prices *rise*.
They *raise* the prices.

I *rise*,.....
.....when the sun *rouses* me from my torpor.

A tree *falls*.
A woodman *fells* a tree.

Note 1 : — The Reflexive or Passive of a Causative Verb is equivalent in meaning to the Intransitive Verb from which it is derived : —

I *seated myself* (= *sat down*) by the fire.
I *was seated* (= *was sitting*) by the fire.

He *was raised* (= *rose*) to a high position.
He *raised himself* (= *rose*) by his own merit.

EXERCISE : — *Substitute the Passive or Reflexive of the Causative.*

Please *sit down*. They *were sitting* on a bank. The teacher *sat down* by me, and began to examine me. He *has risen* by his own exertions. The other *has risen* to his present position his uncle's influence. She *lay down* never to rise again. The prices *have risen*. On my entrance, he *rose up* in his bed. The corpse *lay* on the floor.

Note 2 : — The Intransitives, being root-words, all belong to the Old or Irregular Conjugation ; while the Causatives, being derivatives, belong to the New or Regular Conjugation.

Intransitive.			*Causative.*		
Rise	rose	risen	Raise	raised	raised
			Rouse	roused	roused
Sit	sat	sat	Set	set	set
			Seat	seated	seated
Lie	lay	lain	Lay	laid	laid

EXERCISE : — *Supply the correct forms.*

(*a*) **Rise, raise** : The price of rice has —. They have — the price of rice. The price has been —. He has — to a high position. He has — himself by his own merit. When I entered, she — up in her bed. She — herself up in her bed. He has — in the world.

(*b*) **Sit, set, seat** : Please — down. Please be —. He — down by the fire. He — himself by the fire. He was — by the fire.Please — still. I — the basket on the ground, and — myself on a bank. I have — here all the morning. I have — the book on the shelf. We were — round the fire. Do not — up for me. I was very busy, and — up all night.

(*c*) **Lie, lay** : Tired with toil, I — down to sleep. I — myself down to sleep. He has — down. He has — himself down. I have — the book on the table. This book has — here since yesterday. A man — by the roadside. He must have — there all night. Hadn't you better — down and rest a while? She — the child in the bed, and — down beside it. The men are — idle. The rails are not yet — .

Note 3 : — There are some other causative verbs derived from intransitive roots ; but they are of minor importance, as they do not admit of interchangeable use : —

Fall.....**fell** (= *cause to fell*).
Dive.....**dip** (= *cause to dive*).
Drip.....**drop** (= *cause to drip*).
Drink.....**drench** (= *cause to drink*).
Suck.....**soak** (= *cause to suck*).
Quail.....**quell** (= *cause to quail*).
Etc. *etc.*

§ 2. Complete and Incomplete Verbs.

Most Intransitive Verbs make complete sense by themselves, without having any word added to them. Such are Complete Intransitive Verbs : —

Animals and plants *live*, *grow*, and *die*.

(1) **Neuter Verbs :** — Verbs like *be* and *become* do not make any sense by themselves (he *is*... he has *become*...), unless they have some word (usually a noun or an adjective) added to them, as —

He *is rich*. He *is a merchant*.
He has *become* (*a*) *rich* (*merchant*).

These verbs are not transitive, since a transitive verb takes an object, which denotes something distinct from the subject ; while the noun or adjective coming after *be* or *become* describes the subject. They are words necessary to the sense ; without them the sense is incomplete.

Such verbs as *Be* or *Become* are therefore Incomplete or *Neuter* Verbs, and the noun or adjective which completes the sense is a Complement.

Other incomplete verbs denote different modes of *being* or *becoming :* —

(*a*)
- He *sat* silent. = He *was* silent as he sat.
- He *stood* idle. = He *was* idle as he stood.
- He *lay* motionless. = He *was* motionless as he lay.

(*b*)
- She *looks* healthy. = She *is* healthy-looking.
- It *sounds* stange. = It *is* strange to the ear.
- The wine *tastes* sour. = It *is* sour to the taste.
- The violet *smells* sweet. = It *is* sweet to the smell.
- Velvet *feels* smooth. = It *is* smooth to the feel.

(*c*)
- He *seems* glad. = It seems that he *is* glad.
- He *appears* sorry. = It appears that she *is* sorry.

(*d*)
- He has *grown* old. = He has *become* old.
- He *gets* angry at trifles. = He *becomes* angry at trifles.
- The man *turned* pale. = He suddenly *became* pale.
- The man *fell* sick. = He *became* sick.
- The man *went* mad. = He *became* mad.
- The dog *ran* mad. = It *became* mad.

(2) **Factitive Verbs :** — The Neuter or Incomplete Intransitive Verbs have their Transitive Equivalents in the Factitive or Incomplete Transitive Verbs.

Verbs of Factitive Construction correspond in meaning to either *Be* or *Become :* —

- He has *become rich* by diligence.
- Diligence has *made* him *rich*.

- The school *is open*.
- We *have* the school *open*.

- I *kept awake* all night.
- What *kept* you *awake* ?

- The book *is interesting*.
- I *find* the book *interesting*.

- The door *is open*.
- I have *left* the door *open*.

- They say that he *is a scholar*.
- They *call* him *a scholar*.

- I thought that he *was a fool*.
- I *thought* him *a fool*.

(3) **Syntax of Incomplete Verbs :** — The Complement of an Incomplete Verb may be —

(*a*) **A Noun or Pronoun** : — The sun is *a ball* of fire.
(*b*) **An Adjective** : — The sun is *hot*.
(*c*) **An Adverb** : — The sun is *up*.
(*d*) **A Phrase** : — The sun is *in the sky*.
(*e*) **An Infinitive** : —The sun appears *to move round the earth*.
(*f*) **A Clause** : — The old belief was *that it moved round the earth*.

The Complement of a Neuter Verb is called a Nominative Complement, because it denotes the same person or thing as the Subject, which it describes : —

- *She* became *his wife*.
- *She* became *happy*.

The Complement of a Factitive Verb relates to the object, which it describes, and is therefore called an Objective Complement : —

- He made *her* — *his wife*.
- He made *her* — *happy*.

The Passive of the Factitive takes a Nominative Complement, and is called an Incomplete Passive Verb.

- *She* was made *his wife*.
- *She* was made *happy*.

RULE I. — *The Pronoun Complement of the Verb "Be" must be in the Same Case* [*Nominative or Objective*] *as the word it describes.*

{ I thought that *it* was *he*. / I thought *it* to be *him*. } { *It* proved to be *he*. / We found *it* to be *him*. }

RULE II. — *An Incomplete Verb must not be followed by an Adverb where an Adjective ought to be used.*

EXERCISE : — *Correct mistakes, if any.*

Who are you? — It's me. Was it Mr. Ito that called this morning? — I thought it to be him, but it does not appear to have been him. He looks haughtily. He looked haughtily around. Flags are hoisted, and the town looks gaily. The child seems sickly. You will find your task quite easily. I think I can find the place easily. This wine taste badly. I felt very lonely. What makes you feel so badly? His voice sounded harshly. The expression sounds strangely. The trumpet sounded loudly. He turned deadly pale at the news. I felt very gladly when I heard the news. I felt so poorly that I could not attend to my duties. The dish smells nicely.

[Incomplete Verbs will be treated of in Part V.]

§ 3. Personal and Impersonal Verbs.

An Impersonal Verb is one that denotes an action which can not be attributed to any definite agent, and is consequently used with the indefinite pronoun *it* as subject : —

(*a*) **To Rain :** — *It* never *rains* but it pours.
(*b*) **To Snow :** — *Does it snow* much in the Hokkaido?
(*c*) **To Thunder :** — *It thundered* last night.

There are many expressions that are used with *it* as subject, which refers vaguely to *the weather, the time, the distance,* etc. Such are verbs of impersonal construction : —

Is it raining still? *It is clearing up. It is getting* warmer. *It was getting* late. *It grows* light or dark. *It was blowing* a gale. *It fell* a dead calm. *It is getting* cold; *it froze* last night.

What time *is it?* *It is* past ten. *It has struck* twelve. *It is* time to go to bed. *It was* midnight, and all was still. *It was* Sunday, and there was no school. *It is* never too late to mend.

How far *is it* from here to Ōji? *It is* a pretty long way from here.

There are a few verbs which may be used either *personally* or *impersonally* : —

{ *Personal* : — *He is* well. / *Impersonal* : — *It is* well *with him.*
{ *Personal* : — *He fared* well (*or* ill). / *Impersonal* : — *It fared* well (*or* ill) *with him.*
{ *Personal* : — *I took* long to master English. / *Impersonal* : — *It took me* long to master English.

Again, some verbs have their Impersonal Equivalents in other verbs of like meaning : —

{ *Personal* : — *I gave* fifty yen for this book. / *Impersonal* : — *This book cost* me fifty yen.
{ *Personal* : — *I think* that he is honest. / *Impersonal* : — *It seems* (*to me*) that he is honest.
{ *Personal* : — *I do not care* whether I succeed or not. / *Impersonal* : — *It does not matter* (*to me*) whether I....

Note : — As there are Idiomatic Impersonal Constructions in English, so there are Idiomatic Personal Expressions which must be rendered into Impersonal Japanese : —

{ *We have* fine weather to-day. / *It is* fine weather to-day.
{ *We have* no school to-morrow. / *There is* no school to-morrow.
{ *We had* something *happen.* / .....Something *happened.*

§ 4. Auxiliary and Principal Verbs.

The Verb to which an Auxiliary Verb is joined, is called a Principal Verb, and is either an Infinitive (without *To*) or a (Present or Past) Participle.

An Auxiliary Verb is joined to another verb, to help it express some meaning which the verb can not express by itself. For instance, a verb can express past time by changing its own form, but not future time, which latter must be expressed by help of the auxiliary verb *shall* or *will.*

The chief auxiliary verbs are —

(*a*) **Do** : — *Do* you know him? I *do* not know him.

(*b*)
- **Shall** : — I hope I *shall* succeed.
- **Will** : — I hope you *will* succeed.
- **May** : — Perhaps you *may* succeed.
- **Can** : — You *can* not succeed without perseverance.
- **Must** : — You *must* persevere in order to succeed

(*c*)
- **Be** : — *Are* you doing your task? My task *is* done.
- **Have** : — I *have* done my task.

Note 1 : — The Auxiliary Verbs *shall, will, may, can,* and *must,* which are followed by the Infinitive without *To,* are representative of other verbs of *volition, ability, necessity,* etc., which are followed by the Infinitive with *To* : —

I *will* go. =
- I *am willing* to go.
- I *am resolved* or *determined* to go.
- I *choose* to go.
- I *promise* to go., *etc.*

I *can* go. =
- I *am able* to go.
- *It is possible* for me to go, *etc.*

I *must* go. =
- I *need* to go.
- I *am obliged* to go.
- I *am compelled* to go.
- I *insist* upon going, *etc.*

Note 2 : — The four incomplete verbs of causation *let, make, have,* and *bid,* are of a quasi-auxiliary character, since they are followed by the Infinitive without *To,* and are representative of other verbs of causation. Compare : —

(*a*) **To Let** : —
- *Let* me *come.*
- *Allow* me *to come.*

(*b*) **To Make** : —
- He *made* me *leave* the house.
- He *compelled* me *to leave* the house.

(*c*) **To Have** : —
- *Have* some one *do* it for you.
- *Get* some one *to do* it for you.

(*d*) **To Bid** : —
- *Bid* the man *wait.*
- *Tell* the man *to wait.*

EXERCISE : — *State the Class and Use of each Verb.*

(*α*) I will undertake the work, if it *pays.* Does the knife *cut* well? Have these hens begun to *lay?* These apple-trees will

bear next year. It *says* in the papers that the governor is sick. The boy went about the yard, trying his new axe on trees to see how it would *cut.* The ship was *flying* the flag of truce. I *stood* the candle on the floor. I can't *stand* this any longer.

(*β*) I will *make* you a kite. I will *make* him my companion. He will *make* a good companion. What *made* him so angry? The expression *sounds* strange and unfamiliar. He has *done* me a favour. That will *do.* How do you *do?* He *renders* me good service. Your help will *render* my success certain. *Feel* this fur. It *feels* soft and warm. I *feel* hungry and tired.

(*γ*) I'll *get* dinner ready. I will *get* you something nice. Eat it before it *gets* cold. Pericles *fell* a prey to the plague. The flies were so troublesome, I nearly *went* mad. They nearly *drove* me mad. He *turned* traitor to his party. You must not *get* wet, or you will *make* yourself sick. What do the farmers *grow* in this part of the country? I have *painted* the house white. This watch *cost* me a hundred dollars. *Keep* still. *Keep* your eyes open. The fish will not *keep* overnight.

(*δ*) Can you *spare* me a copy? He *left* his wife all his property. *Leave* the door open. My father *allows* me twenty yen a month. Strange as it may *sound,* I am too rich to afford it. The city *lay* a ruin. I do not *envy* him his wealth, which *causes* him so much trouble. I *threw* the dog a bone. I *owe* you ten yen.

(*ε*) *Sing* us a song. The nurse *sings* the child to sleep. *Hand* me a plate. I *wish* you a happy new year. He *made* her a present. He *made* her his wife. She *made* a good wife. When he *left* the room, he *left* the door ajar. He has *shown* me much kindness. He has *shown* himself worthy of confidence.

CHAPTER II.

Grammatical Forms of the Verb.

§ 1. Verbs Finite and Infinite.

A Verb is either *Finite* or *Infinite,* according to its use in the sentence : —

(1) **Verbs Finite** : — A Verb is said to be Finite, when it is used in making a statement, and is joined to a Grammatical Subject, as — I *am,* you *are,* he *is,* etc. *Finite* means *limited* : a Finite Verb is limited in its use by its Person and Number.

In making a statement, a Verb has to express the two grammatical relations of —

(*a*) **Person** and **Number**;

and the three verbal attributes of —

(*b*) **Voice** (if Transitive);
(*c*) **Mood** and **Tense.**

Hence a Finite Verb must be in one of the Five Moods — *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Conditional*, *Potential*, or *Imperative*.

(2) **Verbs Infinite :** — A Verb may be used as a Noun, or as an Adjective or Adverb to qualify some word. A Verb is not Finite, when it does not make a statement by itself, but combines the function of some other part of speech.

Verbs Infinite are *Infinitives*, *Participles*, and *Gerunds*.

§ 2. Person and Number.

(1) **Rule of Concord :** — *A Finite Verb must agree with its Subject in Person and Number ;* that is to say, a verb that has a grammatical subject must be of the same person and number as its subject.

Each verb ought to have *six* different forms to mark the *Three Persons* and the *Two Numbers ;* but, in reality, there are only two inflections for Person and Number — -(e)st for the Second Person Singular, and -(e)s for the Third Person Singular (Indicative Present).

As the Second Person Singular *Thou* is not used in Modern English, the Inflection for Person and Number is practically confined to the Third Person Singular Inflection -(e)s in the Indicative Present ; the only exception being the verb *Be*, which has four forms in the present, and three in the past. Compare : —

The Verb **To See.**		The Verb **To Be.**	
Present.	*Past.*	*Present.*	*Past.*
I see	saw.	I **am**	**was**
Thou seest	sawest	Thou **art**	**wast**
He sees	saw.	He **is**	was
We see	saw	We **are**	**were**
You see	saw	You are	were
They see	saw	They are	were

Note 1 : — The Second Person Singular Inflection -(e)st occurs in all the Moods and Tenses (except the Subjunctive Present and the Imperative), and is also added to all the Auxiliary Verbs (except *must*).

	Indicative Mood.	*Subjunctive Mood.*
Present.	Thou **seest.**	If thou see.
Past.	Thou **sawest.**	If thou **sawest.**
Future.	Thou wilt see.	If thou **shouldst** see.
Pres. Perf.	Thou hast seen.	If thou have seen.
Past Perf.	Thou **hadst** seen.	If thou **hadst** seen.
Fut. Perf.	Thou wilt have seen.	If thou shouldst have seen.

Imperative Mood : — See (thou).

Auxiliary Verbs : — Thou **dost, didst, wilt, wouldst, shalt, shouldst, mayest, mightest, canst, couldst,** must, **oughtest.**

Note 2 : — The Third Person Singular Inflection -(e)s [Old Form -**eth**] occurs only in the Present Tense, Indicative Mood, and disappears in the Subjunctive Present. The Preterit and the Future and Potential Auxiliaries do not take this inflection : —

	Indicative Mood.	*Subjunctive Mood.*
Present.	He sees.	If he see.
Past.	He saw.	If he saw.
Future.	He will see.	If he should see.
Pres. Perf.	He has seen.	If he have seen.
Past Perf.	He had seen.	If he had seen.
Fut. Perf	He will have seen.	If he should have seen.

Auxiliary Verbs : — He will, he shall, he may, he can, he must, he need not, he dare not.

(2) **Special Rules of Concord :** — When the Subject of a Verb is a Collective Noun, a Plural Common Noun, or Two or More Nouns joined by a Conjunction, the *sense*, and not the *form*, should determine the concord.

I. **SINGULAR CONCORD :** — *If a Plural Subject denotes a Single Object or Idea, the Verb must be in the Singular Form.*

(*a*) Plural Common Nouns denoting *Value*, *Duration*, *Distance*, etc. : —

A hundred dollars a month ***is*** now a moderate income.
Six months ***is*** too short a time to learn a language.
Three-fourths of the earth's surface *consists* of water.

(*b*) Two or More Singular Subjects joined by *or, either ...or, neither...nor* : —

No voice or sound ***was*** heard.
Neither my father nor my mother ***was*** at home.

Note 1 : — When Two or More Subjects not of the Same Person or Number, are joined by *or, either....or,* or *neither....nor,* the Verb agrees with the Nearest Subject by attraction : —

Eeither you or ***I am*** wrong.
Neither you nor ***he is*** to blame.

Note 2 : — Words joined to the Subject by *with, together with, as well as,* etc., do not form part of the subject, and therefore do not affect the number of the verb : —

The *ship,* with all her hands, *was* lost.
Experience, as well as knowledge, *is* a necessary qualification of a good teacher.

(*c*) Two or More Subjects qualified by *Each* or *Every* require a Verb in the Singular Form : —

Each day and *each hour brings* its peculiar duties.
Every season and *every occasion makes* its own imperious demand, and *presents* its peculiar opportunity of glorious victory or ignoble defeat in the great battle of existence —*Blackie.*

(*d*) Two or More Subjects joined by *and* : —

The great *general and statesman* ***is*** dead.
Slow and steady ***wins*** the race.

Compare : —

Japan and China ***are*** now at peace.
He and I (= *We*) ***are*** great friends.

II. **PIURAL CONCORD** : — *A Collective Noun used in a Plural Sense requires a Verb in the Plural Form.*

People say that the man is mad.
These people are very kind.
All his *family disapprove* of the match.

EXERCISE : — *Supply the proper form of the verb "be" or "have."*

"Gulliver's Travels" — written by Swift. Five hundred dollars — a large sum. Half of them — gone. Half of it — gone. It is you who — in the wrong. Ten dollars — the price asked. The United States — a republic. The Diet — dissolved. The people — united, but the government — divided. The number of inhabitants — increased. Part of the company — on horseback. Only a few escaped ; the rest — cut to pieces. The rest of us — at work indoors. Neither the captain nor the crew — saved. The people, and not the government, — to blame. The captain, as well as his men, — unwilling to fight. The committee — divided in opinion. The committee — at dinner. Our happiness and misery — largely due to our own actions. Three times three — nine. The ebb and flow of the tides — caused by the attraction of the moon. Ten yen a month — all he earns. Three quarts of oats — enough for a horse's meal. Only a day or two — passed. I am the man who — been elected. Many a ship will all her crew — been lost at sea. He is one of the best writers that — ever lived. A committee — appointed to investigate the matter. The public — cordially invited. My family — all well. His family — large. The cattle — driven to pasture every morning. My class — improved. Not only the students, but also the teacher, — desirous of a holiday. Four miles — a good walk.

§ 3. Voice.

We have seen that a Transitive Verb can be used in two different ways — in the *Active Form* with the Agent as Subject, and in the *Passive Form* with the Object of the Action as Subject. These two forms of Transitive Verbs are called their two *Voices.*

The Past Participle of Transitive Verbs has always a Passive meaning ; and the Passive Voice is formed thus : —

To Be + *Past Participle.*

The Passive Voice is used in two cases : —

(*a*) When it is desired to call attention to the Object of the action in preference to the Agent. Compare : —

(α) Scott *wrote* "the Lady of the Lake, and many other poems.
(β) "The Lady of the Lake" *was written* by Scott.

(*b*) When the Agent is unknown or unimportant : —

This house *was built* last year.
The new school *will be opened* in September.

Note : — When the Agent is not definitely known, the use of the passive may be avoided by making use of an indefinite subject.

(1) **Indefinite Subject :** — The following words are used to avoid the passive when the agent is not definite : —

(*a*) **We, you, or one** is used, when the action is supposed to be done by the speaker or the person addressed : —

{ What must *be done* on such occasions ?
{ What must *one* (*we* or *you*) *do* on such occasions ?

(*b*) **People** is used when the action is done by people in general : —

{ *It is said* that he is still living.
{ *People say* that he is still living.

(*c*) **They** is used when the agent is indefinite but limited : —

{ *I am told* that he is a good scholar.
{ *They tell me* that he is a good scholar.

(*d*) **Somebody** (or **some one**) is used when the agent is an unknown individual : —

{ My dog *has been stolen.*
{ *Somebody has stolen* my dog.

EXERCISE : — *Change the voice of each verb.*

We *drink* tea here without sugar. *Is* English *taught* in that school ? What *do* they *teach* besides English ? *Have* they *repaired* that bridge ? It *is being repaired.* It *is said* that there is going to be a war. Much rice *is grown* here. English *is spoken* in the United States. What language *do* they *speak* in South America ? English *is spoken* all over the world. We *obtain* various useful things from the sea. The old house *has been pulled down.* They *are putting up* a new building. When *was* this building *commenced ? Is* this fish *eaten* here ? *Is* it *eaten* in America ? Funny stories *are told* about the fox in this country. What *do* they *sell* at that store ? All sorts of things *are sold* there. What *is* this flower *called ?* What *do* you *mean* by "a nice

man" ? How *is* the word *spelt ?* How *is* this word *pronounced ?* Such things *are* never *done* in Japan. My finger *is hurt. Was* I *missed* at the meeting ? The window *is broken.* The school *was opened* last year.

In translating such sentences as — 「獅子ヲ獣ノ王ト云フ」「駱駝ヲ砂漠ノ船ト云フ」 etc. — in which the subject is not expressed in Japanese, either the Passive form may be used, or the Active with some Indefinite Subject : —

{ The camel *is called* the ship of the desert.
{ *We call* the camel the ship of the desert.

EXERCISE : — *Translate into both the Active and the Passive forms.*

(1) 獅子ヲ獣ノ王ト云フ (2) 此樹ヲ英語デ何ト云フカ (3) 其字ハ如何綴ルカ (4) 此語ハ如何發言スルカ (5) "*Status quo*" トハ如何云フ意カ (6) アノ學校デハ英語ヲ教ヘルカ (7) 本邦ニテハ魚類ヲ多ク食スル (8) 西洋デハ茸類ヲ食スルカ (9) 獨逸デハ麥酒ヲ多ク飲ム (10) 麥酒ハ大麥ニテ造ル (11) 古イ家ヲ取リ壞ワシテ新築ヲシタ (12) 南亞米利加デハ何語ヲ使フカ (13) アノ店デハ何ヲ賣ルカ

(2) **Prepositions after Passive Verbs :** — After a Passive Verb, the Preposition *By* denotes the Active Agent, whether Personal or Impersonal ; while *With* denotes the Passive Instrument. Compare : —

{ The city was destroyed *by fire.*
{ (= *Fire* destroyed the city.)
{ The city was destroyed *with fire.*
{ (= They destroyed the city *with fire.*)

{ The man was killed *by a falling tile.*
{ (= *A falling tile* killed the man.)
{ The man was killed *with a stone.*
{ (= They killed the man *with a stone.*)

The following are exceptions : —

(*a*) **Known to** everybody. (*b*) **Beloved of** all.
(*c*) **Seized with** an illness ; **attacked with** dysentery ; **possessed with** a notion ; **attended with** danger ; **accompanied with** threats ; **surrounded with** trees ; **infected with** cholera ; **infested with** footpads ; **overgrown with** weeds ; **overrun with rats ; struck with** anything surprising, etc.

EXERCISE : — *Put in the Passive.*

Everybody *respects* him. Everybody *knows* him. An earthquake *destroyed* the town of Gifu. Those chimneys *impair* the beauty of the scenery. Bad drainage *caused* the epidemic. War has *impoverished* the country. I will *avenge* my father. He will *save* me. I will *do* it. Who *wrote* this book? A pair of white horses *drew* the carriage. His friends *respect* him, and his enemies *fear* him. All who *know* him, *love* him. The revenue officials *seized* the smuggled goods. A panic *seized* the smugglers. I wonder what *possesses* him to attempt such a thing. No danger *attends* the operation. His tutor *accompanies* him everywhere. Thunder *accompanied* the shower. The flood *carried away* the bridge. The man's appearance *struck* me. No fever *attended* my cold. Weeds *overgrow* the garden.

§ 4. Mood and Tense.

There is no Mood without Tense, and no Tense without Mood. Therefore the study of the Moods is the study of their Tenses.

An action may be stated either simply as a *fact*, or conditionally as a *supposition* : —

(*a*) **Fact** :.....I *am not* a bird ; I *can not fly*.
(*b*) **Supposition** : — If I *were* a bird, I *would fly* to you.

These different manners or *modes* of making a statement constitute what is called the different *Moods* of the Verb.

When a Verb expresses an action as a *fact*, it is in the Indicative Mood. When a Verb expresses an action as a *supposition*, it is either in the Subjunctive or the Conditional Mood : —

I. **Indicative** : — I *am not* a bird ; I *can not fly*.
II. **Subjunctive** : — If I *were* a bird,.....
III. **Conditional** : — .....I *would fly* to you.

These three are the chief moods. Besides *fact* and *supposition*, a verb may express an action as a *command or request* [Imperative], or merely *name* an action without making a statement [Infinitive].

(1) FINITE MOODS.

I. **Indicative Mood** : — This is the usual form of the verb, and the Ordinary Tenses are the Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

All action is necessarily connected with the notion of time. The time of the action is denoted by the *Tense* of the Verb.

Tense, besides the time-relations of *Past*, *Present*, and *Future*, also denotes the *Completion* or *Continuance* of action.

The Present and the Past are the only Tenses that are formed by Inflection, all the other Tenses being formed by help of Auxiliary Verbs. The following are the Auxiliary Verbs used in Tense-Formation : —

(1) **Shall, Will** : — These combine with the Root-Form to form the *Regular Future Form*.

(2) **Have** : — *Have* combines with the Past Participle to form the Perfect Tenses, which denote *Completion*.

(3) **Be** : — *Be* combines with the Present Participle to form the Continuous or Progressive Form, which denotes *Actual Continuance*.

(4) **Have been** : — This combination, followed by the Present Participle, forms the Progressive Perfect Tenses, which denote *Continuance till Some Moment*.

II. **Subjunctive Mood** : — The Subjunctive Mood is so called, because it is always used in Dependent Clauses, which are *subjoined*, as a condition or otherwise, to the Principal Clause.

The Subjunctive Mood, especially of the verb *be*, has a few characteristics to distinguish it from the Indicative Mood. Compare : —

Indicative : — The report *is* true.
Subjunctive : — If the report *be* true,.....

Indicative : — My father *was* alive then.
Subjunctive : — I wish he *were* alive now.

Indicative : — He *comes* here sometimes.
Subjunctive : — If he *come* to-morrow,.....

Indicative : — I think he *will* arrive soon.
Subjunctive : — If he *should arrive* to-day,.....

III. **Conditional Mood** : — In Older English, the same Subjunctive Form was used in both dependent and principal clauses : —

If it *were* so, it *were* well.
If I *had gone*, I *had died*.

Hence the want of the name *Conditional Mood* in Ordinary English Grammar. In Modern English, the Subjunctive Form in the Principal Clause has given place to the Conditional Auxiliaries *Should* and *Would;* and thus the mood of supposition has differentiated into the Subjunctive Mood (in Dependent Clauses) and the Conditional Mood (in Principal Clauses).

[Subjunctive.]	[Conditional.]
If it *were* so,.....	it *would be* well.
If I *had gone*,.....	I *should have died*.

A verb in the Conditional Mood generally expresses an action, the performance of which depends on the fulfilment of a hypothetical condition : —

I do not know it. If I knew it, I *would tell* you.
I am sorry I can not oblige you. I *would*, if I could.

The Conditional Mood is characterized by the auxiliary verbs *Should* and *Would*. *Might*, *Could*, and *Must*, may also take the place of the regular conditional auxiliaries.

If I had gone, { I *should* have died. / I *might* have died. / I *must* have died.

If you had gone, { you *would* not have returned. / you *might* not have returned. / you *could* not have returned.

IV. **Potential Mood :** — The so-called Potential Mood [verb-forms with *may, can, must*] is usually defined as a mood expressing the *power*, *liberty*, *possibility*, or *necessity* doing an action. But these forms can hardly be called a mood, as they are themselves in one of the three moods : —

{ *Indicative :* — I ***could*** (= *was able to*) hear his voice. / *Subjunctive :* — I would do it, if I ***could*** (= *were able*). / *Conditional :* — I ***could*** (= *should be able to*) do it, if I tried.

{ *Indicative :* — He said I ***might*** go. / *Subjunctive :* — If I ***might*** give an opinion, I should say..... / *Conditional :* — I ***might*** succeed, if I tried.

{ *Indicative :* — He ***must*** succeed this time. / *Subjunctive :* — (If I ***had to*** do it, I would do it at once.) / *Conditional :* — If I had gone, I ***must*** have died.

Thus, strictly speaking, these auxiliaries do not form a distinct mood or mode of making a statement; but it will be convenient to retain the name *Potential*, since they form combinations peculiarly their own.

Note : — There exists no possible reason for including *should* and *would* among the potential auxiliaries, as is done by many grammarians.

V. **Imperative Mood :** — The regular form of the verb expressing an action as a *command or request*, is the Imperative Mood. This mood is the Root-Form of the Verb, with the Subject *thou* or *you* understood.

Go (*you*) to school. *Be* (*you*) diligent.

The Imperative Mood has occasionally the subject expressed, and then generally take the auxiliary verb *do*, in the affirmative as well as in the negative, thus assuming a form similar to the Interrogative : —

Do you never forget the fact.
Don't you ever forget the fact.

(2) VERBS INFINITE.

I. **Infinitives :** — The Infinitive (sometimes called a Mood) is the Root-Form of the verb with the preposition *To* prefixed to it. It does not make a statement by joining itself to a subject, but only names the action without the agent, and is therefore a sort of verbal noun : —

To live is not *to breathe*. *To see* her is *to love* her.

The Infinitive (=*unlimited*) is so called, because, not having a grammatical subject of its own, it is not restricted in its use by the limitations of Person and Number, so that the same form can be used in any position : —

Do you wish *to go ?* I wish *to go*. He wishes *to go*, too.

The Infinitive has two uses : —

(*a*) **Noun-Infinitive :** — *To eat* is necessary to life.
(*b*) **Gerundial Infinitive :** — But we do not live *to eat*.

II. **Participles :** — The Participles are so called, because they are a sort of verbal adjective, *participating* in the nature both of the verb and the adjective.

There are two Participles — the *Present Participle* (in **-ing**) and the *Past Participle* (in **-ed, -t,** or **-en**) : —

(*a*) **Present Participle** : — A man *writing* at the desk.
(*b*) **Past Participle** : — A letter *written* in English.

A Participle can not make a statement by itself, its proper use being to qualify a noun, as in the above examples. But a Participle may form part of a finite verb by combining with the auxiliary verb *be* or *have* as a complement.

(*a*) I *am writing* a letter.
(*b*) The letter *is written ;* I *have written* the letter.

III. **Gerunds :** — The form in **-ing** is also used as a sort of noun, nearly equivalent to an infinitive, and is then called the Gerund (or Infinitive in *-ing*). The Gerund may be used as Subject or Object : —

(*a*) **Gerund as Subject** : — *Riding* is a good exercise.
(*b*) **Gerund as Object** : — { I like *riding*. / I am fond of *riding*.

The Gerund is especially important in the last use, in forming phrases with prepositions, as an ordinary infinitive can not be used as the object of prepositions : —

He gets his living *by teaching.*
He was rewarded *for saving* a drowning child.
One can not succeed *without working* hard.

§ 5. Principles of Combination.

We have seen that most of the Grammatical Forms of the Verb are made by means of Auxiliary Verbs. The study of the principles of combination naturally give rise to the study of the simple forms of the verb which are used in combination.

Each Verb has three Simple Forms : —

I. **Root-Infinitive :** — This is the original form of the Verb, and has three principal uses : —

(*a*) As the Infinitive, with or without *to*. The Root-Infinitive combines with the auxiliaries *shall, will, may, can, must,* and *do*.
(*b*) To form the Present Participle with the addition of **-ing**.

(*c*) As the Present Tense, with the inflections **-st** and **-s** in the Second and Third Persons Singular. The only exception here is the verb *Be*. Compare : —

To See : — I *see,* thou *seest,* he *sees,* we *see,* etc.
To Be : — I ***am,*** thou ***art,*** he ***is,*** we ***are,*** etc.

II. **Preterit :** — Those verbs which form their Preterits by regularly adding **-ed** are called Regular Verbs ; while those verbs which form their Preterits by vowel-change are called Irregular Verbs.

The Preterit has two uses : —

(*a*) To denote Real Past Time ; that is, as the Indicative Past, as — I *knew* it at that time.
(*b*) To denote Supposition ; that is, as the Subjunctive Past, as — If I *knew* (= I *do not know*).

Note 1 : — The Preterit is never used in combination with any Auxiliary Verb.

Note 2 : — The Preterits of the Auxiliary Verbs *shall, will, may, can,* and *must,* have three uses — *Indicative, Subjunctive,* and *Conditional.*

III. **Past Participle :** — The Past Participle of a Regular Verb has the same form as the Preterit ; while Irregular Verbs generally form their Past Participles by adding **-(e)n,** with or without vowel-change.

The Past Participle forms two combinations : —

(*a*) **Be** + *Past Participle* forms the Passive Voice.
(*b*) **Have** + *Past Participle* forms the Perfect Tenses.

These three simple forms — *Root, Preterit,* and *Past Participle* — are called the **THREE PRINCIPAL PARTS** of the Verb, because from these are made all the possible forms of any verb, and without the knowledge of them it is not possible to make all the verb-forms.

Each Verb has, in all, seven simple forms, four of which are easily made from the Root and the Preterit : —

	Root.	*Preterit.*	*Past Participle.*
Principal Parts.	(To) **do**	**did**	**done**
2nd Pers. Sing.	(Thou) dost.	.....didst	
3rd Pers. Sing.	(He) does		
Present Participle.	doing		

Of these seven forms, those used in combination are three — the Root (*do*) and the two Participles (*doing*, *done*).

The Auxiliary Verbs which combine with these forms are of two classes : —

(1) **Shall, Will, May, Can, Must,** and **Do,** which combine with the Root;

(2) **Be** and **Have,** which combine with the Participles.

For convenience' sake, these two classes of Auxiliary Verbs are arranged in three orders : —

Table showing the Combinination of Auxiliary Verbs.

Auxiliary Verb.		*Principal Verb.*
I.	**Shall, Will / May, Can, Must / Do**	.....**do**
II.	**Have**	.....(*Perfect*).....**done**
III.	**Be**	.....(*Progressive*).....**doing**
		.....(*Passive*).....

When there are two or more auxiliary verbs in a single combination, they are always placed in the above order.

I.	II.	III.	*Participle.*
I shall	**have**	—	**done** it by that time.
I could	**have**	—	**done** so.
I might	**have**	—	**done** so.
I must	**have**	—	**done** so.
I shall	—	**be**	**doing** it.
It will	—	**be**	**done.**
It may	—	**be**	**done.**
I	—	**have been**	**doing** it long.
I shall	**have been**		**doing** it for so long.
It	—	**has been**	**done.**
It will	**have been**		**done** by that time.
It might	**have been**		**done.**

§ 6. Principal Parts of the Verb.

Verbs are divided, according to their way of forming the Preterit and Past Participle, into the two large classes of *Regular* and *Irregular*.

There are verbs which neither add **-ed** nor make any vowel change, but have their Preterits and Past Participles ending in **-d** or **-t.** Such are *Contracted* or *Disguised Regular Verbs.* Some of these verbs actually have both the Regular and Contracted Forms : —

learn	learned / learnt	learned / learnt	burn	burned / burnt	burned / burnt

A Verb which lacks any of its parts is called *Defective.* The Auxiliary Verbs of the First Class are Defective Verbs, because they lack the Infinitive and Participles.

I. **Regular Verbs :** — Regular Verbs form a far more numerous class than Irregular Verbs. They are also called Verbs of the Weak or New Conjunction, since they include all verbs of later formation. The following Rules for adding **-ed** should be carefully observed : —

(1) **-ed** sounds like *t* after the sharp consonants— *f, k, p, s, x, tch.* Pronounce the following words : —

laughed / coughed	cuffed / stuffed	asked / looked	passed / mixed.	matched. / stopped

(2) A Monosyllabic Verb containing a Single Short Vowel and ending in a Single Consonant doubles the Final Consonant in adding **-ed** (**-ing** or **-er**). Compare : —

stop.....stopped, stopping.
stoop.....stooped, stooping.

din.....dinned, dinning.
dine.....dined, dining.

(3) A Dissyllabic Verb ending in a Single Consonant preceded by a Single Short Vowel doubles the Final Consonant in adding **-ed** (**-ing** or **-er**), if the word is accented on the final syllable. Compare : —

permit′	permitted,	permitting.
lim′it	limited,	limiting.
inter′	interred,	interring.
en′ter	entered,	entering.
prefer′	preferred,	preferring.
of′fer	offered,	offering.
begin′	(began),	beginning.
o′pen	opened,	opening.

Note 1 : — Verbs ending in unaccented **-ic** have **k** added to them in adding **-ed** (**-ing** or **-er**) : —

mim′ic	mimicked,	mimicking.
frol′ic	frolicked,	frolicking.

Note 2 : — Dissyllabic Verbs ending in unaccented **-ip** or **-el** are spelt differently in England and America.

wor′ship....	worshipped,	worshipping,	worshipper.	[E.]
	worshiped,	worshiping,	worshiper.	[A.]
trav′el.....	travelled,	travelling,	traveller.	[E.]
	traveled,	traveling,	traveler.	[A.]

EXERCISE : — *Spell the following words with* **-ed** (*if possible*) *and* **-ing.**

Sin ; join ; ruin ; admit ; profit ; confer ; differ ; occur ; conquer ; level ; equal ; parallel ; picnic ; rid ; ride.

II. **Irregular Verbs :** — Irregular Verbs are comparatively few in number, but being of Anglo-Saxon origin they form the backbone of the language, so to speak. They are also called Verbs of the Old or Strong Conjugation.

Irregular Verbs are so called, because they form apparent exceptions to the rule of adding **-ed.** There is, however, a great regularity in their way of forming the Preterit and the Past Participle. They may be divided into three classes : —

CLASS I.

Irregular Verbs of the First Class form their Preterits by *Vowel-Change,* and the Past Participle by the addition of **-(e)n** to the root without any Vowel-Change.

see	**saw**	**seen**	**know**	**knew**	**known**
give	gave	given	grow	grew	grown
fall	fell	fallen	draw	drew	drawn

Such are — *Eat, bid, forbid, shake, forsake, slay, blow, draw,* etc.
Anomalies : — *Be, do, go, beat, lie, show, fly,* etc.

The Past Participle of the following verbs and their compounds have lost the ending **-en** : —

come	**came**	**come**
run	**ran**	**run**

Compounds : — *Become, overcome, outrun, overrun,* etc.

The following verbs and their compounds lost their Past Participial forms in the confusion that prevailed in the Middle English Period, and substituted the Preterit for the Past Participle : —

sit	**sat**	**sat**
stand	**stood**	**stood**
hold	**held**	**held**

Compare : —

sit	sat	sat	[M. E.]
	sate	sitten	[O. E.]

Compounds : — *Understand, withstand, behold, withhold,* etc.

Note : — *Behold* has the Older Participial Form *beholden,* which is now used in the sense of *obliged* or *indebted.*

CLASS II.

This class is characterized by the vowel **i** or **e(a)** in the root, which is generally changed into **o** in the Preterit, sometimes also in the Past Participle : —

(*a*)	**write**	**wrote**	**written**
(*b*)	**hide**	**hid**	**hidden**
(*c*)	**speak**	**spoke**	**spoken**
(*d*)	**tear**	**tore**	**torn**

The verb *get* has lost the ending **-en** in the Past Participle, but has retained it in its compounds. Compare : —

get	**got**	**got**	
forget	**forgot**	**forgotten**	

Such are — *Ride, rise, arise, drive, strive, smite, bite, stride, chide, slide, steal, weave, freeze, seethe, break, tread, bear* (2), *forbear, wear, swear,* etc.

Anomalies : — *Abide, shine, awake, choose, tell, sell.*

CLASS III.

This class is characterized by **in** in the root, which is changed either into **an — un** or into **un — un.** Those in **ind** regularly change it into **ound — ound.**

(*a*)	sing	sang	sung
(*b*)	sting	stung	stung
(*c*)	find	found	found

Such are — *Begin, spin, ring, spring, swing, cling, fling, sling, string, wring, sink, drink, shrink, slink, stink, bind, wind, grind,* etc.
Similarly — *Swim, hang* (2), *stick, strike, dig, win,* etc.

Note 1 : — Some Irregular Verbs have Double Past Participles :—

get	got	got	*or* **gotten**
drink	drank	drunk	*or* **drunken**
sink	sank	sunk	*or* **sunken**
shrink	shrank	shrunk	*or* **shrunken**
strike	struck	struck	*or* **stricken**
bind	bound	bound	*or* **bounden**

The forms in **-en** are only used as Adjectives : — Ill-*gotten* wealth ; a *drunken* fellow ; a *sunken* rock ; a *shrunken* stream ; a *stricken* deer ; one's *bounden* duty, etc.

Note 2 : — Some Regular Verbs have likewise Double Past Participles, Regular and Irregular : —

lade	laded	*or* **laden**	sow	sowed	*or* **sown**
shape	shaped	*or* **shapen**	mow	mowed	*or* **mown**
grave	graved	*or* **graven**	show	showed	*or* **shown**
shave	shaved	*or* **shaven**	melt	melted	*or* **molten**
saw	sawed	*or* **sawn**	swell	swelled	*or* **swollen**
hew	hewed	*or* **hewn**	rot	rotted	*or* **rotten**
strew	strewed	*or* **strewn**	shear	sheared	*or* **shorn**
sew	sewed	*or* **sewn**	cleave	cleft	*or* **cloven**

The Irregular Forms in **-en** are used only as Adjectives : — A *laden* ship ; a mis-*shapen* creature ; a *graven* or *molten* image ; a close-*shaven* lawn ; *sawn* or *hewn* timber ; well-*sewn* cloth ; new-*mown* hay ; a *rotten* egg ; a *shorn* lamb ; *swollen* legs ; *cloven* hoofs, etc.

III. **Contracted Verbs** : — There are quite a number of verbs which, originally regular, have been contracted. The Preterit and the Past Participle end in **-t** or **-d** (not **-ed**).

Group A : — Those adding **-d** either have or have not their vowel shortened : —

(*a*)	**have**	**had**	**had**
(*b*)	**hear**	**heard**	**heard**

Such are — *Make, pay, lay, say, flee, shoe, clothe.*

Group B : — Verbs ending in **-d** either shorten their vowels, or change it into **-t** : —

(*a*)	**lead**	**led**	**led**
(*b*)	**lend**	**lent**	**lent**

Such are — *Read, feed, bleed, breed, speed, shoot, send, spend, rend, bend, build, gild, gird,* etc.

Group C : — Some both shorten the Vowel and add **-t** : —

(*a*)	**keep**	**kept**	**kept**
(*b*)	**leave**	**left**	**left**

Such are — *Sleep, creep, weep, sweep, feel, kneel, deal, bereave, lose, mean,* etc.

Group D : — Some Verbs ending in **-d** or **-t** preceded by a short vowel undergo no change in the Preterit and the Past Participle : —

(*a*)	**cast**	**cast**	**cast**
(*b*)	**let**	**let**	**let**
(*c*)	**rid**	**rid**	**rid**
(*d*)	**cost**	**cost**	**cost**
(*e*)	**cut**	**cut**	**cut**

Such are — *Set, bet, shed, shred, spread, sweat, hit, knit, slit, split, put, shut, hurt, burst, thrust,* etc.

Note : — Some of the Irregular Verbs have two sets of Preterit and Past Participle, one of which follows the analogy of changeless verbs : —

bid	{ **bade**	**bidden**
	{ **bid**	**bid**

Group E : — A few verbs change their vowel into a now silent aspirate and add **-t** : —

(*a*)	**catch**	**caught**	**caught**
(*b*)	**think**	**thought**	**thought**

Such are — *Teach, buy, bring, seek, beseech, fight,* etc.

Note : — *Fraught, distraught, wrought,* are the older forms of *freighted, distracted, worked. Straight* is only another form of *stretched.*

A great many of these verbs have Double Forms, Regular and Contracted, which are either used differently or indifferently : —

(*a*)	learn	learned learnt	learned learnt
(*c*)	light	lighted lit	lighted lit
(*d*)	work	worked wrought	worked wrought
(*e*)	owe	owed ought	owed .....

Such are — *Bend, blend, gild, gird, burn, pen, dwell, smell, spell, spill, spoil, pass, bless, dress, press, dip, ship, strip, whip, chop, drop, stop, lean, leap, dream, bereave, knit, quit,* etc.

IV. **Defective Verbs :** — The auxiliary verb *shall, will, may, can,* and *must,* have only the Present and the Past form, and lack both the Infinitive and Participles : —

(1) **Shall** : — He says he *shall ;* he said he *should.*
(2) **Will** : — He says he *will ;* he said he *would.*
(3) **May** : — He says I *may ;* he said I *might.*
(4) **Can** : — He says he *can ;* he said he *could.*
(5) **Must** : — He says I *must ;* he said I *must.*
(6) **Ought** : — You *ought* to know it.

Note : — As these verbs lack the Infinitive and the Participles, they can not be placed after auxiliary verbs, but must have their wanting parts supplied by *Periphrasis* . —

May = be at liberty to : — If you finish your task, you will *be at liberty to* go.
Can = be able to : — If my brother arrives to-day, I shall *be able to* start to-morrow.
Must = have to : — If you fail in the next examination, you will *have to* leave school.

Other Defective Verbs are —

(7) **Beware** (= *be ware* or *wary*) : — Only the Root and Infinitive of this word is used : —

(α) *Root* : — { *Beware* of this habit. / We must (*or* should) *beware* of this habit.
(β) *Infinitive* : — { We ought *to beware* of this habit. / He told us *to beware* of this habit.

Note : — The verb can not be used in the Indicative : — I *beware,* you *beware,* he *bewares,* etc.

(8). **Used** (= *was wont*) : — This verb is used only in the Past Tense followed by the Infinitive, to denote a Past Habitual Action : —

My father *used* to say that.... What *used* he to say ?

Note : — This form corresponds to the Indefinite Present which denotes a Present Habitual Action ; hence its absence in the Present. Compare : —

{ I *take* the "Asahi."
{ I *used to take* the "Jiji," but not now.

(9) **Wont** (= *accustomed*) : — This is the Past Participle of an obsolete verb (*wone* = *dwell*) : —

He was *wont* to say queer things.

(10) **Wit** (= *to know*) : — The only forms of this verb in use are —

(α) *Infinitive* : — ***To wit*** (= *namely,* used in legal style).

He inherited his father's property, *to wit,* the lands in the Hokkaido.

(β) *Adverbial Participles* : — ***Wittingly, unwittingly.***

He has wronged me *unwittingly,* so he is not to blame.

(11) **Quoth** (= *said*) : — This word is the Preterit of the obsolete verb *quethe,* and is used only in the First and Third Persons Singular, with the subject always following it : — *Quoth I ; quoth he.* The word is now rarely used, except in humourous style.

Quoth the raven, "Nevermore."—*Poe.*

(12) **Hight** (= *called*) : — The Past Participle is the only form now remaining. The word is only used in poetry : —

Child Harold was he *hight.*—*Byron.*

(13) **Ycleped** (= *called*) : — This is the Past Participle of the obsolete verb *clepe,* and is only used in poetry : —

But come, thou goddess fair and free,
In Heaven *ycleped* Euphrosyne.—*Milton.*

(14) **Worth** (= *befall*) : — This word is only used in the Subjunctive Present, followed by the Dative Case : —

Woe *worth* (= *be to*) the day !

(15) **Forego** : — Only the participles *forgoing, forgone* are used, the wanting parts being supplied by the verb *precede.*

(16) **Ween** (= *think* or *imagine*) : — This verb is used only in the participial form — *overweening.*

PART SECOND: AUXILIARY VERBS.

INTRODUCTION.

The Auxiliary Verbs are of two classes : —

I. Those which combine with the Infinitive ;
II. Those which combine with the Participles.

§ 1. Auxiliary Verbs of the First Class.

The Auxiliary Verbs of the First Class are marked by the following characteristics : —

(*a*) They combine with the Infinitive without *To*. Compare :—

{ I shall *go*. / I am *to go*. } { I can *go*. / I am able *to go*. }
{ I will *go*. / I am willing *to go*. } { I must *go*. / I need *to go*. }

(*b*) They do not require the Auxiliary Verb *Do* in forming the Interrogative and Negative forms.

(*c*) They lack the Inflection -s in the Third Person Singular, Indicative Present.

The Auxiliaries of the First Class are —

(1) **Shall** } (2) **Will** } *Future (or Volitional) Auxiliaries.*

(3) **May** } (4) **Can** } (5) **Must** } *Potential (or Modal) Auxiliaries.*

Note : — It is these five with their various meanings and uses that require special consideration.

(6) **Ought** : — This auxiliary verb lacks the first of the three characteristics : —

You ought *to obey* him.
You ought *not to disobey* him.

(7) **Need (not)** : — This is used as an auxiliary verb only in the present tense, as the negative of *must* :—

Must I go ? — No, you *need not* go.

Compare : —

{ *Auxiliary :* — He *need not work.* / *Principal :* — He *needs* **to** *work.* }

(8) **Dare (not)** : — This verb is used as an auxiliary verb only in the negative form. Compare : —

{ *Auxiliary :* — He *dare not do* such a thing. / *Principal :* — He *dares* **to** *do* anything. }

(9) **Had better** : — This combination followed by the root-infinitive is an idiomatic form, which has become differentiated in meaning from *would rather*. Compare : —

{ *Preference :* — I *would rather* die than yield. / *Advice :* — If you would rather die, you *had better* do so. }

Note 1 : — *Shall, Will, May, Can,* and *Must* are treated of in Part II.

Note 2 : — The Preterits *Should, Would, Could, Might* (and *Must*) will be specially treated of in Part III.

Note 3 : — *Ought, Need not, Dare not,* and *Had rather,* will be specially treated of in Part IV.

Note 4 : — The Auxiliary Verb *Do* also combines with the Root-Infinitive, but admits of the Personal Inflection (*does*), and is entirely different in character from the preceding ones. As it has no special meaning of its own, it will be treated of in Part III., under "the Indicative Mood."

§ 2. Auxiliary Verbs of the Second Class.

The Auxiliary Verbs which combine with the Participles are —

(1) **Be** : — *Be* with all its forms [*am, is, are, was, were, being, been*] combines with either the Present or the Past Participle.

(2) **Have** : — *Have* combines with the Past Participle to form the Perfect Tense : —

Be.....(*Progressive*).....**doing**
.....(*Passive or Perfect*).....
Have.....(*Perfect*).....**done**

CHAPTER III.

"Shall" and "Will."

§ 1. Meaning of Shall.

Shall, as an independent verb, originally means *to owe*, as —

By that faith I *shall* to God and you.— *Chaucer.*

In its modern use as an auxiliary verb, *shall* has lost its full signification of *obligation* or *necessity*, but some trace of its meaning remains in that, in all cases where *shall* is used, the action is always supposed to be involuntary on the part of the subject.

The meaning of obligation or necessity implied in *shall* varies with the Person of the Subject : —

(1) **"Shall" in the First Person** denotes an obligation or necessity arising from external circumstances : —

Help ! help ! I *shall* drown !
I fear I can not recover ; I *shall* die.

Shall in the First Person does not necessarily denote necessity in an injurious sense. By necessity is only meant the necessary course of events, in which the subject has no free will or choice, so that the action is performed involuntarily, the subject standing in an attitude of passive expectation : —

I hope I *shall* succeed.
I fear I *shall* be plucked.
You say I *shall* lose, but I hope I *shall* gain.

(2) **"Shall" in the Second or Third Person** denotes —

(*a*) That the Subject, as in the First Person, has no free will or choice in the action, but performs it from a sort of necessity ;

(*b*) That this necessity arises, not from external circumstances, but from the volition of the speaker : —

You *shall* die.= I will have you put to death.
He *shall* be hanged.= I will have him hanged.

Here, also, the necessity imposed by the volition of the speaker is not necessarily injurious. *You shall* or *he shall* simply denotes that the subject is passive to the speaker's will : —

You *shall* live.= I will spare or save you.
He *shall* be saved.= I will save him.

Note : — *You shall* or *he shall* is usually the language of solemn promise or threat : —

(*a*) *Promise :* — { *You shall* be rewarded. / *He shall* have justice done him.

(*b*) *Threat :* — { *You shall* smart for it. / *He shall* repent of this insolence.

Whether *shall* denotes a promise or a threat, is only determined by the context. Note that in both these uses, *you shall* or *he shall* may be translated into terms of *I will* : —

He shall (= *I will let him*) go, if he wishes it.
He shall (= *I will make him*) go, whether he is willing or not.

§ 2. Meaning of "Will."

Will, as an independent verb, signifies *volition* (or *wish* in the conditional form) : —

Heaven *wills* it that it shall be so.
I *would* I were young again.

Will, as an auxiliary verb, has different uses, according to the Person of the Subject : —

(1) **"Will" in the First Person** always denotes that the speaker (who is the subject at the same time) performs the action voluntarily ; and *will* here denotes either *willingness* or *determination :* —

Yes, *I will* go with you. (= I am willing to go.)
No, *I will* go at all hazards. (= I am determined to go.)

Note : — There is a radical difference in meaning between *I shall* and *I will*, where *shall* and *will* are used in very nearly their original sense of necessity and volition. Compare : —

{ *I shall* be drowned. (= I am compelled to die.) / *I will* drown myself. (= I am determined to die.)

{ If I fail, *I shall* be a beggar. [Inevitable Result.]
{ *I will* be somebody; *I will* be a hero. [Determination.]

{ I am afraid *I shall* not succeed. [Expectation.]
{ But, at all events, *I will* do my best. [Intention.]

(2) **"Will" in the Second or Third Person** may or may not denote volition on the part of the subject: —

(*a*) *You will* or *he will* always denotes volition in the following three cases: —

(α) In Indirect Speech: —

He says *he will* undertake the work.
He has promised *that he will* do his best.

(β) In Conditional Clauses: —

If you will grant my request, I shall be much obliged.
If you will take that one, I will take this one.

(γ) In Requests: —

I beg you will accept of a trifling present.
You will please look to the matter at once.

Note: — For further significant uses of *will*, see "Occasional Uses of *Will*." [Pages 360,361.]

(*b*) *You will* or *he will* is more frequently used to denote mere futurity. *Will* here loses its original meaning of volition, and denotes necessity imposed by external circumstances. It is a mere symbol of futurity, and takes the place of *shall* of the First Person. Compare: —

{ If I swallow a drop of this poison, *I shall* die.
{ If you swallow a drop of this poison, *you will* die.

{ I hope *I shall* succeed this time.
{ I hope *he will* succeed also.

Note 1: — This symbolical use of *will* as a future auxiliary of the second and third persons arises from the want of a form denoting futurity pure and simple. *Shall* (in *you shall* or *he shall*) is used to denote the speaker's determination, and *will* (in *you will* or *he will*) originally denotes the subject's own determination; and the latter form has been chosen to express a futurity dependent, not on personal determination, but on external circumstances. [See Pages 325—329 : § 3.]

Note 2: — The context usually determines whether *will* in the second or third person is used as a significant term or as a mere symbol of futurity. Compare: —

{ He says *he will* die. [Significant.]
{ I think *he will* die. [Symbolical.]

EXERCISE: — *State whether "will" is used as a significant term or as a mere symbol of futurity.*

You say you *will* do your best. I hope you *will* succeed. I beg you *will* let me know the result. You must keep the money, for you *will* need it. If you *will* lend me the money, I shall be much obliged. He says he *will* leave school and go into business. He *will* have to leave school, if he *will* not be more careful. *Will* you speak to him about the matter? I request you *will* speak to him on the earliest opportunity. You *will* soon be able to speak English well. If you *will* take that one, I *will* take this one. My brother says he *will* take the remaining one. You *will* please not do so again. You *will* be more careful in future. If you *will* not tell any one, I *will* tell you. If you *will* call on me, you shall have a letter of introduction to him.

§ 3. Uses of "Shall" and "Will."

There are three principal sources of difficulty in the use of *shall* and *will*: —

(*a*) The difference in the use of *shall* and *will* in different persons;

(*b*) The different uses of *shall* and *will*, sometimes as significant terms having independent meanings of their own, and sometimes as non-significant or symbolical auxiliaries of mere futurity;

(*c*) The difference of usage in Modern and Older English.

All future actions or events are either voluntary or involuntary; that is to say, they must either be brought about by personal volition or come about in the necessary course of events. It is the function of *shall* and *will* to denote whether an action is performed as an inevitable result [*Simple Futurity*] or is dependent on some person's will [*Determination*].

I. **Simple Futurity :** — Futurity is the necessary course of events, in which the speaker's volition takes no part. By *true futurity* is meant what we *expect* to happen, not what we *intend* to do.

In the First Person, *Shall*, which denotes necessity arising from external circumstances, is used as the Auxiliary of Simple Futurity : —

If I do not work hard, *I shall* fail.

In the Second or Third Person, it is *Shall* that denotes the determination of the speaker; therefore *Will*, which we have seen may be used to denote the necessary course of events, is the Future Auxiliary of the Second and Third Persons : —

If you do not work hard, *you will* fail.
If he does not work harder, *he will* fail.

Hence the Ordinary Forms of —

Simple Futurity.

I (We)	shall
You	will
He (She, It, They)	will

Note 1 : — The use of *Shall* in the First Person and of *Will* in the Second and Third Persons as symbols of mere futurity, has arisen from considerations of courtesy, as well as from the want of a term denoting futurity pure and simple : —

(*a*) *I shall*, which attributes one's actions to necessity, is a humbler and politer form of speech than *I will*, which ascribes one's actions to one's own choice.

(*b*) Again, *you will* or *he will*, which apparently leaves the freedom of action to the agent, is a more courteous form of speech than *you shall* or *he shall*, which attributes the action to necessity or compulsion.

Note 2 : — There are cases, however, where the usage is reversed; as, for instance, when one expresses one's willingness to oblige another : —

I will lend you the money ; *you shall* have it at once.
I will tell him everything ; *he shall* know all.

This brings us to the other use of *shall* and *will*.

II. **Determination :** — When we wish to denote, not what we passively expect to come about, but what we intend or determine to bring about, we use *Will* for the First Person, and *Shall* for the Second and Third Persons.

Will, in *I will*, is always a significant term denoting *volition* in the shape of *willingness* or *determination*.

Do you wish me to go? Then *I will* go with you.
You can not dissuade me ; *I will* go at all hazards.

Shall, in *you shall* or *he shall*, is in Modern English always a significant term implying the *speaker's volition* in the shape of *willingness* [*promise*] or *determination* [*threat*]. *You shall* or *he shall* gives the reverse side, as it were, of *I will* : —

I will give you a lesson ; *you shall* have a short lesson as it is your first day here.
I will tell you all about the matter ; *you shall* know everything about it.
I will show you how to do it ; *you shall* see how it ought to be done.
I will not allow him to come to my house ; *he shall* not set foot in this house again.
I will lend you the money ; *you shall* have it to-morrow.

Hence the forms denoting —

The Speaker's Determination.

I (We)	will
You	shall
He (She, It, They)	shall

III. **Three Uses of "Shall" and "Will" :** — It will thus be seen that there are three distinct uses made of the two words *shall* and *will* : —

(*a*) **Simple Futurity :** —

I shall, You will, He will.

I fear *I shall* fail, but I hope *you will* succeed.
I shall be happy to be of service to you, and so *will he*.

(*b*) **Subject's Determination : —**

I will, You will, He will.

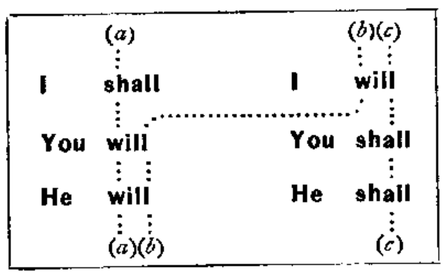
If *you will* take that one, *I will* take this one.
My brother says *he will* take the remaining one.

(*c*) **Speaker's Determination : —**

I will, You shall, He shall.

I will tell you everything ; *you shall* know all.
I will save the poor fellow ; *he shall* not die.

Three Uses of "Shall" and "Will."



Note —

(*a*) That *Shall* has only one use with each subject ;
(*b*) That *Will* has two uses (*a*) and (*b*).
(*c*) That *I will* in (*b*) is identical with that in (*c*).

Exercise (*a*) : — *Distinguish between the meanings of the two forms.*

1. { I *shall* die. / I *will* die.
2. { I *shall* see him to-day. / I *will* see him to-day.
3. { You *will* see. / You *shall* see.
4. { We *will* see if it is true. / We *shall* see that it is true.
5. { I *shall* be obeyed. / I *will* be obeyed.
6. { You *will* be obeyed. / You *shall* be obeyed.
7. { You *will* be rewarded. / You *shall* be rewarded.
8. { He *will* be punished. / He *shall* be punished.
9. { He *will* not die. / He *shall* not die.
10. { It *will* be done very soon . / It *shall* be done at once.

11. { To-morrow *will* be a holiday. / To-morrow *shall* be a holiday.
12. { Nobody *will* know it. / Nobody *shall* know it.
13. { I *shall* never see him again. / I *will* never see him again.
14. { I *shall* know the truth. / I *will* know the truth.
15. { I *shall* never forget your kindness. / I *will* never forget your kindness.
16. { Whoever learns his lesson first, *will* get this book. / Whoever learns his lesson first, *shall* get this book.
17. { She *will* have everything her own way. / She *shall* have everything her own way.
18. { Nothing *will* hinder me from doing my duty. / Nothing *shall* hinder me from doing my duty.

Exercise (*b*) : — *Correct mistakes, and give your reason.*

I will drown ; nobody shall help me. If you will not conduct yourself better, I will be obliged to dismiss you from my service. I will be sixteen next September. You shall be fourteen next July. I fear I will miss the train. He promises me that the work will soon be ready. We will never look upon his like again. I hope I will be quite well in a few days. If I neglect my duty, I will be punished. I will never have an opportnnity of obeying your kindness. If you do not study hard, you shall fail. If he fails this time, he shall have to leave school. You shall soon be able to speak English well. I think we will have no more snow this year. You shall never succeed in anything unless you persevere. Keep the money ; you shall need it by and by.

---

§ 4. "Shall" and "Will" in the First Person.

I shall denotes what one does of necessity ; *I will* denotes what one does of one's own choice.

I shall is used in speaking of involuntary actions or future events ; *I will* in speaking of voluntary actions.

I shall denotes passive expectation ; *I will* denotes intention or determination.

---

(1) I (We) shall.

Involuntary actions include *necessity*, *ability*, *passivity*, *emotion*, *perception*, and *expectation* : —

(*a*) **Need** : — I can not lend you the money, for *I shall need* it very soon.

(*b*) **Necessity** : — If I fail in the examination, *I shall have to* serve in the army.

(*c*) **Ability** : — If my brother arrives to-day, *I shall be able* to start to-morrow.

(*d*) **Passivity** :— { If I neglect my duty, *I shall* be blamed. / If we go there, *we shall* have our throats cut.

(*e*) **Emotion** : — { *I shall be glad* to hear from you. / *I shall be happy* to be of service to you / *I shall be sorry* to stand in your way.

(*f*) **Perception** : — { *We shall* soon *see* how the affair ends. / *We shall* never *hear* the last of the matter. / *We shall feel* the want of your assistance.

(*g*) **Expectation** : — { I fear *I shall* fail this time. / I hope *I shall* succeed next time. / *I shall* never have an opportunity of....

Note 1 : The verb *hope* may also be followed by the optative *may*. Compare : —

{ I hope I *shall* not witness such a scene again. / I hope I *may* never witness such a scene again !

Note 2 : — The verb *fear* may also be followed by the conjunctive *lest* and the subjunctive *should*. Compare : —

{ I am afraid (*that*) *I shall* fail. / I am afraid *lest I should* fail.

Note 3 : — The verb *think* as a verb of expectation is followed by *I shall*, as a verb of intention by *I will*. Compare : —

{ *I think I shall* succeed. (= I *expect* to succeed.) / *I think I will* try. (= I *intend* to try.)

Note 4 : — In the preceding cases, the meaning of the predicate necessitates the use of *shall*. There are cases where it is the use of *shall*, and not the nature of the predicate itself, that determines the meaning. Such is the case in the following : —

(*h*) **Duty** : — { Shall you be at home to-morrow morning ? / No, *I shall* go to school.

(*i*) **Pre-arrangement** : — { Are you going anywhere during the summer ? / Yes, *I shall* be in Nikko.

Note 1 : — An action which is spoken of as being previously arranged (都合), and not as being determined upon at the present moment, is denoted by *I shall*. Here the action, though proceeding from the speaker's own determination, is a sort of necessity in that it is already decided upon and regarded as a settled matter.

Note 2 : — With verbs of *going* or *coming*, *I shall* is generally used with the notion of duty or pre-arrangement, and *I will* with the notion of willingness or determination. Hence simple or intentional futurity is generally denoted by means of the progressive form. Compare : —

(*a*) **I shall go.** = { *I go, because it is my duty.* / *I go, because it is all arranged.*

(*b*) **I will go.** = { *I am willing to go.* / *I am determined to go.*

(*c*) **I am going.** = { *I go* [at a certain future time]. / *I intend to go.*

(*j*) **Natural Result** : — If I work too hard, *I shall* make myself sick.

Compare : —

{ If I overwork the horse, *I shall* kill him. [Result.] / If he kicks me again, *I will* kill him. [Threat.]

Note : — This use of *shall* gives rise to an idiomatic construction, in which the result is stated with a personal subject. Compare : —

{ If I pull the rope too hard, *it will break.* / If I pull the rope too hard, *I shall break it.*

"I will" for "I shall."

It is in the use of *I will* for *I shall* that the common error lies in the use of these words. On the contrary, *I shall* may be used in place of *I will*, as we shall see further on.

---

(2) I will, We will.

It is generally the meaning of the predicate that determines the use of *Shall* in the First Person. On the contrary, it is rather the use of *Will* in the First Person that determines the meaning of the predicate.

I. **I will** : — *I will* is used, only when there is need of expressing one's *willingness* or *determination* to do something : —

Willingness usually takes the form of *consent* (or *refusal*), *promise, offer,* etc. : —

(*a*) **Consent** : — { Will you kindly show me the way?
Yes, I will.

(*b*) **Refusal** : — { Will you go with me?
No, *I won't.*

(*c*) **Promise** : — { *I will* (*I'll*) try. *I will* (*I'll*) do my best.
I will (*I'll*) tell you on some future occasion.
Stay with me, and *I will* be a brother to you.

(*d*) **Offer** : — { If you need anything, *I will* (*I'll*) lend it to you.
If you do not know the place, *I will* (*I'll*) show you the way.

Determination usually takes the form of *choice, resolution, demand,* or *threat* : —

(*e*) **Choice** : — { If you will take that one, *I will take* this one.
I will go or stay, as I think proper.

Note : — *Preference* is denoted by the conditional form *would rather,* as — I *would rather* die than yield.

(*f*) **Resolution** : — { *I will* accomplish my purpose.
I will be revenged on him.

(*g*) **Demand** : — { *I will* know your reason.
It is my wish ; *I will* have it so.

(*h*) **Threat** : — { If you do not keep quiet, *I will* turn you out of doors.
If you won't leave the house, *I will* make you.

Note : — *Will* in the First Person may nearly always be rendered by some paraphrase, especially in indirect speech : —

{ He *said,* " *Yes, I will go* with you."
He *consented to go* with me.

{ He *said, "No, I won't go."*
He *refused to go.*

{ He *said, "I will do* my best."
He *promised to do* his best."

{ He said, "*I will ruin* you."
He *threatened to ruin* me.

{ He *said,* " *I will show* you the way."
He *offered to show* me the way.

{ I *will be* more careful in future.
I *promise to be* more careful in future.

{ I *will* accomplish my purpose.
I *am determined* to accomplish my purpose.

{ I *will be revenged* on him.
I *am resolved to be revenged* on him.

{ I *will know* your reason.
I *insist upon knowing* your reason.

EXERCISE : — *Paraphrase "I will."*

1. He *says,* " *Yes, I will* undertake the work." **2.** He *says,* " *No, I will never* agree to such a proposal." **3.** He *said,* " *I will* go with you, if you wish it." **4.** He *said, "I will* lend you any sum you may need." **5.** He *said, "I will* lend you my assistance." **6.** He *said, "I will* come without fail." **7.** He *said, "I will* work harder in future." **8.** I *will* never be in debt. He *says, "I will* never be in debt." **9.** I *will* have your answer, yes or no. **10.** He *said, "I will* have your answer." **11.** It is my wish ; I *will* have it so. **12.** He *said, "I will* kill you." **13.** I *will* never speak to him again. **14.** He acknowledged his fault, and *said, "I will* never do so again." **15.** He *said, "I will* pay you at the end of the month." **16.** I *will* accomplish my purpose. **17.** I *will* buy it at any price. **18.** I *will* never set foot in that house again. **19.** I *will* have my bill paid. **20.** The bill-collector *said,* " *I will* have my bill paid." **21.** The man *said, "I will* turn you all out of doors." **22.** I *will* be somebody ; I *will* be a hero. **23.** I *will* never drink wine. **24.** He *says, "I will* never drink wine."

II. **We will** : — This form assumes the choice of the person addressed, and is nearly equivalent to *Let us.* Compare the use of *Shall we?* in asking the choice of the person addressed : —

Where *shall we* go? — *Let us* go to the Park.—
Yes, and *we will* go to the Zoological Garden.

Compare : —
{ *We shall see.* (= It will become clear.)
We will see. (= Let us see or find out.)

"I shall" for "I will."

We have seen that an action, though determined upon by the speaker himself, may be denoted by *I shall,* when it is spoken of as a previous arrangement. In speeches and writings, *I shall* or *we shall* implies that the speaker or writer proceeds with the execution of a pre-arranged plan : —

I shall now proceed to mention....
I shall next consider....

While *I will* denotes that he takes a new start : —

I will begin with one which you must all know.
I will omit the less important ones.

I will is emotional : one speaks on the impulse of the moment.
I shall is deliberate : one speaks on reflexion. Compare : —

{ "My dear Imlac," said the prince, "*I will* open to thee my whole heart."
"Great prince," said Imlac, "*I shall* speak the truth."

In polite language, even the *will* of determination is often softened down into *shall*, to avoid the appearance of egotism. One pretends, as it were, to follow pre-arranged plans. Compare : —

{ *I will* tell you why.
I shall state my reasons.
{ *I will* try and do my best.
I shall endeavour to merit your confidence.

(3) "I Will" and "I Shall" with Certain Verbs.

There are many verbs with which either *I shall* or *I will* may be used, but with different meanings. Emotion, perception, and expectation are activities which are nearly always involuntary ; but some mental activities, such as memory, belief, etc., may be either voluntary or involuntary. Distinguish between the meanings of the following : —

{ *I shall* never forget it.
I will never forget it.
{ *I shall* remember it.
I will remember it.
{ *I shall* trust to your honour.
I will trust to your honour.
{ *I shall* not trust him.
I will not trust him.

There are some verbs which undergo a change in meaning when the notion of volition is added : —

(*a*) **Verbs of Perception** : — The verbs of involuntary perception — *see*, *hear*, *learn*, *know*, etc. — when joined to *I will*, become verbs of voluntary attention or consent.

I will see (= *take care*) *that* they do their duty.
I will see (= *ascertain*) *if* every thing is ready.
I will not hear (= *listen to*) such excuses.
I will not hear of (= *consent to*) such doings.

Compare : —

{ *I shall know* the truth very soon.
I will know your reason.

(*b*) **Incomplete "Have"** : — The verb *have*, when followed by a verbal complement (*have* him *do* it ; *have* it *done*), has originally a *passive* meaning, and in certain cases acquires a *causative* meaning. *I shall* is used when *have* is used in its original passive sense ; and for the sake of distinction, *I will* is used when *have* is used in a causative sense. Compare : —

{ **I shall have** somebody **help** me.
I will have somebody **help** me.
{ **I shall have** my watch **stolen.**
I will have my watch **mended.**

Hence it is that *I will* must be used for the sake of distinction in the following expressions : —

(*a*) **I will see to it.**
(*b*) **I will see that** he does it.
(*c*) **I will see it done** (see you paid, see you avenged, *etc.*).
(*d*) **I will not hear of it.**
(*e*) **I will have it done** (have a new house built, *etc.*).
(*f*) **I will have none of it** (none of your jokes, *etc.*).
(*g*) **I will have nothing to do with it.**
(*h*) **I will take this one.**
(*i*) **I think I will** (go and inquire, *etc.*).

EXERCISE (*a*) : — *Explain the uses of "I shall" and "I will."*

(*α*) I think *I shall* require your assistance. If I lose through following your advice, *I will* require redress at your hands. If you will not be more careful, *I shall* be under the necessity of dismissing you from my service. If I receive the remittance I expect, *I shall* be in a position to accommodate you with the loan. I hope *I shall* have no occasion for complaint in future.

(*β*) *We shall* have our homes burnt down. *We will* have our houses rebuilt. *We shall* never look upon his like again. We are very sorry you are going away ; *we shall* miss you very much. *I shall* especially feel the want of your valuable assistance. If you will lend me the money, *I shall* be much obliged to you. If you will grant my request, *I shall* esteem it a great favour. A trip to Nikko? Oh ! *I shall* enjoy it of all things.

(*γ*) And *I shall* rejoice to learn something of the manners of antiquity.— *Johnson.* *I will* gladly undertake the work ; *I shall* be happy to do it. I trust *I shall* soon have an opportunity of thanking you in person. *I shall* be guilty of gross injustice, if I omit to mention his merits. Is it my life they seek? *I will* lay it down cheerfully.— *Scott.* O remain with us, and *I will* be a sister to you. — *Scott.* Villain, *I will* have their heart's blood.— *Scott.*

(δ) If I renounce present fame and future ambition, I renounce it for thy sake, and *we will* escape in company.—*Scott.* She gazed upon the scene, which *we shall* endeavour to describe in the next chapter.—*Scott.* *I will* see thee safe under some fitting escort.—*Scott.*

EXERCISE (b) : — *Supply "shall" or "will."*

(α) I do not know whether I — succeed or not, but at all events I — do what I can. I — be eighteen next June. You can take the money, for I — have no need of it for some time yet. I think some of the men — leave at the end of the term, and then I — be in want of some new hands. I think I — have need of your services at the beginning of next term. If my eyes do not get better, I — be obliged to give up my studies. I am afraid I — not recover in time for the examination. I hope I — be well in a few days. If my teacher asks for the book, I — have to go home for it. You need not go home for it, for I — lend you mine. I think I — just step in and inquire. I think I — be able to find him out. If you do not behave better in future, I — be obliged to forbid you my house. If I succeed in the enterprise, I — be able to furnish you with the finds.

(β) I — gladly undertake the work ; I — be happy to be of any service to you. I assure you I — use my best endeavours in your behalf. I — gladly lend you my assistance ; I — be very happy to do so. I — undertake the work if it pays. I — be satisfied with any terms you may name. I — obey you in every particular. If you insist upon it, I — obey you. You must come to see me often ; I — be pleased to have you come. The next time you come, you must bring your wife ; I — be delighted to see her. I — have much pleasure in complying with your request. If you — grant my request, I — esteem it a great favour. I — be sorry if you incur any trouble on my account. You must come ; we — be disappointed if you don't. If I fail this time, I — have another chance next year.

(γ) I think I — write to him at once. I think I — hear from him very soon. If we do not make haste, we — not be in time. If we start at once, we — arrive before dark. If I meet him, I — tell him so. But I don't think I — meet him today. I — pass his house on my way to school. I — just look in on my way. I — go this instant and ascertain the truth. I — not be at home all day ; I — be in my office. I — try and explain to you. I — not attempt to describe my mother's grief at the death of my father. I fear I — lose my way. I am

afraid I — not be able to come. I hope I — not be missed. I trust to your discretion, and hope I — not be disappointed.

(δ) I hope I — see you again soon. I am not quite well to-day ; I — not see any one but the doctor. I — not see you again this year. I — see what I can do in the matter. I — see (look) to the matter. We — never look upon his like again. I — see that you get the money. I — see you paid. I — see that the boys do no mischief. I — not hear of such a thing. I think I — hear from him shortly. I — see that she is properly cared for. I — see you avenged. I — see your wrongs righted. I — see justice done. I — see your orders executed. I — go and see what the matter. We — learn the truth very soon. We — inquire into the matter at once.

(η) I — have my old house pulled down. I — have a new one built in its place. We — have our country laid waste by the enemy. We — have our cities razed to the ground. We — have our homes burnt down. We — have our wives and sisters dishonoured. We — have our children butchered before our eyes. I — have him punished. I — have my servant carry your baggage for you. I — be very busy to-morrow ; I — have many people come. If I feel lonely, I — have some one come and bear me company He is not to be relied upon; I — have nothing to do with him. I — thank you for some bread I fear I — have my things stolen. I — have my things secured.

(θ) I — never forget your kindness. I — never taste strong drink. I — never see my native land again. I — never consent to such a proposal.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 私デ御用ニ立ツナラ仕合セニ存ジマス (2) 私ハ今度ハ癒ルマイト思フ (3) 私ハ直キニ全快スルダロウト思フ (4) 私ハ死ヌダロウト思フ (5) 金ガ入ルナラ貸シテ上ゲヨウ (6) 私ガ悪ルカツタ。誤リマス。將來ハ愼ミマス (7) 決シテ二度ト斯樣ナ事ハ致シマセン (8) 是レカラハ決シテ酒ヲ飮ミマセン (9) 是レカラハ決シテアノ樣ナ所ヘハ參リマセン (10) 若シ金ガ來ナケレバ借リナケレバナラヌ (11) 其金サイ來レバ今ニモ返濟スルヿガ出來マス (12) 今月末ニハ間違ナク返濟シマス (13) 成効ハ覺束カナイガ兎ニ角遣ツテ見ヨウ (14) 急ガナイト間ニ合ハナイ (15) 金ヲ返サナケレバ訴ヘマスゾ (16) 御用立テタ金

チ御返濟ナケレバ不本意ナガラ訴ヘナケレバナラヌ (17) 私ハ生キテ故郷ヘ歸ラレマイト思フ (18) 仕事チ御引受ケスルコトガ出來ヨウト思フ (19) 明日確答チ致シマス (20) 全快シナイト學問チ止メナケレバナラヌ (21) 御願ヒチ聞キ入レテ下サレバ實ニ有難イ

§ 5. "Shall" and "Will" in the Second and Third Persons.

In the Second and Third Persons, there is no confusion in the use of *Shall* and *Will*. *You will* or *he will* either denotes Simple Futurity, or the Subject's Determination in certain cases; while *you shall* or *he shall* denotes the Speaker's Determination, except in archaic style.

(1) You will, He will.

In the Second and Third Persons, *Will* has two uses: —

I. (I shall) You will, He will.
II. (I will), You will, He will.

I. **(I shall), You will, He will:** — Here *will* is a symbolic auxiliary, and these forms denote *Involuntary Actions* or *Simple Futurity*: —

(*a*) **Need**: —
- I am sorry I can not lend you the money, for *I shall need* it very soon.
- You must keep the money, for *you will need* it by and by.
- Tell him not to spend the money, for *he will need* it very soon.

(*b*) **Necessity**: —
- If I fail in the examination, *I shall have to* serve in the army.
- If you do not write more carefully, *you will have to* rewrite it.
- If he fails again, *he will have to* leave school.

(*c*) **Ability**: —
- If I receive the money I expect, *I shall be able* to accommodate you with the loan.
- If you are diligent in practising it, *you will* soon be able to speak English well.
- If he does not know the exact address, *he will never be able* to find the place.

(*d*) **Passivity**: —
- If I neglect my duty, *I shall be blamed*.
- If you act against orders, *you will be punished*.
- If he does not amend, *he will be dismissed*.

(*e*) **Emotion**: —
- *I shall be happy* to be of service to you.
- *You will be sorry* for it afterwards.
- *He will be delighted* to see you.

(*f*) **Perception**: —
- *We shall* soon *know* the truth.
- *You will find* that what I say is true.
- *They will* soon *find out* their mistake.

(*g*) **Expectation**: —
- I fear *I shall* fail.
- I hope *you will* succeed.
- I am afraid *he will* die.

(*h*) **Result**: —
- If I work too hard, *I shall* make myself sick.
- If you overwork yourself, *you will* die.
- If he does not give up drinking, *he will* die.

(*i*) **Duty**: —
- *I shall* go to school to-morrow.
- So *will* my brother.

(*j*) **Pre-arrangement**: —
- *I shall* not be at home.
- Nor *will* my brother.

II. **(I will), You will, He will:** — *Will* in the Second and Third Persons is always a significant term corresponding to *I will* in three cases: —

(1) In Indirect Speech: —

(*a*) **Consent**: —
- *He says he will* undertake the work.
- (= *Yes, I will* undertake the work.)

(*b*) **Refusal**: —
- *He says he will not* comply with my demand.
- (= *No, I won't* comply with your demand.)

(*c*) **Promise**: —
- *He says he will* do his best.
- (= *I will* do my best.)

(*d*) **Offer**: —
- *He says he will* accompany me.
- (= *I will* accompany you.)

(*e*) **Choice**: —
- *He says he will* take the larger one.
- (= *I will* take the larger one.)

(*f*) **Resolution**: —
- *He says he will* never speak to you again.
- (= *I will* never speak to him again.)

(*g*) **Demand**: —
- *He says he will* have my answer
- (= *I will* have your answer.)

(*h*) **Threat**: —
- *He says he will* ruin me.
- (= *I will* ruin you.)

Note: — In Indirect Speech, the verbs *consent, refuse, promise, offer, threaten, insist,* etc, frequently take the place of *will*: —

{ He *says he will undertake* the work.
{ He *has consented to undertake* the work.

{ He *says he will not comply* with my demand.
{ He *refuses to comply* with my demand.

Exercise: — *Paraphrase "will."*

1. He says he will lend me any sum I may need.
2. He says he will lend me his assistance.
3. He says he will have his bill paid.
4. He says he will resign if he has not his salary raised.
5. He has acknowledged his fault, and says he will do so again.
6. He says he will work harder in future.
7. My uncle says he will make a man of me.
8. The man says he will turn us all out of doors.
9. He says he will accompany me.
10. He says he will not comply with your demand.

(2) **In Conditional Clauses:** — *Shall* of Simple Futurity is dropped in adverbial clauses of time or condition; and consequently *Will* in Conditional Clauses is always a significant term: —

(*a*) **Consent:** — *If you will* grant my request, I shall esteem it a great favour.

(*b*) **Refusal:** — *If you will not* comply with my demand, I shall have to bring an action against you.

(*c*) **Promise:** — *If you will* keep the secret, I will tell you.

(*d*) **Choice:** — *If you will* take that one, I will take the remaining one.

(*e*) **Demand:** — *If you will* have it so, I have nothing to say against it.

(3) **In Requests:** — *Will* in expressions of request, (generally in connection with such expressions as *I beg, I request, please*, etc.), is a significant term, leaving the action to the will or pleasure of the person addressed.

Since you refuse to obey my orders, *you will* please leave the house directly.
I beg *you will* accept of a small present.
I request *you will* look to the matter at once.

Note: — Simple *you will* is frequently used as a sort of mild imperative, as being less formal than *I beg you will* or *will you please?* —

On the receipt of this letter, *you will* at once return home.
When thou hast crossed the ford, *thou wilt* take care of thy footing up the left bank, as it is somewhat precipitous; *thou wilt* then keep straight forward. —*Scott.*
You will take some refreshment before you go.

Note: — *Will* is used as a significant term with various meanings derived from that of *determination* or *willingness*. The subject will be treated of further on. [See Pages 360, 361.]

Accidents *will* happen. Boys *will* be boys.
Nature *will* be obeyed. — *Blackie.*
The child is wilful; she *will* have everything her own way.

Translation Exercise.

(1) 私ハ滊車ニ間ニ合ハヌダロウト思フ (2) 急ゲバ間ニ合ヒマス (3) アナタハ今度落第スルト退校シナケレバナラヌ (4) 私ハ五年振リデ歸舍スル所デス (5) 御兩親ハ嘸御悦ビニナルデセウ (6) 伯父ガ學資ヲ出シテ呉レルト申シマス (7) 伯父ハ私ヲ一人前ノ人間ニシテ呉レルト申シテ居リマス (8) 皆ガ盡力シテ呉レルト云ヒマス (9) 彼ハ要求ニ應ジナケレバ辭職スルト云フテ居ル (10) 是カラハ最ツト勉強スルト申シマス (11) 彼ハ將來ハ愼ムト申シマスカラ赦ルシテヤツテ下サイ (12) 其人ハ引合フナラ其仕事ヲ引受ケヨウト云ヒマス (13) 彼ハ今月末ニハ屹度金ヲ返濟スルト云ヒマシタ (14) 彼ハアナタガ金ヲ直グ返濟セヌナラ訴ヘルト云フテ居ル (15) 金ヲ暫ク貸シテ下サレバ助カリマス (16) 今月末ニ屹度返スナラ貸シテ上ゲマセウ 17. アナタ是非ト仰ルナラ私ハ反對ハシマセン (18) 是カラハ注意シテ下サイ (19) 本件ハ小生一身上ニ關スル重要ノ件ニ候ヘバ單ヘニ御盡力アランコトヲ乞フ (20) 書キ樣ガ粗漏ダ是カラ注意シテ書ケ (20) 此書面御落手次第直チニ御歸參有之度候

(2) You shall, He shall.

Shall in the Second or Third Person corresponds to *Will* in the First Person, and expresses the Speaker's Volition, usually in the shape of *promise* or *threat*: —

I will be king, and *you shall* be my prime minister.
I will avenge my brother; this man *shall* die.
I will see that *he shall* have justice done him.
I will see that *he shall* be deservedly dealt with.

Shall of Promise or Threat, when used with a Verb of Active meaning, implies causation, and when used with a Passive Verb corresponds to *I will* with an Active Verb: —

(*a*) He **shall do** it. = { I **will let** him **do** it. / I **will make** him **do** it.
(*b*) It **shall be done**. = I **will do** it.

CASE I: — When *Shall* of Promise or Threat is used with a Verb of an Active meaning, it corresponds to *I will let* or *I will make*. Here the Speaker controls the action in the sense of permission, compulsion, or prohibition: —

You shall have your own way.
If you will not obey me, *you shall leave* the house.
You shall not set foot in this house again.

The causative meaning implied in *shall* may be that of permission [*to let*] or of compulsion [*to make*]: —

(*a*) **Promise**: — { ***You shall go,*** if you wish it. (= *I will let you go.*)
(*b*) **Threat**: — { ***You shall go,*** whether you are willing or not. (= *I will make you go.*)

The case is slightly alterered in the negative. *Shall not* of Promise corresponds to *I will not let*; and *Shall not* of Threat corresponds to *I will not allow*: —

(*a*) **Promise**: — { ***He shall not die.*** (= *I will not let him die.*)
(*b*) **Threat**: — { ***He shall not live.*** (= *I will not allow him to live.*)

"Shall" and "Must."

There is a radical difference in meaning between *shall* thus used and *must*. The latter signifies a necessity arising from external circumstances, while *shall* denotes a necessity derived from the speaker's will. Compare: —

{ *You must* die, because your crime deserves death.
{ *You shall* die; it is my will that you die.

{ *He must* be saved. = *We must* save him.
{ *He shall* be saved. = *I will* save him.

Shall is frequently used after *must* in strong emotional language, and the two words form a climax: —

"I myself will stand at the lattice," said Rebecca, "and describe to you as I can what passes without."
"*You must not — you shall not,*" exclaimed Ivanhoe; "each lattice, each aperture will soon be a mark for the archers." — *Scott.*
You must not, shall not touch these two. — *Scott.*

Explain the difference of meaning: —

1. { He must not die. / He shall not die.
2. { It must be done. / It shall be done.
3. { You must not set foot in this house again. / You shall not set foot in this house again.

CASE II. — *Shall* of Promise or Threat, when used with a Passive Verb, generally corresponds to *I will* with the active form. Here the speaker not only controls the action, but takes an active part in it: —

You shall be rewarded. = { *I will cause you to be rewarded.* / *I will reward you.*
He shall be punished. = { *I will cause him to be punished.* / *I will punish him.*

Shall of Promise or Threat is therefore frequently used with verbs of a passive meaning, which corresponds to *I will* with verbs of causative meaning: —

[*Passive with "Shall."*]		[*Causative with "Will."*]
It **shall be** so.	=	I **will make** or **have** it so.
You **shall have** it.	=	I **will give** it to you.
You **shall see**.	=	I **will show** you.
You **shall hear.** / You **shall know.**	=	I **will tell** you.
He **shall die.**	=	I **will put** him **to death.**
He **shall live.**	=	I **will save** or **spare** him.
He **shall come.**	=	I **will bring** or **take** him.
He **shall go.**	=	I **will send** him.

Idioms: — The following are idiomatic constructions with *Shall* of Determination: —

(*a*) ***Nothing shall induce me*** to do such a thing.
{ = *I will not be induced by anything* to do such a thing.
{ = *I will not* do such a thing *on any account.*

(*b*) ***Nothing shall hinder me*** from effecting my purpose.

{ = *I will not be hindered by anything* from effecting.....
{ = *I will* effect my purpose *in spite of any obstacle.*

EXERCISE (*a*): — *Paraphrase "shall" into terms of "will."*

(*α*) Rover *shall* not hurt the pigs. Order *shall* be my guide. *You shall* have a short lesson to-day. This diamond *shall* be his who shall earn it by the noblest deed. If he wishes to go to school, *he shall* go. *He shall* go whether he wants to or not. If you wish to go, *you shall* come with me the next time I go there. *You shall* smart for this. I sentence you to prison, and there *you shall* remain during my pleasure. *You shall* have every assistance in my power. I am very sorry that my boys disturbed you; *they shall not* do so again. I will leave no means untried to find him out; *he shall not* escape me this time. *You shall not* touch him. I will employ only diligent men; idle men *shall not* enter my service

(*β*) *You shall not* want for anything, while I have any money left. I will write to your father; *he shall* know it. No man *shall* leave the house without my permission. If he must die, *he shall not* die alone. If you wish it, *it shall* be done. *You shall* be obeyed in every particular. Your words *shall* be law to me. I can not see him die; *he shall* be saved I will catch the offender; the man *shall* be brought to justice. *You shall* be heard. Your petition *shall* be granted you. *You shall* be provided with everything necessary. If you wish it to be a secret, *it shall* remain a secret forever. I can not say for certain at present; *you shall* have a definite answer to-morrow. Blue becomes my complexion best, and blue *it shall* be.

(*γ*) *You shall* have no cause for complaint in future. *It shall* be my task to make you as comfortable as possible. Nothing *shall* induce me to do such a foolish thing. Nothing *shall* hinder me from doing my duty *It shall* be so, if you particularly wish it. — *Scott.* *Thou shalt* want ere I shall. — *Robber Knights' Motto.* The ruins of this castle *shall* bury my body and my shame, ere I consent to such base and dishonourable composition. — *Scott.*

(*δ*) At all events, let me choose the name — That *you shall*, my dear. — Let it be Robert. — If you wish it, *it shall* be Robert. *You shall* have your own way. — *Marryat.*

(*ε*) I tell thee, *thou shalt never* leave this house, or *thou shalt* leave it as Maurice de Bracy's wife. — *Scott.* If you have lost your way, *you shall* be willingly supplied with such conveniences as this cavern will afford — *Johnson* "Willingly, must willingly *shall it* be done," said Gurth, and instantly departed to execute the commission. — *Scott.* Name the price, and *it*

shall be paid. — *Scott.* By my saint, your commands *shall* be obeyed. — *Scott.* The blood of my master *shall not* be spilt, while I have a drop a left in my veins. — *Scott.* *It shall* never be said of me that I deserted a friend in need. *You shall* hear my story after dinner — *Marryat.* *Thou shalt* be the companion of my flight. — *Johnson.* Unless they can teach without resorting to such a fundamental error as flogging, my boy *shall never* go to school. — *Marryat.*

EXERCISE (*b*): — *Express in terms of "shall."*

(*α*) *I will* let him go, if he wishes it. Whether he wants to go or not, *I will* make him go. If they will not obey me, *I will* make them leave the house at once. *I will* make him smart for this. *I will* not let you want for anything while I am alive. I am sorry my dog disturbed you; *I will* not allow him to do so again. *I will* not allow any one to leave the house without my permission. *I will* not let the poor man die. *I will* save him. *I will* spare him. *I will* not allow you to go home before you have learned your lesson.

(*β*) *I will* not allow idle men to enter my service. *I will* not allow him to escape me this time. *I will* not allow you to set foot in this house again. *I will* not allow her to be ill-treated, while I am by. *I will* not forget your good service. *I will* reward you. *I will* punish the offender. *I will* make an example of him. *I will* inform you of everything that happens. You expect to be punished; then *I will* not disappoint you. *I will* do it at once. *I will* obey you in every particular. *I will* bring the man to justice. *I will* grant your request. *I will* provide you with the necessary funds *I will* do it most willingly.

(*γ*) Name the price, and *I will* pay it. If you want the position yourself, *I will* give it to you. *I will* give you a definite answer to-morrow. *I will* lend you my assistance in the matter. When I am prime minister, *I will* make you my secretary. I assure you that *I will* give you no cause for complaint in future. *I will* tell you everything. *I will* make it my study to make you happy. *I will* keep the matter a secret. If you insist upon it, *I will* make it 100 yen. *I will* not do such a thing on any account. *I will* effect my purpose in spite of any hindrance.

EXERCISE (*c*): — *Suppy "shall" or "will."*

(*α*) I think I — write to him. I think I — hear from him shortly. I think we — have no more snow this winter. I think there — be no more snow this winter. If I fail in the examination, I — have to serve in the army. Even if you fail this time, you — not have to serve. I — obey you; your word —

be law to me. I — catch him yet; he — not escape me again. The train — leave in five minutes. I fear I — not be in time for it. If you make haste, you — be in time.

(*β*) I — be happy to be of service to you; you — have every assistance in my power. I — tell you all; you — know everything. I — employ only diligent men; idle men — not enter my service. If you win the race, this watch — be yours. When you finish reading this book, you — have a new one. You — find it more difficult, but more interesting. I — write to your father all about it; he — know it. I am very sorry you are going; we — all miss you as much as you — miss us. Yes, I — consent; you — have my daughter; she — be your bride. I — be glad to see him. My brother — also be delighted to see him. If you — lend me the money, I — be much obliged to you. I — esteem it a great favour, if you — grant my request.

(*γ*) I forbid you my house; you — never set foot in it. He says he — never set foot in this house again. If you — not tell any one, I — tell you. If you — take that one, I — take this one. I beg you — use your influence in my behalf. Since you refuse to obey my orders, you — please leave the house at once. If you — not obey me, you — leave the house this instant. I am sure he — pay you. He — pay me whether he will or not. The moon — soon be up, so we — not need a light. He and I — be very happy to be of service to you. I — enjoy my stay there do much. I hope you — enjoy it also.

EXERCISE (*d*): — *Translate the following, making use of "Shall" of Determination.*

(1) 明日確答ヲ致シマス (2) 小供等ニ悪戯ヲ爲セマセン (3) 明後日迄ニハ屹度掃ヘテ置キマス (4) 小供ガ御邪魔ヲシテ濟ミマセン是カラ其様ナ事ハサセマセン (5) 此人ハ生カシテハ置カレン (6) 己ガ大臣ニ成ツタラオ前ヲ秘書官ニシテ遣ロウ (7) 君ガ行キタケレバ此次行ク時連レテ行カウ (8) 覺エテ居レ酷イ目見セテ遣ル (9) 立ツテノ御望ミナラ其ノ通リニ致シマセウ (10) 己ガ生キテ居ル内ハオ前ニ不自由ハサセナイ (11) お前ハ是カラ此家ニ出入ヲ許サン (12) 今度コソハ逃ガサヌ (13) 話ヲ今晩聞カソウ (14) ソリヤ五十圓ニシテ置ケト仰ルナラ五十圓ニ致シマス (15) 兩三日立ツタラ金子ヲ差上ゲマス (16) 私ノ力ニ及ブ丈ノ御盡力ハ致シマス (17) 私ノ子供ハ決シテ其様ナ處ヘハ遣リマセン

§ 6. "Shall" and "Will" in Questions.

The very nature of questions precludes the idea of determination on the part of the interrogator. The determination, when there happens to be any, rests with the person interrogated.

A question containing *shall* or *will* either asks —

(*a*) What the Second Person *knows* or *expects* to happen, independently of his will [*Simple Futurity*]; or —

(*b*) What the Second Person *wishes* or *intends* to bring about [*Determination*].

"Shall" and "Will" in Questions and Answers.

Simple Futurity.		*Determination.*	
Shall you?	**I shall**	**Will you?**	**I will**
Shall I?	**You will**	**Shall I?**	**(You shall)**
Will he?	**He will**	**Shall he?**	**(He shall)**

Note —

(*a*) That the Second Person in Questions correspond to the First Person in Answers, and *vice versa*;

(*b*) That the same auxiliary is used in corresponding Questions and Answers, except in a single instance;

(*c*) That this single instance is "*Shall I?* — *You will*"; the form *Will I?* not being commonly used owing to the absurdity of asking another about one's own determination;

(*d*) That *Shall I?* consequently two uses;

(*e*) That *Shall I?* and *Shall he?* which ask the determination of the person interrogated, are not always answered by *You shall* or *He shall.*

(1) Shall you? Will you?

I. **Shall you?** — This form (corresponding to *I shall*) is used in questions of simple futurity.

The form *Shall you?* is preferred to *Will you?* in speaking of necessary or involuntary actions, since the latter is reserved for cases where willingness is asked. *Shall you?* is not inadmissible from considerations of courtesy, since the very nature of questions precludes the idea of the speaker's control. It would be a great mistake to regard it as having anything to do with *you shall.*

Shall you? is used in all questions to which the answer *I shall* is expected. Answer the following questions: —

(*a*) *Shall you need* the money very soon?
(*b*) When *shall you have to* serve in the army?
(*c*) When *shall you be able* to pay me?
(*d*) *Shall you be blamed* if you neglect your duties?
(*e*) *Shall you not be glad* to see him?
(*f*) When *shall you meet* him again?
(*g*) *Shall you* go to school to-morrow?
(*h*) Where *shall you* be during the holidays?

II. **Will you?** — This form (which corresponds to *I will*) leaves the performance of the action to the will or determination of the person interrogated, and can not properly be called a true future form. It is used in asking willingness or determination, in the shape of —

(*a*) **Invitation**: — *Will (won't) you? = Are you (not) willing to?*

Will you (or *won't you*) come with me?
Yes, I will. (*No, I won't.*)

(*b*) **Request**: — *Will you? = Are you willing to?*

Will you kindly show me the way?
Yes, I will with pleasure.

Note: — The negative form *Won't you?* is never used in making a request. The conditional form *Would you?* is considered more polite. *You will* (= *You will please* or *I beg you will*) is also used as a mild imperative.

(*c*) **Promise**: — *Will you (not)? = Do you promise (not) to?*

Will you be more careful in future?
Yes, I will.

(*d*) **Choice**: — *Will you? = Do you choose to?*

Which *will you take?*
I will take the larger one.

(*e*) **Intention**: — *Will you? = Are you going to?*

What *will you* do?
I will (or *shall*) resign.

Note: — In asking the intention of the person interrogated, the form *Are you going to?* is preferred to *Will you?*

When *are you going* abroad?
When *are you going* to send your son to school?
When *are you coming* to my house?

(2) Shall I? Shall we?

The form *Will I?* is only used in Scotland. It is not correct, except in a single instance, where one repeats a question asked by another, as: — "*Will I* come? To be sure I will."

I. **Shall I?** — The chief use of this form is to ask what the person interrogated wishes to be done: —

What *shall I* do?
(= What do you wish me to do?)

There are cases, however, where one may want to know what another happens to know concerning oneself (*Simple Futurity*); and *shall I?* being the only available form, is used for the purpose: —

At what time *shall I* arrive at Kobe?
(= Can you tell me at what time I shall arrive?)

Hence the two uses of this form: —

(*a*) **"Shall I?" of Simple Futurity** asks what the person interrogated knows or expects concerning the interrogator. The regular answer is *you will* of simple futurity. Answer the following: —

What books *shall I need* at school?
Shall I have to serve in the army?
When *shall I be able* to speak English well?
Shall I meet any one there?
Shall I die, if I drink this?
When *shall I* arrive in America?

(*b*) **"Shall I?" of Determination** is generally convertible into *will you?* There are two cases: —

Case I: — When used with a verb of an active meaning, it asks the *wish* or *opinion* of the person interrogated: —

What shall I do? = (*a*) *What do you wish me to do?* / (*b*) *What ought I to do?*

In this case, the regular answer is an imperative; the form *you may* may also be used: —

Where *shall I* sit? (*You may*) *sit* here.
What *shall I* do? (*You may*) *write* your exercise.
Oh! what *shall I* do? *Run* and *hide* in the house.

Note : — Why is it wrong to answer with *you shall ?*

{ *Shall I* open the window ?
  Yes, *you shall* open it.

Case II : — When used with a verb of a passive meaning, *Shall I ?* asks the intention of the person interrogated : —

What shall I have ? = *When are you going to give me ?*

In this case the regular answer is *you shall :* —

{ When *shall I* have your answer ?
  You *shall have* it in three day's time.

II. **Shall we ?** — This form likewise has two uses : —

(*a*) "**Shall we ?**" **of Simple Futurity** asks what the person interrogated knows or expects ; and the answer is either *we shall* or *you will :* —

{ What time *shall we* arrive at Kobe ?
  (*a*) *We shall* arrive at six.
  (*b*) *You will* arrive at six.

(*b*) "**Shall we ?**" **of Determination** asks the *choice* of the person interrogated, and the regular answer is *Let us* of proposition. Compare : —

Where *shall we* go ? — *Let us* go to the field. — Yes, and *we will* play base-ball.

(3) Will he ? Shall he ?

I. **Will he ?** — This form asks what the person interrogated knows or expects about the third person [*Simple Futurity*], and the answer is *he will.* Answer the following questions : —

Will he need the money soon ?
Will he have to serve in the army, if he fails ?
Will he be able to get up in a week's time ?
Where *will he be* to-morrow ?

II. **Shall he ?** — This form (like *shall I ?*) is generally convertible into *will you ?* There are likewise two cases : —

Case I : — When used with a verb of an active meaning, it asks the *wish* of the person interrogated : —

What shall he do ? = *What do you wish him to do ?*

In this case, the regular answer is an indirect imperative : —

{ When *shall he* come ?
  Let him come at any time to-morrow.

Case II : — When used with a verb of a passive meaning, it asks the *intention* of the person interrogated : —

What shall he have ? = *What are you going to give him ?*

In this case, the regular answer is *he shall :* —

{ What salary *shall he* have ?
  He shall have 100 yen per month.

"Shall I ?" and "Shall he ?" of Determination.

Active Verb.	**What shall I do ?**	**Do** this.
	What shall he do ?	**Let him do** this.
Passive Verb.	**What shall I have ?**	**You shall have....**
	What shall he have ?	**He shall have ...**

(4) Who will ? Who shall ?

I. **Who will ?** — This is the usual form for asking what the person interrogated *knows* or *expects* [*Simple Futurity*] : —

So the governor has resigned. *Who will* be appointed governor in his place ?

II. **Who shall ?** — This form, which apparently leaves the decision with the person interrogated, is used as an unanswerable question, nearly equivalent to *Who can ?*

Who shall decide when doctors disagree ?
Use every man after his desert, and *who shall* escape whipping ?
Twenty months are elapsed ; *who shall* restore them ?
— *Johnson.*

EXERCISE (*a*) : — *State the difference between the two forms.*

1. { Shall you see him to-day or to-morrow ?
   { Will you see him to-day or to-morrow ?

2. { Shall you go ?
   { Will you go ?

3. { Shall you have something ?
   { Will you have something ?

4. { Will he come ?
   { Shall he come ?

5. { When will he go to school ?
   { When shall he go to school ?

6. { Will he be punished ?
   { Shall he be punished ?

7. { Shall he have her ?
   { Will she have him ?

8. { Will they be allowed to try again if they fail ?
   { Shall they be allowed to try again if they fail ?

9. { Who will perform such a task ?
   { Who shall perform such a task ?

EXERCISE (*b*) : — *Paraphrase "shall."*

At what time *shall I* call on you ? At what time *shall* my brother call on you ? *Shall I* bring my brother with me ? Some one wants to speak to you ; *shall he* come in ? *Shall I* give you a glass of wine ? The man has come ; where *shall he* carry your luggage ? Where *shall I* take the letter ? When *shall I* hear from you ? I will tell you a story ; what *shall it* be about ? *Shall I* have your assistance in the matter ? So you have decided to engage the man ; what salary *shall he* have ? When *shall I* go to school ? When *shall* your son go to school ? When *shall I* see you again ? *Shall I* post that letter for you ? *Shall I* send the things home for you ? When *shall I* have your answer ? *Shall he* have your daughter ?

EXERCISE (*c*) : — *Express in terms of "shall."*

At what time do you wish me to come ? At what time do you wish him to come ? Do you wish me to bring him ? What size do you want the table made ? Will you have a glass of wine ? When are you going to give him your answer ? What answer do you wish me to give him ? What salary are you going to give him ? Where do you wish me to carry your luggage ? Where do you wish him to take the letter ? When are you going to write to me ? Will you lend me your assistance ? Do you wish me to put more charcoal on the fire ? Do you want me to go or stay where I am ? Do you want him to go or stay where he is ?

EXERCISE (*d*) : — *Answer the following questions.*

(*α*) Shall you need this book to-morrow ? Will you lend it to me for a few days ? When shall you be able to call on me ?

Will you please come and see me in the afternoon ? Shall you meet Mr. Ito this evening ? Will you please ask him when he is coming ? Shall you go to school to-morrow ? I am going for a walk ; won't you come with me ?

(*β*) Will you go, or shall I ? Will you go now or afterwards ? There are two rooms, one of twelve mats, and the other of eight mats ; which will you take ? Shall you pass the Post Office on your way to school ? Will you inquire when the next mail leaves for ? When shall I come ? What time shall I call on you ? What time shall he call on you ? When shall I bring him ? When shall I have your answer ? What salary shall he have ? When shall he have his answer ?

(*γ*) Shall I go, or stay where I am ? Shall he go, or stay where he is ? Shall I have to serve in the army ? When shall I be able to read such books ? What time shall I arrive at Kobe ? What shall we play to-day ? Shall I die, if I drink this ? When shall I hear from you ? Shall I open the window ? How old shall I be next year ? Where shall I take your letter ? Where shall the man carry your luggage ? I will tell you a story ; what shall it be about ? They have brought the tree : where shall they plant it ? When will he arrive ? Shall he have your daughter ? Will she have him ?

EXERCISE (*e*) : — *Supply "shall" or "will."*

(*α*) — you pass the tailor's on the way ? Yes, I —. — you inquire if my new suit is ready ? Certainly, I —. — you meet Mr. A. to-day ? I think I —. — you please tell him to return my book ? I — do so without fail. — you see him now or afterward ? I — see him at once. — you be at home this evening ? No, I — be at the club. — I give you a glass of wine ? — you have some beer ? Yes, I — take a glass. Lend me some money, — you ? Yes, I — with great pleasure. How much — you lose by the failure of that bank ? I — not lose much.

(*β*) Where — you be during the holidays ? I — be at Nikko. — you be able to go out this evening ? No, I — have no time to go in the evening. — you not run a great risk by lending out money without security ? I hope I — not. — you assist me in the matter ? Yes, I — ; I — be most happy to do so. — you hold this trunk for a moment ? Certainly, I —. — you be good enough to get a ticket for me ? — you be sorry to leave so many friends behind you ? — you be at leisure this afternoon ? Yes, I — be at leisure all the afternoon.

(*γ*) What books — I need at school ? You — not need any. What books — you need ? What — he need ? — I

have to serve in the army? You — not have to serve. — you have to serve? When — I be able to read such books? You — soon be able to read them. When — you be able to go abroad? When — he be able to speak English? — not the rope break? — you not break it, if you pull it too hard?

(*δ*) — the operation give me any pain? — I feel much pain? — I call on you, or — you call on me? When — the train arrive? It — arrive in ten minutes. — I have your asssistance? Yes, you — have every assistance in my power. — you tell us a story? Yes, I —. What — it be about? I want to see your brother on important business; — he be back to-norrow? Yes, he — be back to-morrow evening; at what time — he call on you?

(*ε*) — he be able to call before nine? I think he — be able to do so. — you please shut the door? — I open the window? When — I bring my friend? — you see him to-day? So you have decided to engage the man; what salary — he have? He — have fifty yen per month. — he accept the appointment on that salary? — you go on foot? — I send for a kuruma? If I start now, what time — I arrive? — it be dark, when I arrive? When — I give him this medicine? — he recover soon?

(*f*) Translation Exercise.

(1) 何時御返事ガ聞カレマスカ (2) 明日返事ヲ致シマス (3) 何時伺ヒマセウカ (4) 朝早ク御出ナサイ (5) 今晩ハ御暇デスカ (6) 今晩ハ横濱ヘ參リマス (7) 何時御歸リデスカ (8) 明日歸リマス (9) 御歸リ次第私ノ所ヘ來テ下サイマセンカ (10) 歸リ次第上リマス (11) 明朝ハ幾時ニ御起シ申シマセウカ (12) 七時ニ起シテ吳レ (13) 車屋ガ來マシタ。御荷物ヲ何所ヘ運バセマセウカ (14) 私ノ室ヘ持タセテ下サイ (15) 私ノ友人ヲ何時運レテ來マセウカ (16) 弟ヲ何時伺ハセマセウカ (17) 今日御會ヒニナリマスカ (18) 大事ナ用デ御兄樣ニ御目ニ掛リタイガ明日ハ御歸リニナリマスカ (19) 明晩ハ歸ルダロウト思ヒマスガ幾時頃ニ伺ハセマセウカ (20) 九時前ニ來ラレマセウカ (21) 九時迄ニハ伺ヘルダロウト思ヒマス (22) 戸ヲ閉メテ吳レマセンカ (23) 窓ヲ明ケマセウカ

§ 7. "Shall" and "Will" in Indirect Speech.

Indirect Quotations are clauses introduced by Verbs of *Saying, Thinking*, or *Knowing* [*say, declare, promise, ask, inquire, think, hope, fear, know*, etc.].

The use of *Shall* and *Will* in Indirect Speech forms an apparent exception to the ordinary usage owing to the change in the person of the subject: —

He says *I shall* have his assistance. [*Determination.*]
He says *he shall* be able to assist me. [*Simple Futurity.*]

I. **"Shall" in Indirect Speech** denotes —

(*a*) **Simple Futurity,** when *Shall* has the Same Subject as the Introductory Clause: —

{ *He says he shall* need the money.
{ (= *He says,* "*I shall* need the money.")

The Indians give no quarter, because they believe that *they shall* inherit the skill and prowess of every adversary whom they destroy.

They find themselves uneasy when they are apart, and therefore conclude that *they shall* be happy together. —*Johnson.*

(*b*) **Determination,** when *Shall* and the Introductory Clause have Different Subjects: —

{ He says *I shall* have his assistance.
{ (= "*You shall* have my assistance.")
{ He says *you shall* have his assistance.
{ (= "*He shall* have my assistance.")

Note: — It is *Shall* of Determination that is used in Noun Clauses after verbs of *intention, decision, command,* or *proposition.* Compare: —

{ They say that *you shall* go abroad.
{ They have decided that *you shall* go abroad.
{ It has been decided that *you shall* go abroad.

(*a*) **Intention**: — My father intends that I *shall* be a merchant.

(*b*) **Determination**: — It has been decided that you *shall* be sent abroad.

(*c*) **Agreement**: — The umpires have agreed that the race *shall* be rowed again.

(*d*) **Command**: — The principal has given orders that no one *shall* leave the school.

(*e*) **Proposition**: — It is proposed that the new method *shall* be universally adopted.

II. "**Will**" **in Indirect Speech** denotes —

(*a*) **Determination,** when *Will* has the Same Subject as the Introductory Clause : —

{ *You say you will* do your best.
{ (="*I will* do my best.")

{ *He says he will* undertake the work.
{ (="*I will* undertake the work.")

(*b*) **Simple Futurity,** when *Will* and the Introductory Clause have Different Subjects : —

{ He says *you will* recover.
{ (="*He will* recover.")

{ You think *he will* die.
{ (= "*He will* die.")

Note : — The only exception occurs in Noun Clauses after Verbs denoting *request*, where *will* is always significant :—

{ He begs that *you will* stay.
{ (= I beg *you will* stay.)

Compare : —

{ He has requested that no one *will* leave the room.
{ He has given orders that no one *shall* leave the room.

"Shall" and "Will" in Indirect Speech.

Simple Futurity.	*Determination.*
I hope I shall	I promise I will
I hope you will	I promise you shall
I hope he will	I promise he shall
You hope you shall	You promise you will
You hope I shall*	You promise I shall
You hope he will	You promise he shall
He hopes he shall	He promises he will
He hopes I shall*	He promises I shall
He hopes you will	He promises you shall

Note : — The only exception to the above rules are the cases marked (*) in the table. Here simple futurity ought to be denoted by —

You hope *I will* } = "I hope *you will.*"
He hopes *I will* }

But established usage demands *shall.* Consequently "*You say* or *he says I shall*" has two uses : —

(*a*) *Simple Futurity :* — He says *I shall* succeed.
(*b*) *Determination :* — He says *I shall* have his assistance.

EXERCISE (*a*) : — *State the difference in meaning.*

1. { He says he shall die. / He says he will die.
2. { He says you shall live. / He says you will live.
3. { He says he shall know the truth very soon. / He says he will know the truth at once.
4. { He says you shall know the truth at once. / He says you will know the truth very soon.
5. { He says you shall be punished. / He says you will be punished.
6. { He says the work shall be ready in a few days. / He says the work will be ready in a few days.

EXERCISE (*b*) : — *Supply "shall" or "will."*

(*α*) He fears he — not succeed, but says he — make the attempt. He fears he — fail, but I do not think he —. You think you — succeed, but I do not think you —. He says he — not need the money for some time yet. He promises that I — have the money very soon. He swears he — be revenged. He promises that his part — be fulfilled. You say I — lose, butI think I — gain. The doctor says I — be all right in a week, but that my brother — not be quite well for some time yet. The man thinks he — recever, but the doctor has told me in private that he — die.

(*β*) He says he — never forget your kindness. He says he — do his utmost He says he — do anything to oblige you. He says he — be happy to be of service to you. They have decided that you and I — be sent to Europe. The principal says you — have the position. The principal has given orders that no one — leave the room. It is requested that every body — keep to his room. He says he — tell me all ; that I — know everything.

(*γ*) She is very angry with you, and says she — never speak to you again. He has consented that you — take his place. He begs you — favour him with your company. I have decided that my son — go to England. My father has decided that I — go to England. We do not know whether we — succeed or not, but we have decided that an attempt — be made. The

joiner wants to know what size he — make the table. He wants to know if he — come to-morrow. He wants to know if you — be able to help him.

(δ) I will ask him if he — help me. He says I — have his assistance. He says I — not want for anything. It has been decided that the school — be opened next year. It is suggested by some that a committee — be appointed to inquire into the matter. It is required by the law that each steamship — carry three lights. I — see that he — have justice done him. He — see that you — be avenged. My brother writes to say that he — be happy to comply with your request. He says he — accept your offer. He wants to know if you — need his services.

Translation Exercise.

(1) 彼ハ自分デハ癪ル積リデ居ルケレモ醫者ハ私ニ内所デ死ヌト云フタ (2) 彼ハ御恩ヲ忘レヌト云フテ居ル 3. 彼ハ御恩ヲ報ユルコハ出來ヌト云フテ居ル (4) 彼ハ自分デハ成功スル積デ居ルケレモ人ハ皆失敗スルト云フテ居ル (5) 彼ハ私ニ不自由ヲ爲セヌト云フテ居ル (6) 大工ガ九月一日迄ニ普請ヲ竣工スル約束ヲシタ (7) 君ガ洋行サセラレルコニ極マツタ (8) 審判官ガ競走ヲ遣リ直スコニ決定シタ (9) 彼ハ成功ハ覺束ナイガ何ニシロ遣ツテ見ルト云フテ居ル (10) 洋服屋ガ私ノ着物ヲ次ノ日曜迄ニ出來ストト云フタ (11) 彼ハ自分デハ屹度儲カルト云フテ居ルガ私ハ却ツテ損ヲスルダロウト思フ (12) 彼ハ明日ハ來ラレヌト申シマス

§ 8. Occasional Uses of "Shall."

Shall in the Second and Third Persons, besides expressing the Speaker's volition in the form of promise or threat, has some other special uses : —

(1) **"Shall" of Commandment** :— *Thou shalt* not kill. Neither *shalt thou* commit adultery. Neither *shalt thou* steal.

(2) **"Shall" of Legislation** : — Art. I. The association *shall* be called the English Speaking Society.

Note : — *Shall*, in these two uses, denotes the highest form of authority, which is accorded only to the supreme will in the universe [God] or in the state [the Legislator].

Thou shalt not kill.= It is my will that thou shalt not.

(3) **"Shall" of Prophecy** : — Behold, a virgin *shall* be with child, and *shall* bring forth a son, and they *shall* call his name Emmanuel.

Note 1 : — In Older English, *Shall* is used in the Second or Third Person in making strong assertions. It attributes the event to divine ordinance or the decree of fate, and denotes a futurity, not controlled, but answered for by the speaker, as a sort of promise.

Note 2 : — This use of *Shall* to denote *Certain or Inevitable Futurity* occurs most frequently in the Bible : —

Blessed are the meek : for they *shall* inherit the earth.
Blessed are the merciful : for they *shall* obtain mercy.
As it was in the beginning, is now, and ever *shall* be.

The following are examples from Shakespeare : —

And if I die, no man *shall* pity me.
If you much note him, you *shall* offend him.
They are fairies ; he who speaks to them *shall* die.

Note 3 : — In Modern English, *Will* is used in making strong assertions, except by some few writers who affect archaism, and make use of *shall* in a prophetic strain : —

Such a man *will* succeed.
That time *will* never come.—*Johnson.*

Compare : —

{ It ever has been so, and ever *will* be so.
{ It ever hath been so, and ever *shall* be so.

{ The time *will* come when you *will* listen to me.
{ The time *shall* come when you *shall* listen to me.

(4) **"Shall" in Dependent Clauses** : — In Adverbial Clauses of Time or Condition, introduced by *if, unless, when, while, before, after, till, as soon as*, etc., *shall* of simple futurity is omitted in Modern English. Compare : —

I think I *shall meet* him to-morrow. I will tell him when I *meet* him.
He *will arrive* in a few days. I'll let you know when he *arrives*.
I think it *will rain*. I shall not start if it *rains*.

Will is therefore, as we have seen, always a significant term when used in Conditional Clauses. *Shall*, on the contrary, when used in conditional clauses, always denotes simple futurity. This use of shall belongs to archaic style. Compare : —

{ If you *will* grant me the favour, I shall be much obliged.
{ If you *shall* succeed, you will be a lucky man.

(*a*) *Shall* in Regular Conditional Clauses : —

If any Catholic *shall* convert a Protestant to the Romish church, they shall both suffer death.

(*b*) *Shall* in Temporal Clauses of Conditional Meaning : —

When he *shall* appear, we shall be like him.—*Bible.*

His name will be remembered, as long as Japan *shall* endure.

(*c*) *Shall* in Relative Clauses of Conditional Meaning : —

This diamond shall be his who *shall* earn it by the noblest deed.

§ 9. Occasional Uses of "Will."

We have seen that *Will* is always a significant term denoting Volition in the First Person, and may or may not be so in the Second or Third Person. The following are the occasional uses of *Will* as a significant term : —

(*a*) **Will = must** : — The notion of determination frequently passes into that of insistence.

Accidents *will* happen.

Nature *will* be obeyed.—*Blackie.*

He does not care for what he eats, but he *will* have good wine.

She is distract : her mood *will* needs be pitied.—*Shak.*

(*b*) **Will not = refuse** : — This wood *will not* burn.

(*c*) **Will (often, sometimes)** : — The notion of *willingness* sometimes passes into that of *readiness*, *repetition*, or *habit*, frequently in connection with the adverb *often* or *sometimes* : —

The man is given to drinking ; he *will often* come home drunk and beat his wife.

The girl is very fond of reading : She *will sometimes* sit up all night, poring over a novel.

A large whale *will* measure sixty or seventy feet in length.

He used to wander over the house, as old men *will.*

(*d*) **"Will" of Habit** is frequently used in describing the habits of animals : —

Unless driven by hunger, a lion *will* not willingly attack man.

The cat I have is very much attached to me. She *will* sit on my lap for hours together, when I am engeged in study.

(*e*) **Will = may** : — The notion of *futurity* sometimes passes into that of *probability*. This use of *will* is not general.

It is getting colder. It *will* be snowing on the mountains now.

It is so long since we last met. He *will* have forgotten me.

(*f*) **"Will" in Concessive Clauses** : — *Will* sometimes takes the place of *may* in concessive clauses introduced by an imperative.

Whatever *may* happen, I am prepared for it.
Come what *may* (or *will*), I am prepared for it.

EXERCISE : — *Change "may" into "will."*

Whatever the matter *may* be, do your best. However rich a man *may* be, he ought not to be idle. However clever a man *may* be, he may be a paltry fellow if he is not good. However hard you *may* try, you will never succeed in it. Whatever you *may* do, you can not succeed without perseverance. Wherever you *may* go, you will find the same thing. Whoever *may* say so, it is not true. Whichever you *may* choose, you can not escape the difficulty.

(*g*) **"Will" with Implied Condition** : — The notion of *futurity* sometimes passes into that of *Implied Condition.*

Any paper *will* answer the purpose.

Idioms : — ***That will do. Anything will do. Either will do.***
If you have no pen, a pencil ***will do*** as well.

EXERCISE : — *Explain the uses of "shall" and "will."*

1. Six days *shall* thou labour, but the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God ; in it, thou *shalt* not do any work.—*Bible.*
2. If any Catholic *shall* convert a Protestant to the Romish church, they *shall* both suffer death as for high treason.
3. There is not a girl in town, but, let her have her will in going to a mask, and she *shall* dress like a shepherdess. —*Addison.*
4. He that *shall* walk with vigour three hours a day *will* pass in seven years a space equal to the circumference of the globe.— *Johnson.*
5. Perseverance *will* enable a man of ordinary abilities to perform wonders.
6. He *will* come of a Sunday, and stay all day.

7. The castle-moat is so broad and deep that it *will* easily float a first-class battleship.
8. How many times *shall* Caeser bleed in sport
That now on Pompey's basis lies along,
No worthier than the dust.—*Shakespeare.*
9. If the point A coincide with the point C, and the point B with the point D, then *shall* the line AB coincide with and be equal to the line CD.—*Euclid.*
10. Any member who *shall* absent himself without giving due notice, *shall* be fined one yen.
11. The book needed is one which *shall* combine principle with practice.
12. Whoever *shall* now compare the country round Rome with the country round Edinburgh, *will* be able to form some judgment as to the tendency of papal dominion.—*Mac.*
13. When suddenly frightened, an elephant *will* burst away with a rush.
14. Boys *will* be boys. 15. Women *will* be curious.
16. She *will* have everything her own way.
17. No man is so blind as he who *will not* see.
18. This door *will not* shut. 19. This cork *will not* go in.
20. White snow was becoming black mud, as it *will* do in London.
21. A large eagle *will* measure twelve feet from tip to tip of its wings.
22. A drowning man *will* catch at a straw.— *Proverb.*
23. Let others say what they *will*, I will do my duty.
24. In some soils republics *will not* grow.
25. I *will* make of thee a great nation, and in thee *shall* all the families of the earth be blessed.— *Bible.*
26. Every place whereon the soles of your feet *shall* tread, *shall* be yours.—*Bible.*
27. Differences arose, as they *will* in all communities of the kind.
28. If my valour should leave me! Valour *will* come and go. — *Sheridan.*
29. Blessed are the pure in heart, for they *shall* see God.—*Bible.*
30. The cock's shrill clarion or the echoing horn
No more *shall* rouse them from their lowly bed.—*Gray.*
31. My dear, a little difference. There *will* be such in the best regulated families.— *Thackeray.*
32. Seek, and ye *shall* find.— *Bible.*
33. Often touching *will* wear gold.—*Proverb.*
34. Such hath been — *shall* be beneath the sun
That many must still labour for the one.—*Byron.*

35. When the cat is away, the mice *will* play.
36. We used to put the whole house in disorder, as children *will.*
37. And if he of the Lion Heart *shall* return to the land, as is now noised abroad, then *shall* this Wilfred of Ivanhoe be unto me as a wall of defence.— *Scott.*
38. She will prove a treasure to any one who *shall* have the good fortune to win her love.— *Marryat.*
39. Whenever I *shall* seek a wife, it *shall* be my first question, whether she be willing to be led by reason.— *Johnson.*
40. Thou *shalt* want ere I *shall.—Robber Knight's Motto.*
41. A prize is offered to whoever *shall* solve the problem.

CHAPTER IV.

"May," "Can," and "Must."

§ 1. Meanings of "May."

The original meaning of *May* is *power* or *ability*, which still remains in the noun and adjective forms of the word, as — a man of *might*; with *might* and main; a *mighty* intellect, etc. This meaning of the verb *may* has been superseded by the verb *can*, except in a few archaic idioms: —

(*a*) ***While one may:*** — For age and want save *while ye may.*
(*b*) ***As best one may:*** — Left an orphan, I had to shift for myself *as best I might.*

The following are the modern uses of *May*: —

I. **Permission**: — You *may* do so.
II. **Concession**: — You *may* well say that.
III. **Admission**: — You *may* be right; it *may* be true.

I. "May" of Permission: — The word *may*, when used with a verb denoting *action*, expresses *permission* (何々為テ宜ロシイ); and "*You may*" is frequently used as a sort of Imperative. The Negative of *May* of Permission is *Must not*: —

May I do so?	Yes, you **may** do so.	**(Permission.)**
	No, you **must not** do so.	**(Prohibition.)**

Compare : —

{ You *may* depart.
  (= I *permit* you to depart.)

{ You *must not* stir from the spot.
  (= I *forbid* you to stir from the spot.)

"May not" and **"Must not."**— The first of these forms is sometimes used as the Negative of *may* of Permission, but the meaning is not exactly the same. Compare : —

{ I *must not* tell.= I am *not allowed* to tell.
{ I *may not* tell.= I am *not permitted* to tell.

II. **"May" of Concession :** — The notion of *Permission* to do some action readily passes into that of *Concession* to some statement (何々ト云フテモ差支ヘナイ) *May* is most frequently used in this sense with verbs of *saying* and *calling* : —

His wife has everything her own way ; in fact, she *may* be said to be the real master of the house.
Is he a good scholar? — He *may* be a good scholar, but he is certainly not a good teacher.

The Negative of Concession is, not Prohibition, but Non-Concession. If Concession, which is from its nature indefinite, is expressed by **may** (=*perhaps can*), Non-Concession, which is definite, is expressed by **can not : —**

He *may* be called a great man, but he *can not* be called a good man.
You *may* find fault with his style, but you *can not* find fault with his ideas.

Note 1 : — *May* of Concession forms the following idioms : —

(*a*) ***May well :*** — You *may well* say so.
(*b*) ***May as well :*** — I *may as well* begin at once.
(*c*) ***Might as well....as*** : — You *might as well* reason with the wolf *as* try to persuade that man.
(*d*) ***May... for aught one knows :*** — He *may* be very well, for aught I know. — *Goldsmith.*

Note 2 : — *May* of Concession is naturally used in Concessive Clauses. [See Pages 365—367 : Subjunctive *May*.]

Though it *may* be true ; whether it *may* be so or not ; however rich he *may* be, etc.

III. **"May" of Admission :** — The notion of *Concession to a Statement* readily passes into that of the *Admission of a Fact* or *Possibility* : —

(*a*) **Concession** : — You *may* well say that.
(*b*) **Possibility** : — What you say, *may* be true.

This is the Secondary Meaning of *May*. The Primary Meaning relates to some *action* or *statement*, the Secondary Meaning to some *fact* or *event* : —

(I.) { **Permission to do an Action** : — You *may* do so.
     { **Concession to a Statement** : — You *may* well say that.

(II.) { **Possibility of a Fact** : — The report *may* be true.
      { **Possibility of an Event** : — Something *may* have happened.

The Negative of *May* of Possibility is *May not* : —

The report **may** be true.	(= *Perhaps* it *is* true.)
The report **may not** be true.	(= *Perhaps* it *is not* true.)

The report *may* or *may not* be true.
He *may* or *may not* know it.
He *may* or *may not* have heard it.

Note 1 : — *May* may be used in the secondary sense with any verb, but most frequently with the verb *be* in stating inference regarding facts. *May* is always in the secondary sense when followed by the perfect form. Secondary *May* is also used after an introductory clause denoting possibility.

It *may be* so. = *Perhaps* it *is* so.
He *may know* it. = *Perhaps* he *knows* it.
He *may succeed*. = *Perhaps* he *will succeed.*
He *may have done* so.= *Perhaps* he *did* or *has done* so.
It is possible that he *may* succeed.

Note 2 : — *May* of Possibility forms the following idioms : —

(*a*) ***Maybe*** = *perhaps.*
(*b*) ***That may well be.*** = *It is very likely.*
(*c*) ***May possibly*** = *but it is unlikely.*

IV. **Subjunctive "May" :** — Thus far we have treated of *May* in its independent uses. *May* is frequently used in deqendent clauses, in place of the Subjunctive Present. Generally speaking, the use of *May* in place of the Subjunctive Present belongs to Modern English. Compare : —

{ Though he *slay* me, yet will I trust in him.
{ Though he *may slay* me, I will trust in him.

{ Judge not that ye *be not judged.*
{ Do not judge other, that you *may not be judged.*

{ God *bless* you !
{ *May* Heaven *protect* you !

The Subjunctive *May* has the following uses : —

(*a*) **"May" in Concessive Clauses :** — In Modern English, the Subjunctive *May* takes the place of the Subjunctive Present in Concessive Clauses introduced by *though, although, whether, whoever, whatever, however*, etc.

Though he *may* be a good scholar, he is certainly not a good teacher.
Whether the report *may* be true or not, it does not materially concern us.
Whoever *may* say so, it is not true.

Note : — A Concessive Clause may be in an independent form without any conjunction to introduce it, the concessive meaning being denoted by *may*. *May* of Concessive Meaning is also used in adjective clauses preceded by *any* : —

A man *may* be as learned as he will, and yet he may make but a poor scholar.
I will provide you with anything that you *may* require.

(*b*) **"May" in Final Clauses :** — In Modern English, the Subjunctive *May* takes the place of the Subjunctive Present in clauses denoting purpose, introduced by *that, so that, in order that* : —

Man does not live that he *may* eat, but eats that he *may* live.

Note 1 : — This form must be used in place of the Infinitive of Purpose, when the final clause has a different subject from that of the principal clause. Compare : —

(*α*) He works hard { *in order that he may maintain* / *in order.....to maintain* } his family.

(*β*) He works hard *in order that his family may live* in comfort.

Note 2 : —When the final clause is negative, "*that.... may* (*might*) *not*" is equivalent to "*lest....should.*" Compare : —

(*α*) I made haste *that I might* be in time.
(*β*) I made haste *that I might not* be too late.
(*γ*) I made haste *lest I should* be too late.

(*c*) **"May" in Optative Clauses :** — The Subjunctive *May* is used in exclamative clauses introduced by expressions of *wish, hope*, or *prayer* : —

God grant that it *may* be so !
I hope I *may* never witness such a scene again !
I hope you *will* (or *may*) pass this time.
I wish you *would* (or *may*) succeed.
May you succeed ! (= I wish you *may* succeed.)

EXERCISE : — *State how "may" is used, paraphrasing it where possible.*

(*α*) You *may* go wherever you like. He says I *may* use his library. A man *may* do what he likes with his own. *May* I ask a favour of you ? *May* I trouble you for some money ? The students of this school *may* attend the lecture free of charge. What province are you from, *may* I ask ? How old *may* your father be ? *Might* I ask you to take charge of my house during my absence ? This war *may* be said to have been the beginning of an alliance. He is weak-minded — one *might* almost say — idiotic.

(*β*) He *may* well be proud of his attainments. And well *might* he be proud, as, but for his skill, his brother would no doubt have fallen a prey to the wolves. I *may* as well make you the offer at once. You *might* as well take the black spots out of the moon as try to get at that nest. — *Hughes*. You *might* as well throw a stone at the moon as try to injure him. The dog *might* have been mad, for aught you knew. He *may* kill you, but he will never cure you. That *may* well be. *Maybe* he will resign.

(*γ*) I *may* have seen him before, but I have no recollection. No matter what others *may* say, I will do my duty. A man *may* smile, and smile, and be a villain.—*Shak*. A man *may* be as gifted as you will, and yet, if he is not good, he *may* be a paltry fellow.—*Blackie*. I shall be contented with any terms that you *may* propose. He is working very hard that he *may* not fail this time. It is my earnest prayer that he *may* succeed. *May* he rest in peace ! *May* I never witness such a scene again ! It is my earnest wish that he *may* succeed !

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) アナタガサウ云フノモ宜モダ (2) アノ人ガ學問ヲ誇ルノモ最モダ (3) 何事ガアラウ𪜈私ハ覺悟ヲ極メテ居ル (4) 何語ヲ學ブニモ熱誠ガ必要ダ (5) 其ハ眞實ダトシテモ容易ニ信

ジ難イ (6) 何處ヘ行カウ氏辛抱チ爲ナイデハ成功ガ出來ヌ (7) 人ハ如何云ハウ氏私ハ私ノ本分丈チ盡サナケレバナラヌ (8) アナタハ損チスル氏決シテ德ハセヌカラ止メタガヨイ (9) 御成功チ祈リマス (10) 彼ハ假令殺サレテモ白狀セヌト云ツテ居ル (11) 私ハ此ノ品ガ入用ガナイカラ讓ツテ上ゲテモ宜シイ (12) アノ樣ナ人チ害ソウトスルノハ太陽ニ石チ投ゲルノモ同然ダ (13) 幾ラ金ガアツタトテ只遊ンデ居ルモノデハナイ (14) 幾何ナリト御入用丈貸シテ進セヨウ (15) 人ハ食フ爲メニ生キルモノニ非ズ生キル爲メニ食フナリ (16) 決シテ二度ト斯樣ナ有樣ハ見タクナイ (17) 人ハ幾ラ才ガアツテモ德ガナケレバ眞ノ豪傑トハ云ヘヌ (18) 幾ラ金持デモ只居ルモノデハナイ (19) 何レチ選ンデモ多少ノ困難ハ免カレン

§ 2. Meanings of "Can."

The Verb *Can* has two uses which correspond to the Primary and Secondary Meanings of *May* : —

I. **Ability** : — *Can* you do it? Yes, I *can*.
II. **Impossibility** : — *Can* it be so? No, it *can not* be so.

I. **Primary Meaning of "Can"** : — *Can*, when used with a verb denoting *action*, denotes *Ability* (with an Active Verb) or *Capability* (with a Passive Verb) : —

(*a*) Do you think he *can* teach? — Yes, he is quite *able* to teach.
(*b*) *Can* the elephant be taught to do anything? — Yes, it is *capable* of being taught to do many things.

Can may also denote either *Subjective Ability* or *Objective Possibility*. Compare : —

(*a*) . I ***can not*** (= I am *unable* to) go, because I am ill.
(*b*) I ***can not*** (= It is *impossible* for me to) go in this weather.

Note 1 : — The use of *Can* in place of *May* of Permission, originally a Scotticism, is now pretty general : —

You *may* (or *can*) come, if you wish.

Note 2 : — *May* of Concession is also used to express *ability* with the notion of indefiniteness (= *perhaps can*). *May* is therefore used in clauses after the indefinite *any*, while *can* is used after all restrictive expressions (*all, every, the only, the best*, etc.).

You *may* find fault with his style, but you *can not* find fault with his ideas.
I will do all I *can* ; I will do anything that you *may* require.
Fools *may* ask more questions than wise men *can* answer. — *Proverb.*

EXERCISE : — *Supply "may" or "can."*

It is difficult, but it — be done. I think it — be done quite easily. — the book be had in Tokyo? It — be had anywhere. It — not be had here. The passage — be interpreted in only one way. I think it — be interpreted in several ways. I have done everything that — be done. I will do anything that — be done. I have provided everything that you — need. I will provide anything that you — need. This is the only thing that — be said in your favour; while much — be said in my favour. It is possible ; it — be so. It is not impossible ; it — be done. I have done the best I —. I will come as soon as I —. You are as wrong as wrong — be. I will help you if I possibly —.

II. **Secondary Meaning of "Can"** : — In speaking of fact, *Can* is not used to express Possibility, which is denoted by *May*. But *Can not* is used to denote Impossibility. Compare : —

(*a*)	The report **may** be true ; it is quite *possible*.
(*b*)	The report **can not** be true ; it is *impossible*.

"**Can not**" and "**May not**" : — The Secondary *Can not*, being definite in meaning, expresses Impossibility ; while the Secondary *May not*, which is indefinite in meaning, denotes Possibility of the Negative. Compare : —

The report **can not be** true.	= It is *impossible* that it *is* true.
The report **may not be** true.	= It is *possible* that it *is not* true.

The Secondary *Can* is used in Questions as well as in Negative Statements, since Possibility in questions [*Is it possible?*] implies Impossibility [*It is impossible*] or Wonder [*I wonder how it is possible*].

Can this be true? = { I wonder if it *can* be true. / No, it *can not* be true.
What *can* this mean? = { I wonder what this *can* mean. / It *can not* mean anything.
How can that be? = { *I wonder how that can be.* / *That can not be.*

Note 1 : — *Can* may be used with any verb in the Secondary Sense, but most frequently with the verb *be* in stating inference regarding facts. It is always in the secondary sense when followed by the perfect form, with which *can* is consequently always in the negative or interrogative form.

How *can* I have done wrong?
No, I *can not* have done wrong.

Note 2 : — The Secondary *Can* may be used in the affirmative form, not sense, after introductory clauses of interrogative or negative meaning : —

It is impossible that I *can* be wrong.
Is it possible that I *can* be wrong?
I wonder how I *can* be wrong.
I can not comprehend how I *can* be wrong.

It is impossible that I *can* have done wrong.
Is it possible that I *can* have done wrong?
I wonder how I *can* have done wrong.
I am at a loss to comprehend how I *can* have done wrong.

Note 3 : — The adverbs *possibly* and *surely* are used to emphasize the Secondary *Can* : —

Can it *possibly* be so? No, it *can not possibly* be so.
Surely it *can not* be true.

EXERCISE : — *State the difference between the meaning of* —

1. He *may not* know of my being here. / He *can not* know of my being here.
2. He *may not* have arrived yet. / He *can not* have arrived yet.
3. Is this true? / *Can* this be true?
4. There is no doubt about it. / There *can* be no doubt about it.
5. One *can not know* everything. / He *can not know* that I am here.
6. Is he dead? / *Can* he be dead?
7. Who has done this? / Who *can* have done this?
8. Where has he gone? / Where *can* he have gone?
9. How is that? / How *can* that be?

§ 3. Meanings of "Must."

The Verb *Must* has two chief uses which correspond to the Primary and Secondary Meanings of *May* and *Can* : —

I. **Necessity** : — He can not be saved ; he *must* die.
II. **Certainty** : — It can not be true ; it *must* be false.

I. **Primary Meaning of "Must"** : — *Must*, when used with a verb denoting *action*, denote some sort of *necessity* : —

(*a*) **Necessity** (*must* = *have to*) : —
The leg *must* be cut off. = It *has to* be cut off.

Must I go? No, you **need not** go to-day.

(*b*)
Insistence (*I must* = *I will positively*) : —
I *must* hear your reason. = I *insist* upon hearing it.
Compulsion (*must* = *be compelled to*) : —
You *must* tell me your reason. = I *insist* upon it.

(*d*) **Prohibition** : — *Must not* is the Negative of *May* of Permission.

May I go? No, you **must not** stir from the spot.

II. **Secondary Meaning of "Must"** : — *Must*, when used to express inference respecting a *fact* or *event*, denotes *Logical Necessity* or *Certainty*, sometimes *Presumption*.

I have the report from an authentic source, so it *must* be true. (= It necessarily follows that it is true.)
You have walked all the way. How tired you *must* be! (= You are tired, I dare say.)

The Negative of the Secondary *Must* is *Can not* of Impossibility : —

The report **can not** be true. It **must** be false.

Note 1 : — *Must* may be used in the Secondary Sense with any verb, but most frequently with the verb *be* in stating inference regarding facts. It is generally in the secondary sense when followed by the perfect form : —

I *must* have seen him somewhere before.
You *must* have said so, for everybody says so.

Note 2 : — The adverbs *surely* and *needs*, are used to emphasize the Secondary *must* : —

It *must needs* be true.
Surely it *can not* be true. *Surely* it *must* be false.

EXERCISE : — *State the difference* between —

1. { We must tell him ; *he must know it.*
   { He has been there ; so *he must know it.*
2. { He can not afford to die yet ; *he must recover.*
   { You need not be so uneasy about him ; *he must recover.*
3. { One *must pay* what one owes.
   { He says I *must* pay him at once.
4. { *Portia.* — Then the Jew *must* be merciful.
   { *Shylock.* — On what compulsion *must* I ?
5. { He *must have been* here over ten years.
   { Candidates for the examination *must have been* in the school over three years.

§ 4. Primary and Secondary Meanings of "May," "Can," and "Must."

The Potential Auxiliaries *May*, *Can*, and *Must*, have two principal uses : —

I. **Primary Meanings :** — *May*, *Can*, and *Must*, originally denote *Permission*, *Ability*, and *Necessity* to do some *action :* —

I. Primary Meanings.

May I do so ?	{ Yes, you **may** do so.	[*Permission.*]
	{ No, you **must not** do so.	[*prohibition.*]
Can you do so ?	{ Yes, I **can** do so.	[*Ability.*]
	{ No, I **can not** do so.	[*Inability.*]
Must I do so ?	{ Yes, you **must** do so.	[*Necessity.*]
	{ No, you **need not** do so.	[*Needlessness.*]

II. **Secondary Meanings :** — *May*, *Can*, and *Must*, in their Secondary Use denote *Inference* regarding some *fact* or *event*. Inference includes *Certainty* and *Uncertainty* (or *Possibility*) : —

(*a*) **Possibility :** { **Probability : —** The report **may** be true.
{ **Improbability : —** Or it **may not** be true.

(*b*) **Certainty :** { **Impossibility : —** It **can not** be true.
{ **Necessity : —** It **must** be false.

II. Secondary Meanings.

May	{ It **may** be so.	[*Possibility.*]
	{ It **may not** be so.	[*Improbability.*]
Can	{ **Can** it be so ?	[*Wonder.*]
	{ It **can not** be so.	[*Impossibility.*]
Must	It **must** be so.	[*Certainty.*]

EXERCISE (*a*) : — *State the difference between.* —

1. { *May* I be here to-morrow ?
   { I *may* not be here myself.
2. { He *can not* be idle, for he must get his living.
   { He *can not* be idle, for he makes good progress.
3. { He *must* be diligent, for he must get his living.
   { He *must* be diligent, for he makes good progress.
4. { He *may* try, if he wishes it.
   { He *may* succeed, if he tries hard.
5. { He *must* try hard if he wishes to succeed.
   { He *must* succeed, if he tries hard.
6. { He *can not* come, because he is not well.
   { He *can not* be well, for he has not come.

EXERCISE (*b*) : — *Supply "may," "can," "must," or "need."*

You — not return the money ; you — keep it. You — not spend the money ; you — keep it. — the report be true ? It — possibly be true. It — not possibly be true. Surely it — not be true. Surely it — be false. It — needs be false. Is it possible that it — be true ? I wonder if it — be true. It is possible that it — be true. It is impossible that it — be true. What — this mean ? I wonder what it — mean. It — not be true. It — be some mistake. — I take off my shoes ? — I keep them on ? You — not take them off. How — he know my name ? I never told him my name, so he — not know it. I wonder how he — know it. It is possible that he — know it. It is impossible that he — know it. You — not make yourself uneasy about him ; he — get well. There — be no doubt about it. How — that be ? That — well be. That — not be. The planets — be inhabited, but they — not be inhabited by people like ourselves.

Translation Exercise.

(1) 二人ガ意見ヲ異ニスルトキハ兩方共間違ツテ居ルカモ知レヌ (2) 一人ハ如何シテモ間違ガツテ居ルニ違ナイ (3) アナタノ云フ事ハ眞實カモ知レヌガ私ニハ信ゼラレヌ (4) 船ハ明日ニモ着スルカモ知レヌガ確カニハ存ジマセン (5) 此風說ガ本當カ知ラン (6) 或ハ本當カモ知レヌ (7) 本當ナ筈ガナイ (8) 無根ノ說ニ相違ナイ (9) 彼ハ今頃ハ何處迄行ツタカ知ラン (10) モウ京都ニ着イタカ知ラン (11) 未ダ着ク筈ガナイ (12) 今頃ハ名古屋邊ニ居ルニ違ナイ (13) ドンナニカ御腹ガ御空キニ成リマシタロウ (14) 御兩親ハ嘸御悅ビデセウ (15) ドンナニカ壯觀デセウ (16) 如何シテ御氣ニ障ツタカ更ニ合點ガ行カナイ (17) アノ人ハ顏色ガ惡イカラ病氣ニ違ナイ (18) アレハ本當ノ子デハアルマイ少シモ似テ居ナイカラ (19) 此樹ハ枯レタ樣ダ切ラナケレバナラヌ (20) 今度ハ落第スル氣遣ナドハ決シテナイ (21) 是ハ何カノ間違デハナイカ知ラン (22) 決シテ間違デハアリマセン (23) 屹度御全快ナサルカラ決シテ御心配ニハ及ビマセン (24) アノ人ハアンナ事ヲ爲テ發狂デモシタニ違ナイ (25) 此學校ノ生徒ハ中々勉强ダト見エマシテ能ク進ミマス (26) アノ烟ガ見エマスカ火事カ知ラン (27) 火事ニ違ナイ (28) アナタハ御存知ガナイカト思フタ (29) 御存知ノ筈ガナイト思フタ (30) 御存知ノ筈ダト思フタ (31) 彼ハ近頃家ヲ買フタカラ此處ヲ去ル考ナドガアル道理ハナイ (32) 彼ハ私ノ此處ニ居ルト云フヿヲ如何シテ知ツテ居ルカ知ラン (33) 知ツテ居ル筈ガナイ。誰モ云フ筈ガナイ (34) 知ツテ居ルニ違ナイ誰カ云フタニ違ナイ (35) アノ人ハ身代ヲ如何シタノカ知ラン (36) 使ツテ仕舞ツタニ違ナイ (37) 此論說ハ外國人ガ書イタニ違ナイ (38) 日本人ニコウ書ケル筈ガナイ (39) アノ人ハ給料ノ外ニ收入ガアルニ違ナイ (40) デナケレバアンナ贅澤ナ暮シガ出來ル道理ガナイ

§ 5. Wanting Forms of "May," "Can," and "Must."

May, *Can*, and *Must* are Defective Verbs lacking the Infinitive and the Participles, and consequently can not combine with Auxiliary Verbs to form the Future and Perfect Tenses. Compare: —

I **am** To **be** **being**	I **was**	I have **been**
I **may** To — — ing	I **might**	I have —
I **can** To — — ing	I **could**	I have —
I **must** To — — ing	(I **must**)	I have —

In forming the Future and Perfect Tenses, these auxiliary verbs must have their wanting Infinitive and Participles supplied by other forms of expression: —

I **may** do it.	I **must** do.
I *am permitted* to do it.	I *have to* do it.
I *am free* or *at liberty* to do it.	I *am obliged* to do it.
	I *am compelled* to do it.
I **can** do it.	I *am forced* to do it.
I *am able* to do it.	I *can not but* do it.
I *am in a position* to do it.	I *can not help* doing it.
It is possible for me to do it.	*It is necessary* for me to do it.

I. "May" with its Wanting Forms Supplied.

Present: — I **may** = (I am at liberty.)
Past: — I **might** = (I was at liberty.)
Future: — (I may) = I **shall be at liberty.**

Shall you be at liberty?	*I shall be at liberty.*
Shall I be at liberty?	*You will be at liberty.*
Will he be at liberty?	*He will be at liberty.*

Present Perfect: — I **have been at liberty.**
Past Perfect: — I **had been at liberty.**
Future Perfct: — I **shall have been at liberty.**

II. "Can" with its Wanting Forms Supplied.

Present : — I can = (I am able.)
Past : — I could = (I was able.)
Future : — (I can) ⇌ I shall be able.

Shall you be able ?	*I shall be able.*
Shall I be able ?	*You will be able.*
Will he be able ?	*He will be able.*

Present Perfect : — I have been able.
Past Perfect : — I had been able.
Future Perfect : — I shall have been able.

III. "Must" with its Wanting Forms Supplied.

Present : — I must, need not = (I have (not) to.)
Past : — (I must) I had (not) to.
Future : — (I must, need not) = I shall (not) have to.

Shall you (not) have to ?	*I shall (not) have to.*
Shall I (not) have to ?	*You will (not) have to.*
Will he (not) have to ?	*He will (not) have to.*

Present Perfect : — I have (not) had to.
Past Perfect : — I had (not) had to.
Future Perfect : — I shall (not) have had to.

Exercise : — *Supply the wanting forms.*

If my brother arrives to-day, I shall [*can*] set off to-morrow. If my friend does not come, I shall [*must*] go by myself. I have not [*can*] prevail on him to go with me. When shall I [*can*] speak English with any ease? You will soon [*can*] speak it easily, if you are only diligent in practising it. I have not [*can*] find the house. I have had no time to attend to other business of late, for I have [*must*] work very hard to make up for lost time. If you fail again, you will [*must*] leave school. If you do not write more carefully, you will [*must*] rewrite it. I have [*must*] write five letters to-day. If I should not [*can*] come in the morning, I may [*can*] come in the evening. If I should fail in the examination, I should [*must*] serve my time in the army. If I should enter a government school, I should not [*need*] to serve in the army. If you had not come, I should have [*must*] send for some one else. I dislike to [*must*] do the same thing over again. You must have [*must*] work very hard to finish it so quickly.

Translation Exercise.

(1) 圖カラ送金サイ到着スレバ金チ御返シ申スコトガ出來マス (2) 金ガ來ナケレバ借リナケレバナラナイ (3) 私ハ何時英語ガ能ク話セル樣ニ成リマセウカ (4) 勉强サイスレバ直キニ能ク話セル樣ニ成ル (5) 私ハ何時此樣ナ本ガ讀メル樣ニ成リマセウカ (6) 直キニドンナ本デモ讀メル樣ニ成リマス (7) 住所チ精ハシク教エテ遣ラナケレバ家ガ分カルマイ (8) 私ハ三日間食事チスルコトガ出來ズニ居リマス (9) 彼ハ一年間歩行ガ出來ズニ居ル (10) 私ハドレ程待タナケレバナラナイカ (11) 長ク待ツコトハナイ (12) 私ハ眼ガ癒ラナケレバ學問チ止メナケレバナラナイ (13) 彼ハ長ク英語チ遣ツテ居ルカラ話セナケレバナラヌ筈ダ (14) アノ人ハ英語チ始メタ計リダカラ話セル筈ガナイ (15) 私ハ昨年ノ夏ハ試驗ノ準備チ爲ナケレバナラヌノデ何處ヘモ行ケナカツタ (16) 明日ハ出カケラレヌカモ知レヌ (17) 明日ハ留守居チ爲ナケレバナラヌカモ知レヌ

PART THIRD: MOOD AND TENSE.

CHAPTER V.

The Indicative Mood.

The study of the Indicative Mood is the study of its Tenses.

§ 1. Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

We have seen that Tense, besides the time-relations of *Past*, *Present*, and *Future*, also denotes the *Completion* or *Continuance* of action.

I. **Primary Tenses:** — The three primary tenses are also called *Indefinite Tenses*, because they convey no idea of completion or continuance, as is done by all the other tenses: —

(1) **Present:** — I *write* home very often.
(2) **Past:** — I *wrote* home a few days ago.
(3) **Future:** — I *shall write* again in a few days.

II. **Perfect Tenses:** — An action may be spoken of as being *completed* at the Present Moment, or at some moment in the Past or the Future. Hence the three *Complete* or *Perfect* Tenses: —

(4) **Present Perfect:** — I *have written* it already.
(5) **Past Perfect:** — I *had written* it already at that time.
(6) **Future Perfect:** — I *shall have written* it by that time.

III. **Continuous Tenses:** — An action may be spoken of as *actually going on* either at the Present Moment, or at some Moment in the Past or Future. Hence the three *Continuous* or *Progressive* Tenses: —

(7) **Progressive Pres.:** — I *am writing* a letter.
(8) **Progressive Past:** — I *was writing* at that time.
(9) **Progressive Fut.:** — I *shall be writing* at that time.

Note: — The Indefinite Tenses represent actions as *taking place within a certain period of time*, without taking account of the time actually occupied by the action. The Progressive Tenses represent actions as *actually going on at a certain moment*. Compare: —

I *write* home very often.
I *am writing* a letter (at this moment).
I *wrote* home *yesterday*.
I *was writing* the letter *when you came*.

Lastly, an action may be spoken of as being *continued* till the Present Moment, or till some Moment in the Past or Future. Hence the three Progressive Perfect Tenses: —

(10) **Prog. Pres. Perf.:** — I *have been writing* (till now).
(11) **Prog. Past Perf.:** — I *had been writing* up to that time.
(12) **Prog. Fut. Perf.:** — I *shall have been writing* for so long at that time.

Thus the Indicative Mood has twelve tenses: —

Twelve Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

	Ordinary.	Progressive.
	Indefinite.	*Continuous.*
Present.	I write	I am writing
Past.	I wrote	I was writing
Future.	I shall write	I shall be writing
	Completed.	*Continued.*
Pres. Perf.	I have written	I have been writing
Past Perf.	I had written	I had been writing
Fut. Perf.	I shall have written	I shall have been writing

Some Verbs, of which *To Be* is representative, have no progressive form, and consequently have only six tenses: —

Six Tenses of the Verb "To Be."

Present: — I am	Pres. Perf.: — I have been
Past: — I was	Past Perf.: — I had been
Future: — I shall be	Fut. Perf.: — I shall have been

Tenses of the Passive Verb "To Be Written."

	Ordinary.	Progressive.
Present.	It is written	It is being writtn
Past.	It was written	It was being written
Future.	It will be written	It *will be being written**
Pres. Perf.	It has been written	It *has been being written**
Past Perf.	It had been written	It *had been being written**
Fut. Perf.	It will have been written	It *will have been being written**

* *The forms in Italics are not used.* [See Page 380.]

§ 2. Formation of the Tenses.

(1) **Present Tense**
(2) **Past Tense** } :— These two are the only tenses which are formed by inflection.

Note : — The formation of the Preterit belongs to the study of the Principal Parts of the Verb.

(3) **Future Tense :** — *Shall or Will + Root Form.*

(4) **Perfect Tenses :** — *Have + Past Participle.*

Note : — The Perfect Tenses of Intransitive Verbs were formerly formed with the verb *Be* instead of *Have ;* but the form with *Be* now remains only in a few idioms.

(5) **Progressive Forms :** — *Be + Present Participle.*

Note : — We have just seen that the only Progressive Tenses of Passive Verbs in actual use are the Present and the Past : —

(*a*) The ship *is being built.*
(*b*) The ship *was being built* at that time.

The Progressive Future and Perfect of Passive Verbs are not used owing to the harshness of the combinations *be being, been being.* When we wish to express the time-notion denoted by these forms, other ways of expression must be resorted to : —

[The ship *will be being built* next year.]
The ship *will be building* next year.
They *will be building* the ship next year.
The ship *will be under construction* next year, *etc., etc.*

Exercise : — *Substitute other expressions.*

1. The ship *has been being built* these three years.
2. The house *has been being repaired.*
3. These students *have been being taught* English for five years.
4. The boys *have been being scolded.*
5. The book *will be being printed* next week.

(6) **Forms with "Do" :** — The Indefinite Present and Past are sometimes formed with the Auxiliary Verb *Do* [*do, does, did*], which combines with the Root-Form : —

Present.	Past.
I see *or* do see	I saw *or* did see
You see *or* do see	You saw *or* did see
He sees *or* does see, *etc.*	He saw *or* did see, *etc.*

The forms with *Do* has four uses : —

I. **Interrogative and Negative "Do" :** — Questions in English are distinguished from ordinary sentences by the inversion of the subject and the auxiliary verb. Hence the usual place of the subject in questions, and that of *not* in negative statement, are between the Auxiliary and the Principal Verb. Now the Indefinite Present and Past being formed without any Auxiliary Verb, *Do* is employed to supply the want in questions and negative statements : —

Do you *smoke ?* I *do* not *smoke.*
Does he *drink ?* He *does* not *drink.*
Did you *go ?* I *did* not *go.*

Note 1 : — The Interrogative and Negative *Do* is not used with the following verbs : —

(*a*) **Be** : — *Are* you tired ? — No, I *am not.*
Exceptions : — *Do not be* angry. / *Do be* quiet.

(*b*) **Have** : — *Have* you a brother ? — No, I *have none.*
Exception : — *Did* you *have* a good teacher ? / I *did not have* any teacher.

(*c*) **Need** [*aux. v.*] : — Why *need* I fear ? I *need not* fear.
(*d*) **Dare** [*aux. v.*] : — How *dare* you strike me ? You *dare not* strike me.
(*e*) **Used** [*followed by an Inf.*] : — Where *used* he to live in Tokyo ?
(*f*) **Come** [*preceded by "How"*] : — How *came* you to know him ?

Compare : —

How comes it ..... / *How does it happen* } that you are always so late ?

Note 2 : — The Interrogative *Do* is not used in the following constructions : —

(*a*) When the Subject or its Adjunct is an Interrogative : —
Who *came ?* What *happened ?*
How many candidates *passed* the examination ?

(*b*) In Dependent Interrogative Clauses. Compare : —

Where does he live ? — I do not know *where he lives.*
What did he say ? — I want to know *what he said.*

Note 3 — The Negative *Do* is not used in the following constructions : —

(*a*) When the negation is expressed by any other word than *not*. Compare : —

Do not tell a lie. / *Never tell* a lie.	They *did not come.* / *None* of them *came.*
I *do not know* it. / I *know nothing* about it.	I *do not know* either. / I *know neither.*

(*b*) In the Archaic Negative Form : —

Lead us *not* into temptation.
It *lies not* in our power to love or hate.
Tell me *not* in mournful numbers,
Life is but an empty dream.—*Longfellow.*

Compare : —

Mordern Form : — *Do not be* afraid.
Archaic Form : — *Be not* afraid.

Note 4 : — In answers to questions, such as — I *think not*, I *hope not*, I *fear not*, etc. — the *not* does not belong to the verb, but represents a whole clause : —

Is he sick ? — I think *not.* (= I think *he is not sick.*)
Will he die ? — I hope *not.* (= I hope *he will not die.*)
Will the other man recover ? — I am afraid *not.*

II. **"Do" of Emphasis** : — *Do* is used in Affirmative Statements and Positive Imperatives for the sake of emphasis : —

You did not go to see him ? — I *did go*, but I found him absent.
He says I do not work hard enough. I *do work* hard, but somehow I can not satisfy him.
We began to despair of his coming. But *come* he *did* at last.
Do take some. *Do pity* me. *Do be* quiet.

III. **"Do" in Inversion** : — When an adverb is placed at the head of a sentence for the sake of emphasis, *Do* is placed before the subject to maintain a connection between the verb and the adverb. Compare : —

I *behold* my native land *once more.*
Once more do I *behold* my native land.

I never learned Sanskrit, *and I never wished* to learn it.
I never learned Sanskrit, *nor did I ever wish* to learn it.

EXERCISE : — *Rewrite in the Inverted Form.*

I *never* saw such audacity. I do not mean to help him, and I see *no* reason why I should. He *no sooner* saw me than he stole out of the room. He fought for his country *in vain.* He *not only* taught them by precept, but set them an example. Nobody loves him ; nobody hates him, *either.*

IV. **"Do" as Pro-verb** : — Only three of the forms of *Do* are used as auxiliary verb. On the other hand, any form of *Do* may be used as a substitute for other verbs to save their repetition : —

You do not say so ! — Yes, I *do* (= I *say so*).
I have tried as hard as you have *done* (= *tried*).
Living as I do (= As I live) remote from cities, I have no opportunity for conversing with men.

EXERCISE : — *Substitute "do" for the verbs marked.*

Did you see him ? — Yes I *saw* him. Use a book as a bee *uses* a flower. You know more than I *knew* at your age. You have written better than I could have *written.* He is working as hard as you are *working.* You seem to like it ; I *like* it also. You do not seem to mind it ; I *do not mind* it, either. The opinion, as it *comes* from a person of his experience, is gradually gaining ground. As I *speak* from experience, you may depend upon the truth of my statement.

§ 3. Uses of the Tenses.

(1) THE PRESENT TENSE.

I. **Indefinite Present** : — The chief uses of this tense are to denote —

(*a*) **General Truths** : —

Still waters *run* deep.— *Proverb.*
Time and tide *wait* for no man.— *Proverb.*
Galileo maintained that the earth *moves.*
He was obliged to deny that two and two *make* four.

(*b*) **Habitual Action or Regular Occupation** : —

He *speaks* well.	(= He is a good speaker.)
He *writes* well.	(= He a good writer.)
He *keeps* his word.	(= He is man of his word.)
He *edits* a paper.	(= He is an editor.)
He *teaches* a school.	(= He is a teacher.)
Do you *attend* school?	(= Are you a student?)
Do you *read* this paper?	(= Are you a subscriber to it?)
Do you *smoke?*	(= Are you a smoker?)
Do you *rise* early?	(= Are you an early riser?)

Note 1 : — The Indefinite Present is seldom used to denote an action *actually going on* at the present moment, the Progressive Present being used for the purpose. However, it occurs in a few cases : —

(*a*) With such verbs as have no progressive form : —

He *is* a teacher. He *has* a large school.
I *see* the flower. I *smell* its perfume.
I *feel* thirsty. I *want* a glass of water.
I *know* him. I *love* him. He *resembles* his mother.

(*b*) When the speaker refers to his own action at the moment of doing it : —

Now observe : I *take up* this coin, and *drop* it in this tumbler.
I *ask* you once mome — Will you or will you not consent?
I *offer* you a hundred yen. Will you not take it?

(*c*) When the spectator describes what he sees going on before his eyes. This is called the *Present Tense of Vision* : —

What dost thou see, Rebecca? — I *see* him now ; he *heads* a body of men. They *pull down* the palisades ; they *hew down* the barrier with axes ; they *rush in*. — *Scott.*

Note 2 : — The Present Indefinite frequently takes the place of other tenses : —

(*a*) **Present for Past** : — This occurs in animated narrative, in which the narrator's imagination vividly calls up the scene, as if he saw it in a vision. The Present Tense of Vision, thus used, is called the Historic Present : —

The life-boat still *needs* one man. Ned Brown *wishes* to fill the place. But first he *bends* gently to a woman who *stands* beside him, and *says* to her "Mother, will you let me go?"

(*b*) **Present for Future** : — The Present Indefinite, especially of verbs of *coming* and *going*, frequently takes the place of the Regular Future Tense, the notion of futurity being conveyed by some adverb of time : —

He *comes* to-morrow. I *go* the day after to-morrow.
When *do* you *leave?* What time *do* you *start?*
My brother *returns* from America next year.

In Adverbial Clauses of Time or Condition introduced by the conjunctions *if*, *when*, *before*, *after*, *till*, *as soon as*, etc., the Indefinitite Present takes the place of the Regular Future, owing to the omission of the archaic *shall*. Compare : —

I am afraid it *will rain*.
I will not go if it *rains*.

I think he *will come* this evening.
What shall I say when he *comes?*

I think I *shall hear* from home shortly.
I shall stay here till I *hear* from home.

Compare : —

I will let you know *when he arrives*. [Adv. Cl.]
I will let you know *when he will arrive*. [N. Cl.]

(*c*) **Present for Perfect** : — This occurs in familiar style, with such verbs as — *say*, *tell*, *hear*, *write*, *read*, *find*, etc.

Mr. A. is going abroad, I *hear*. I *am told* that he has changed his mind. It *says* in the papers that the governor has resigned. My brother *writes to say* that he is coming back next year. I will go with you when I *finish* my task.
Do you understand? Do you hear?

What is the difference of meaning between —

Oh! I *forget* his name.
I *have forgotten* his name.

He *comes* from Kyûshû.
He *has come* from Kyûshû.

I *hear* that he is going to resign.
I *have heard* that he is going to resign.

II. **Progressive Present** : — The proper use of this tense is to denote an action *actually going on* at the present moment, or an action which is done *for the time being*. Compare : —

Mr. A. *teaches* in this school; but he *is not teaching* at this moment.
Mr. A. being sick, Mr. B. *is teaching* in his place at present.
Mr. C. *writes* very well; he *is* (*engaged in*) *writing* a book.

Note 1 : — With verbs denoting *momentary actions* (*begin, open, die,* etc.), the Progressive Form has an *inceptive* meaning, since such actions do not admit of the notion of continuance : —

The man *is dying* (= is about to die).
The flowers *are opening* (= are about to open).
I *am beginning* to understand English better.

Note 2 : — The Progressive Present of verbs of *coming* and *going* is used instead of the Intentional Future : —

I *am going* (= going to go) to-morrow.
He *is coming* (= going to come) this evening.
When *are* you *leaving* Tokyo? I *am starting* early to-morrow morning.

Note 3 : — As the Progressive Form expresses continuance, it is only used with verbs denoting such actions as can be left off or resumed at will [*voluntary actions*], and is not used with such verbs as denote *continuous states* or *involuntary actions.* For instance, we never say —

What *are* you *seeing?*
I *am knowing* him. I *am loving* him.
He *is resembling* his father.

The following verbs, which denote *continuous states* or *involuntary activities*, are rarely, if ever, in the Progressive Form : —

(*a*) **To be, exist, subsist, consist,** *etc.*
(*b*) **To have, possess, own, keep, belong, need,** *etc.*
(*c*) **To see, hear, feel, perceive, understand,** *etc.*
(*d*) **To know, believe, remember, forget,** *etc.*
(*e*) **To love, hate, like, dislike, respect, despise, pity, wish, want,** *etc.*
(*f*) **To resemble, differ, equal, rival, excel, surpass,** etc.

Compare : —

What *are* you *looking at?*	[*Attention.*]
What *do* you *see?*	[*Perception.*]
Are you *listening* (or *following*)?	[*Attention.*]
Do you *hear* (or *understand*)?	[*Perception.*]

Some verbs can be in the Progressive Form when used in certain senses. Compare : —

Is the man *living?*	He *is having* his dinner.
Where *does* he *live?*	He *has* a good appetite.
Where *is* the man *standing?*	Where *is* the man *lying?*
Where *does* the house *stand?*	Where *does* the field *lie?*

(2) THE PAST TENSE.

I. **Indefinite Past :** — This is the Chief Narrative Tense. In narration, the main events are denoted by this tense, the temporal or causal relations of minor events being indicated by the Progressive Past or the Past Perfect.

The Indefinite Past is always associated with the notion of the *time* (*place* or *manner*) of occurrence, either expressed or implied in the context. Time-notion is so closely associated with the Past Tense that such expressions as *one day, once, once upon a time,* etc., are made use of when the exact date can not be given : —

He *returned* from abroad last year, and *died* shortly.
What *did* he *die* of? — He *died* of consumption.

Note 1 : — Why is the Past Tense used without any expression of time in the following?

I *knew* you would come.
I *thought* you would bring your brother.
I never *knew* this gun miss fire.
He *had* a mother, but he has none now.
He *had* a mother; I wonder if she is living still.

Note 2 : — The Past Tense generally gives no information concerning the present state of things. Correct the following :—

Is the man living? — No, he *died.*
Where is his brother? — He *went* abroad.

Note 3 : — How are Past Habitual Actions expressed?

Note 4 : — How is it that the Verb *Used* (followd by the Infinitive) lacks the Present Tense?

II. **Progressive Past :** — This tense denotes an action which was *actually going on at some specified past time,* which latter may be denoted by an adverb or another verb : —

(*a*) I *was working* hard *at that time.*
(*b*) I *was working* when he *came.*
(*c*) I *was working* while the others *were playing.*

Note 1 : — Which is the main event in the following : —

When I *was riding* by a lake, I *saw* a child fall into the water.

Note 2 : — How is the Continuance of a Past Action denoted?

(3) THE FUTURE TENSE.

I. **Indefinite Future** : — The Regular Future Form has been treated of under "*Shall and Will.*" There are, however, other ways of expressing futurity, which must be noticed : —

(*a*) A Future Event may be denoted by the Indefinite Present, the notion of Futurity being conveyed by an adverb of time [See Page 385 : (*c*)]

I *leave* town to-morrow.
When *does* the ship *sail?*
Does the House *meet* to-morrow?

(*b*) The Progressive Present of Verbs of *Coming* and *Going* are frequently used in a future sense. [See Page 386 : Note 2.]

When *are* you *going?* — I *shall be there* next Sunday.
Are you *coming* this evening? — I *shall be here* at six.
Is the man coming? — Yes, he *will be here* presently.

(*c*) The combination "*Be* + *Infinitive*" denotes a future action determined by somebody else than the speaker : —

My father is going to Kyoto, and I *am to go* with him.
When *is* the new school *to be opened?*
When *is* the examination *to take place?*
Mr. A. *is to be* our new principal.
We *are to have* a holiday to-morrow.
I *am to have* a lord soon after my sister has married the squire.— *Goldsmith.*

(*d*) The Progressive Form of the Verb *Go* is used as a sort of auxiliary to denote *Immediate or Intentional Futurity* : —

Have you learned your lesson? — No, I *am going to learn* it.
What *is* he *going to do* with his boy? — I do not know what his *intentions* are respecting him.

The notion of immediateness is more strongly expressed by such expressions as "*be about to*," "*be on the point of*," etc. : —

He *is about to start* on a journey.
The train *is on the point of starting.*

(*e*) The Secondary *May, Can,* or *Must* takes the place of *Shall* or *Will* with the additional notion of *doubt* or *certainty* : —

{ Perhaps he *will* (or *may*) succeed.
{ Such a man *will* (or *must*) succeed.

{ Perhaps he *will not* (or *may not*) succeed.
{ Such a man *will not* (or *can not*) succeed.

(*f*) Futurity may also be expressed by such adjectives as *likely, sure,* etc., in the predicate. Compare : —

{ It is likely that he *will succeed.*
{ .....He *is likely to succeed.*

{ I am sure that he *will succeed.*
{ .....He *is sure to succeed.*

II. **Progressive Future** : — This tense is used in speaking of an action as *actually going on at some moment in the future* : —

I *shall be waiting* at the station to-morrow morning.
If you go now, he *will be teaching.*

(4) THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE.

The verb *have,* which helps to form the Perfect Tense, is originally a transitive counterpart of the verb *be.* Compare : —

{ My work *is ready.* { My task *is finished.*
{ I *have* my work *ready.* { I *have* my task *finished.*

The Perfect Tense is only an inverted form of the second example : —

My task is finished.
I have my task.....**finished.**
I have.....**finished** my task.

Note 1 : — Thus we see that the Perfect Tense of a Transitive Verb is only a sort of Passive Form used in an apparently Active sense : —

I *have done* it = It *is done.*
I *have written* it = It *is written.*
I *have sold* it = It *is sold.*

Note 2 : — We also see that the Perfect Tense is a sort, not of the Past, but of the Present Tense. The fact is further seen in the archaic perfect form of intransitive verbs — he *is gone,* he *is come,* etc.

Note 3 : — *Have* therefore ought to combine only with the Past Participle of Transitive Verbs. This was the case in Older English, the verb *be* being regularly used in forming the Perfect Tense of Intransitive Verbs (*go, come, depart, arrive, return, pass, rise, fall, become, grow*, etc.). But the tendency to uniformity has caused *have* to be used also with Intransitive Verbs : —

Older Form.	*Modern Form.*
He *is gone.*	He *has gone.*
He *is come.*	He *has come.*
He *is returned* from abroad.	He *has returned* from abroad.
What *is become* of him?	What *has become* of him?
The sun *is risen* (or *set*).	The sun *has risen* (or *set*).

I *am come* in Father's name. — *Bible.*
The noble Brutus *is ascended.* — *Shakespeare.*
The dwarf *was* by this time *grown* wiser. — *Goldsmith.*
I find my visits here *are become* troublesome.

Note 4 : — With certain verb, the form with *be* is still in use, but with a differentiated meaning; and the Past Participle after *be* is to be regarded as a sort of adjective complement. Compare : —

(*a*) **To be gone** : — Is he here? — No, he *is gone.*
To have gone : — Where is he? — He *has gone* home.

(*b*) **To be past** : — The time for sowing *is past.*
To have passed : — Three years *have passed* since then.

(*c*) **To be dead** : — Is he living? — No, he *is dead.*
To have died : — He seems to *have died* of hunger.

(*d*) **To be met** : — We *are met* together to-day to celebrate...
To have met : — *Have* you *met* him? — Yes, I *have.*

(*e*) **To be mistaken** : — You *are mistaken.*
To have mistaken : — You *have mistaken* my book for yours.

(*f*) **To be drunk** : — The man *is drunk.*
To have drunk : — He *has drunk* too much wine.

(*g*) **To be descended** : — He *is descended* from a great ancestor.
To have descended : — He *has descended* from the platform.

(*h*) **To be determined** : — I *am determined* to effect my purpose.
To have determined : — I *have decided* to go abroad.

Etc. *etc.*

I. **Present Perfect** : — This Tense denotes the *completion* of an action, or some *state* resulting from the action : —

Are you still doing your task? — No, I *have done* it.
He *has become* rich. (= He *is* rich.)
The child *has fallen* asleep. (= The child *is* asleep.)

We have already seen that the Perfect Tense is a sort of the Present, and not of the Past Tense. In point of fact, however, we may make use of either the Past or the Perfect in referring to one and the same action; but the meaning conveyed is not the same : —

The Past Tense refers to an action simply as a past event, and *does not convey any information about the present state of things.* It describes the action itself with the attendant circumstances of *time, place*, or *manner.*

The Perfect Tense, on the contrary, lays stress on the fact of the action being completed, no matter when or where it may have taken place. It throws the action itself into the background, and lays before us *the present state of things resulting from the action.* The Perfect Tense is used in *referring to a past action in explanation of the present state of things* : —

Have you a dog? — No, I *have lost* my dog.
Have you a horse? — No, I *have sold* my horse.
Have you a bycicle? — Yes, I *have bought* one.
Do you *know* French? — Yes, I *have learned* a little.

Compare : —

I *have written* my composition. (= It *is* ready.)
I *wrote* it — *at home* — *last evening.*

He *has studied* English. (= He *knows* English.)
He *studied* English — *at Nagasaki* — *when young.*

Where is Mr. A.? — He *has gone* to America.
Where is Mr. B.? — He also *went* to America, but I do not know whether he is still there or not.

The Perfect Tense is not used, unless the result of the action remains, in some form or other, at the present moment : —

China *has ceded* Formosa to Japan.
China *ceded* the Liaoutang Peninsula to Japan.

Yoshitsune *has become* one of the popular heroes of Japan.
Yoshitsune *became* an object of envy to his brother Yoritomo.

{ Is your father at home? — Yes, he *has* just *come home.*
Is your brother at home? — He *came home* from school a little while ago, but went out again.

The performance of an action generally leaves behind it a two-fold result : —

(*a*) The **Immediate Result** abiding in the Thing Done as *Completion* : —

He *has written* a book on Japan. = The book *is ready.*

(*b*) The **Permanent Result** abiding in the Agent as *Experience* or *Character* : —

He *has written* many books. = He *is an author.*

These two uses of the Perfect Tense are to be distinguished by means of adverbs : —

Primary Meaning : — The Perfect Tense is used in the Primary Sense of *Completion* with the following adverbs : —

(*a*) **Already** : — I *have finished* my task *already.*
(*b*) **Yet** : — { *Has* the bell *rung yet?* / The bell *has rung already,* but school *has not begun yet.*
(*c*) **Just** : — The performance *has just commenced.*
(*d*) **Now** : — I *have now arrived* at the close of my history.
(*e*) **By this time** : — I think he *has arrived* at M. *by this time.*

Secondary Meaning : — The Perfect Tense is used in the Secondary Meaning of *Experience* with the following adverbs : —

(*a*) **Before** : — I think I *have met* you *before.*
(*b*) **Ever** : — *Have* you *ever met* him?
(*c*) **Never** : — No, I *have never met* him.
(*d*) **Once, twice,** *etc.* : — I *have met* him *once — twice — several times — hundreds of times.*
(*e*) **Often, frequently** : — I *have met* him *very often.*
(*f*) **Seldom, rarely** : — I *have seldom heard* him speak English.

(*a*) **Completion.**	(*b*) **Experience.**
Have you *seen* the lion (*yet*)?	*Have* you (*ever*) *seen* a lion?
Yes, I *have seen* it (*already*).	Yes, I *have seen* one (*once*)
Have you *read* to-day's paper (*yet*)?	*Have* you (*ever*) *read* this book?
No, I *have not read* it (*yet*).	No, I *have never read* it.

EXERCISE : — *Illustrate the two uses of the perfect tense of* see ; hear ; speak ; meet ; read ; write ; learn ; study ; dine ; kill.

PERFECT TENSE OF SPECIAL VERBS.

There are some verbs, the Perfect Tense of which has some special use or signification : —

(1) **VERBS OF DESTINY AND DISPOSAL** : — The Perfect Tense of Verbs of Destiny [*What has become of him?*] is used only in the primary sense of Immediate Result or Completion, to denote the *presence, absence, whereabouts,* or the *present state* of the agent.

(*a*) **What has become of him?**

To Go : — He *has gone* abroad. (= He *is* abroad.)
To Come : — He *has come* back. (= He *is* here.)
To Become : — He *has become* (= *is*) rich.
To Die : — He *is dead.*
Etc. *etc.*

The Perfect Tense of Verbs of Disposal [*What have you done with it?*] is likewise used only in the primary sense of completion, to denote the *possession, non-possession,* or the *whereabouts* of the object concerned in the action.

(*b*) **What have you done with it?**

To Give : — I *have given* it to I. (= I. *has* it.)
To Lend : — I *have lent* it to J. (= J. *has* it.)
To Buy : — I *have bought* (= *have*) a bycicle.
To Sell : — I *have sold* my horse. (= I *have none.*)
To Lose : — I *have lost* my watch. (= *have no* watch.)
Etc. *Etc.*

EXERCISE : — *Paraphrase the Perfect Tense of the following Verbs of Destiny or Disposal in terms of the Present Tense.*

The doctor *has come.* My brother *has returned* from America. My father *has not returned* yet. The ship *has arrived* at Yokosuka. My father *has left* for Kôbe. The boy *has run away.* The bird *has flown away.* He *has grown* rich, and (*has*) *retired* from business. The children *have gone to bed.* He *has swum* across to the other side. The sun *has set.* The moon *has risen.* The prices *have risen* (*fallen*). School *has begun.* The dog *has run* mad. The man *has turned* traitor to his party. He *has stood up.* He *has sat down.* He *has lain down.* He *has fallen asleep.* He *has not awaked* yet. What *have* you *done* with your watch? I *have lost* it. I *have found* the watch I lost. I *have sold* my old gun, and (*have*) *bought* a new one. I *have not brought* my watch to-day. Somebody *has taken* my dictionary. *Have* you *kept* the money? No, I *have spent* it. I *have left* my hat upstairs.

Somebody *has forgotten* his umbrella. I *have put* the papers in the drawer. I *have laid* the book on the table. I *have set* the book on the shelf. Where *have* you *placed* my hat? I *have hung* it on the peg. They *have opened* the door. *Have* you *shut* the window? He *has broken* his arm. I *have destroyed* the letter. They *have pulled down* the old building. They *have put up* a new one in its place.

With such verbs as *see, hear, read*, etc., both the primary and the secondary meanings come to nearly the same thing. But with verbs of *motion* or *change*, the two meanings are widely different : —

(*a*) Primary Meaning : — The *whereabouts* of the agent.
(*b*) Secondary Meaning : — The agent's *knowledge* of the place.

This is the reason why the perfect tense of verbs of *motion* or *destiny* are used only in the primary sense of completion, the secondary sense being expressed by some other word or by means of the past tense with some adverb denoting experience : —

(*a*)	行ッテ居ル.....have gone
(*b*)	行ッタ事ガアル.....have been (there)
(*a*)	来テ居ル.....have come
(*b*)	来タ事ガアル.....have been (here)

(*a*) **Completion.**	(*b*) **Experience.**
He *has gone* to America. = He *is* in America.	He *has been* in America. He once *went* to America.
He *has come*. = He *is* here.	He *has been* here before. He often *came* here before.

Hence the following rules : —

RULE I : — *Have gone* or *have come* must not be used with adverbs of *experience* or *repetition*.

RULE II : — *Have gone* must not be used in the First or the Second Person, except in Indirect Speech.

EXERCISE : — *Correct errors, if any.*

Have you ever gone to America? No, I have never gone abroad. Has your brother ever gone abroad? He has gone to several countries. Have you ever come here before? I have come here once or twice before. Has he ever come here before? No, he has never come here before. I have gone to

school to-day. Has the doctor come? Has he come to-day? He has come to-day, and left this note for you. Where shall I say you have gone? Say that I have gone to my office. Somebody has come into my room and meddled with my things.

(2) **VERBS DENOTING CONTINUOUS STATES** :—The Perfect Tense of Verbs denoting *continuous states*, and consequently having no Progressive Form, are primarily used in the sense, not of *completion*, but of *continuance* till the present : —

To Be : — Where *have* you *been* all this while?
To Have : — She *has had* the malady from an infant.
To Know : — I *have known* her from a child.
To Love : — I *have loved* you all my life. — *Dickens*
To Live : — He *has lived* here for ten years.
Etc. *etc.*

The Perfect Tense of these verbs are used in the Primary Sense of *Continuance* with the following adverbs : —

(*a*) **How long (P)** : — *How long have* you *known* him?
(*b*) **For** : — I *have known* him *for ten years* (*already*).
(*c*) **These** : — I *have known* him *these ten years*.
(*d*) **Since** : — I *have known* him *since his infancy*.
(*e*) **From (a)** : — I *have known* him *from a boy*.
(*f*) **Long** : — I *have long wanted* to be there.
(*g*) **Aways** : — I *have always lived* here.
(*h*) **Ever** : — I *have ever kept* the object *in view*.
(*i*) **Ever since** : — My father died in my infancy, and I *have lived* with my uncle *ever since*.

The Perfect Tense of Verbs denoting Continuous States may also be used in the Secondary Sense of *Experience* : —

(*a*) **Continuance.**	(*b*) **Experience.**
How long *have* you *been* sick?	How often *have* you *been* sick?
I *have been* sick for a week.	I *have been* sick once before.
Have you *been* here long?	*Have* you *been* here before?
I *have been* here for three years	I *have been* here several times.

EXERCISE : — *Illustrate the two uses of the perfect tense of* have, hold, belong, know, love, live.

RULES FOR THE USE OF THE PRESENT PERFECT.

RULE I : — *The Present Perfect should not be used with any word denoting a Definite Past Time*, since it would be a self-contradiction to use a sort of Present Tense with a past time.

Has he arrived?

Incorrect: — { Yes, he *has arrived* yesterday.
(= he *is* here yesterday.)

Corrected: — { (*a*) Yes, he *has arrived*.
(*b*) Yes, he *arrived* yesterday.

Note 1: — We have seen that the Present Perfect is used with Adverbs denoting —

(*a*) **Completion**: — *Already, yet, just, by....*, etc.
(*b*) **Experience**: — *Ever? never, before*, etc.
(*c*) **Repetition** — *Often, seldom, sometimes, once, twice*, etc.
(*d*) **Continuance**: — *Long, for...., these...., since...., always, ever*, etc.

Note 2: — Notice the following idioms: —

{ He *has just arrived*. { I *have met* him *before*.
{ He *arrived just now*. { I *met* him three years *ago*.

RULE II: — *The Present Perfect must not be used in questions beginning with the word "When?"* since this interrogative asks the definite time of occurrence.

Incorrect: — { When *has* he *arrived?*
(= When *is* he here now?)

Corrected: — When *did* he *arrive?*

RULE III: — *The Present Perfect is generally used to denote an action done within a period of time including the moment of speaking* — that is, with the expressions **to-day, this week, this month, this year, lately**, etc. Here the result of the action is supposed to remain in some form or other owing to the recentness of the action. The past tense is also admissible.

I (*have*) *received* a note from him *to-day*.
I *have walked* ten miles to-day.
There *has been* a fire to-night.
There *has been* much snow this winter.

RULE IV: — *The Perfect Tense is not used in speaking of a historical fact, even though the result of the action may remain at present.* Explain why the perfect tense is used in the one case, and not in the other: —

(*a*) Dr. D. *has discovered* a new element.
(*b*) Columbus *discovered* America.

II. **Progressive Present Perfect**: — This tense denotes an action that has *continued up to the present moment*. What is the difference in meaning between —

(*a*) I *have studied* English for ten years.
(*b*) I *have been studying* English these ten years.

Note 1: — We have just seen that with verbs denoting continuous states, the Ordinary Present Perfect denotes continuance till the present moment. This meaning of *have been* is made use of in expressing continuance with other verbs: —

{ Where *have* you *been* all this while?
I *have been staying* in the country.

Note 2: — The Progressive Present Perfect does not always denote continuance till the present moment. This tense is used with the adverbs *to-day, lately, just*, etc., when stress is laid, not on the *result* of the action, but on the *occupation* itself. Compare: —

{ *Have* you *read* this book?
Have you *been* (*engaged in*) *reading* anything of late?

{ I *have not written* my composition yet.
I *have been* (*engaged in*) *writing* letters to-day.

{ Have you heard of the occurrence? — Yes, I *have read* an account of the affair to-day.
I *have been reading* to-day that Newton made a great discovery by seeing an apple fall. What was there wonderful about the apple falling?

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

a.

(1) 君ハ犬ヲ如何シタカ (2) 盗マレタ (3) 御父樣ハ馬ガ御入用デアリマセンカ (4) モウ買ヒマシタ (5) 妹君ハ未ダ御弱イカ (6) 大層丈夫ニ成リマシタ (7) 田中ハ近頃少シモ見エナイガ如何シタカ (8) 死ニマシタ (9) 何時何デ死ンダノカ (10) 先月肺病デ死ンダ (11) 伊藤ハ未ダ學校ニ出テ居マスカ (12) 卒業ナシテ實業ニ就キマシタ (13) 彼ノ父ハ隱居シテ身代ヲ息子ニ讓リマシタ (14) 月ガ出テ居マスカ (15) 未ダ出ナイ (16) 稽古ガ始マツテ居ル (17) 始マツテカラモウ餘程ニナル (18) 高橋君ハ何處ヘ行キマシタカ (19) 米國ヘ行ツテ今桑港ニ居ル (20) 彼ノ兄ハ未ダ米國ニ居マスカ (21) 歸ツテ今神戸ニ居

ル (22) 御父樣ハ御宅デスカ (23) 出掛ケマシタガ直キニ歸リマス (24) 御兄樣ハ學校カラ御歸リニ成リマシタカ (25) 先刻歸ツテ又出掛マシタ (26) 瀧車ガ立ツタカ (27) 未ダ立チマセン今立ツ處デス (28) 御急ギナサイ未ダ間ニ合ヒマス (29) アナタハ誰ニ御面會デスカ (30) 高田樣ナラ米國ヘ御立チニ成リマシタ (31) 上野ヘ花見ニ御出デシタカ (32) 向島ヘ行ツテ來マシタ (33) 花ハ如何デシタカ (34) 未ダ咲キマセン (35) 小金井ヘ御出ニナツタコトガアリマスカ (36) 行ツタコトガアリマセン (37) 未ダ參リマセン (38) アナタハ前ニ此處ヘ御出ニ成ツタコトガアリマスカ (39) 私ハ始メテデスガ兄ハ幾度モ參リマシタ (40) アノ人ハ英語ガ達者ダ洋行チシタノデスカ (41) 洋行ハシナイガ多ク西洋人ト交際シテ居ル

b.

(1) 何處ヘ行ツテ來マシタカ (2) 菊チ見ニ行ツテ來マシタ (3) 手紙チ出シテ置イタガ未ダ返事ガナイ (4) 今日稽古ガアツタカ (5) 今日ハ無カツタ昨日モ無カツタ (6) 今夜モ亦火事ガアツタ (7) 近頃ハ火事ガ多イ (8) 近頃中ハ天氣ガ變リガチデアツタ (9) 今時分ハ何時モ天氣ガ定マラナイ (10) 然シ今年ハ雨ガ多カツタ (11) 君ハ何處ニ居ツタノカ搜シタゼ (12) 一寸買物ニ行ツテ來タ (13) 御待遠ウデシタ餘程待ツタカ子 (14) 三十分モ待ツタカ子 (15) 君ハ何時カラ此學校ニ居ルカ (16) 三年計リ居ル (17) Brown 氏ハ日本ニ幾年居ルダロウカ (18) 十年以上モ居ル此學校ニ計リモ五年モ居ル (19) アノ人ト私ハ竹馬ノ友ダ (20) 彼ハ永ク病氣デ居ル (21) 私ハ如何ナル事チシテモ目的チ達スル決心デアル (22) 彼ノ人ニハ前ニ會フタコトガアル三年前ニ京都デ會フタ (23) 彼ノ人ハ中々世間チ見テ居ル (24) 私ガ讀ンデカラ本チ貸シテ上ゲヨウ (25) 子供ガ寢マシタ子 (26) 私ハ能ク寢マシタ (27) アノ人ノ子息ハ洋行シテ今居ナイ (28) 彼モ洋行シタコトガアル (29) 君ハ近頃佐藤ニ會フタカ (30) 昨日會フタ計リダ (31) 人ガアリマシタカ (32) 丁度貳人ガアリマシタ (33) 其ハ丁度私ノ搜シテ居ツタ人ダ (34) アノ手紙チ如何シタカ (35) 燒イテ仕舞フタ (36) 古イ建物チ取リ壞シテ新築シタ (37) 東京デ道ニ迷フタコトガアリマスカ (38) 初

メテ來タ (39) 此家ハ百年以上ニモナル (40) ソレジヤ御一所ニ參リマセウ遠ウカラ參リタイト思フテ居マシタ (41) 此家ハ元ト私共ノ所有デシタ (42) 此家ハ元カラ私共ノ所有デス (43) アナタハ此本チ讀ミマシタカ (44) 近頃何カ御讀ミニナリマシタカ (45) 誰カ私ノ室デ寢タモノガアル (46) 私ハ彼所ヘ獵ニ行ツタコトガアルカラ能ク知ツテ居ル (47) 誰カ此處デ飯チ食ヒ居ツタナ (48) お前ハ泣イタ子

(5) THE PAST PERFECT TENSE.

I. **Past Perfect :** — This tense denotes the *completion of an action before some moment in the past.* The Past Perfect is to the Past what the Present Perfect is to the Present. Compare : —

He *has come.* = He *is* here.
He *had come.* = He *was* here (*at that time*).
He *has gone out.* = He *is* out.
He *had gone out.* = He *was* out (*at that time*).

The Past Perfect has two uses : —

PRIMARY USE : — The Past Perfect in its primary use is analogous in every respect to the Present Perfect. It denotes the result of a previous action at the specified past time in the shape of —

(*a*) **The State of Things (or Continuance) :** —

I *had finished* my task. = It *was* finished.
I *had written* my exercise. = It *was* ready.
I *had lost* my watch. = I *had no* watch.
I *had learned* my lesson. = I *knew* it.
He *had become* rich. = He *was* rich.
He *had grown* old. = He *was* old.

(*b*) **Experience or Character :** —

I *had seen* him before. = I *knew* him by sight.
I *had heard* the story before. = I *knew* it.
I *had studied* German a little. = I *knew* a little of it.
He *had written* books. = He *was* an author.
He *had travelled* much. = He *was* a great traveller.
He *had seen* the world. = He *had* a knowledge of the world.

Note 1 : — The Past Perfect denotes *the state of things*, when used with the following adverbs of *completion* : —

(*a*) **Already** : — When I got there, he *had left already*.

(*b*) **Yet** : — I inquired if the mail *had arrived yet*. / He replied that it *had not arrived yet*.

(*c*) **Just** : — When we went to the play, the performance *had just commenced*.

(*d*) **Now** : — I *had now come* to the most difficult part of my task.

(*e*) **By that time** : —*By that time*, the guests *had* all *arrived*.

Note 2 : — The Past Perfect of Verbs denoting *Continuous States* [*be, have, know*, etc.] are used in the primary sense to denote that the state had continued up to the specified past time, and generally with some *adverb of continuance or duration* : —

(*a*) **For** : — We were old acquaintance ; I *had known* him *for over ten years* (*already*).

(*b*) **Since** : — I *had known* him *since* we were boys at school.

(*c*) **Long** : — I readily agreed to go with him, for I *had long wanted* to be there.

(*d*) **Always** : — I was glad to meet him, for I *had* always *been* a great admirer of his works.

(*e*) **Up to that time** : — *Up to that time* I *had been* quite ignorant of his personality.

Note 3 : — The Past Perfect denotes *experience* or *character*, when used with following adverbs : —

(*a*) **Before** : — I knew the man, for I *had once seen* him *before*.

(*b*) **Ever** (?) : — I wondered if I *had ever met* him before.

(*c*) **Never** : — I concluded that I *had never met* him before.

(*d*) **Often** : — I knew him very well, for I *had often met* him before.

(*e*) **Seldom** : — I knew him but slightly ; I *had seldom spoken* to him.

(*f*) **Once, twice**, etc. : — He *had been* abroad *once or twice* (or *several times*) before.

(*g*) **Sometimes** : — I consented to go with him, for I *had sometimes thought* of going abroad.

Note 4 : — The Past Perfect in the Primary Use is employed to denote a *Causal* or *Explanatory* Relation to the Main Event, which latter is denoted by the Simple Past Tense : —

The roads *were* muddy, for it *had rained* during the night.

It *was* impossible to cross the river, which *had risen* in consequence of the rain.

I *knew* him, for I *had met* him before.

The Causal Conjunction may be omitted, the causal relation being denoted by the Tense alone : —

It *had rained* during the night, and the roads *were* bad when we started.

The river *had risen* in consequence of the rain, and it *was* impossible to cross it.

I *felt* no appetite at dinner. I *had not had* my regular walk before it.

I *was* very hungry. I *had eaten nothing* all day.

SECONDARY USE : — The Past Perfect is frequently used with another verb in the Past Tense, to denote the *priority* of the one action to the other. The Past Perfect here does not denote the state of things at the time of the subsequent action, but that one action is merely prior to another. In the Secondary Use, the Past Perfect may be regarded as a sort of Double-Past Tense. Compare : —

(*a*) He said that he *had bought* a horse. (= " I *have bought* a horse.")

(*b*) He said that he *had* once *bought* a horse of the man. (= " I once *bought* a horse of the man.")

(*a*) He said that his father *had returned*, and was at home.

(*b*) He said that his father *had returned*, and left again for Kôbe.

Priority may be denoted in two other ways : —

(*a*) **By the Order of Words** : — When several actions are spoken of as a mere succession of past events, the verbs are in the past tense, connected by *and, and then*, etc., either expressed or implied, as — " I *came*, I *saw*, I *conquered*." But when the structure of the sentence makes it necessary to mention the Subsequent Action first, as is frequently the case in Complex Sentences, the Prior Action must be denoted by the Past Perfect. Compare : —,

I *bought* a grammar and *studied* it. / I *studied* the grammar which I *had bought*.

EXERCISE : — *Rewrite the following, changing the Verbs Marked into the Past Perfect.*

I *borrowed* some novels and read them. The servant *broke* a plate, and concealed it. I *lost* my watch, but found it afterward. Father *built* a new house, and we moved into it. Though he *was* victorious at first, he was finally defeated. He *left* on the 15th, and I arrived the next day.

Note 1 : — Sometimes it happens that the verbs are in the natural order, and yet the Past Perfect is used to denote the Prior Action. The Past Perfect then shows that the action is mentioned, not as a Main Event, but only in an Explanatory Relation. Compare : —

(*a*) It *rained* during the night, but it *cleared* in the morning.
(*b*) It *had rained* during the night, and the roads *were* bad.

Note 2 : — The Past Perfect at the commencement of a narrative denotes the state of things at the time, and prepares the reader for the main events that follow. For instance, if the story begins —

"The day *had been* fine" — we expect that the event of the story happened at the close of a fine day ;
"A blacksmith *had killed* a man" — we expect that the story relates to some criminal.

Note 3 : — As we never use the Present Perfect in referring to Historical Events, so in referring to such in connection with another verb in the Past Tense, the Simple Past Tense is used, and not the Past Perfect : —

He *taught* the simple natives how Jesus *came* into this world, how he *was crucified* for our sins, and how he *rose* again on the third day.

(*b*) **By the Conjunction "Before" or "After"** : — When the Conjunction *when* is used instead of *before* or *after*, Priority must be denoted by the Past Perfect : —

{ He *left* ....before I *arrived.*
{ He *had left* (*already*) when I *arrived.*

{ I *arrived* after he *left.*
{ I *arrived* when he *had left* (*already*).

The Negative of the Past Perfect denotes a Subsequent Action : —

{ I *arrived*.....when he *had left* (*already*).
{ I *had not arrived* (*yet*) when he *left.*

{ He *had left* (*already*) when I arrived.
{ He *left*..... { (when I *had not yet arrived.*)
{ before I *had arrived.*

Note : — When the Past Perfect is used together with the conjunction *before* or *after*, as is frequently the case, it does not denote mere priority, but the State of Things at the time of the Main Event denoted by the Past : —

(*a*) { He *had left* before I *arrived*
{ He *left*.....before I *had arrived.*
(*b*) I *arrived* after he *had left.*

EXERCISE : — *Explain the use of the Past Perfect.*

I got the station after the train *had left.* The English *had gained* the victory before the Prussians arrived. I *had eaten* something before dinner. Your letter arrived after I *had left.* I *had learned* a little English before I came to Tokyo. We saw a deer before we *had passed* through the forest. She found herself a mother before she *had attained* her fifteenth year.

II. **Progressive Past Perfect** : — This tense denotes *the continuance of an action up to some moment in the past.*

It is only two years since I chose my profession. Up to that time I *had been studying* without any definite object.
I *had been waiting* ten minutes when he appeared.
I *had not been waiting* ten minutes before he made his appearance.

Note 1 : — We have already seen that with verbs denoting continuous state [*be, have, know,* etc.], the Ordinary Past Perfect denotes continuance up to some moment in the past.

Note 2 : — The Progressive Past Perfect is sometimes used to denote a prior action not continuing up to the past moment, when the stress is laid, not on the *result* of the action, but on the *occupation* itself.

{ He *had studied* (= knew) history.
{ He *had been studying* (= lately engaged in) history.

EXERCISE : — *Explain the difference in meaning.*

1. { Brute as he was, she *had loved* him long.
{ Brute as he was, she *had loved* him once.
2. { The estate *had* once *belonged* to our family.
{ The estate *had* always *belonged* to our family.
3. { He *had held* the post for five years when he resigned.
{ He *had held* various posts under government before.
4. { He *had lived* for ten years in Japan at that time.
{ He *had lived* in China also.
5. { The English *gained* the victory before the Prussians arrived.
{ The English *had gained* the victory before the Pruss. arrived.
6. { The train *had left* before I *got* to the station.
{ The train *left* before I *had got* to the station.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 出發シタ時ハ未ダ日ガ出ナカツタ (2) 日ガ入ツテカラ到着シタ 3. 私ガ東京ニ來テ見レバ便リシ人ガ東京ヲ去ツテ居

ラナカツタ (4)伯父モ洋行中デ未ダ歸ラナカツタ (5)アノ頃ハ彼ハ商賣チ止メテ隱居住居デアツタ (6)日ハ入リ月ハ未ダ出ナカツタ (7)彼ハ職チ失ツテ困テ居ツタ (8)流車ガ今立ツタト云フ處ヘ行ツタ (9)私ハ彼ガ立ツタ後ニ著シタ (10)彼ハ私ガ著シナイ内ニ立ツタ (11)私ハ西洋ヘ行ク前ニ此方デ英語チ遣ツテ行キマシタ (12)私ガ行ツタキハ醫者ガ今來タ處デ怪我人ノ手當チシテ居ツタ (13)出發セシキハ夜間雨ガ降ツタノデ道ガ惡ルカツタ (14)東京ヘ來テ三年目ニ父ガ死ンダ (15)東京ニ來テ未ダ三年立タヌニ父ガ死ンダ (16)結婚シテ三日經タヌニ喧嘩チシタ (17)入學シテ一年經ツタカ經タヌニ早ヤ學校ガ倦キテ來タ

(6) THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

I. **Future Perfect:** — This tense denotes *the completion of an action by* (or *the continuance of an action till*) *some moment in the future.*

(*a*) Before this time to-morrow, I *shall have gained* a peerage or Westminster Abbey.— *Southey's Nelson.*

(*b*) He has lived here for upwards of nine years; he *will have lived* here ten years at the close of this year.

Note 1: — The Future Perfect is sometimes used to denote a probable completed action, but the usage is not general.

It is so long since we met; he *will have forgotten* me.

Note 2: — In adverbial clauses of time or condition, the Future Perfect usually takes the Present Perfect form, owing to the omission of *shall*: —

You will like the book, when you *have read* it through.
You will not make so much of these temples, after you *have seen* Nikko.
I am to have a lord soon after my sister *has married* the squire.— *Goldsmith.*

II. **Progressive Future Perfect:** — This tense denotes *the continuance of an action till some future time*: —

When did you begin English? — Well, let me see, it was some five years ago. Why, I have been studying it for upwards of five years. I *shall have been studying* it six years by April next.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 作文ガ出來タカ (2) 未ダ出來ナイガ稽古ノ始マル迄ニハ書イテ仕舞フ (3) 御歸リノ頃ニハ私ハ東京チ立ツテ仕舞マス (4) 今一時間經テバ月ガ入ツテ仕舞フ (5) 來年四月デ私ハ丁度四年東京ニ居ル (6) 長イ雨ダ明日デ丁度一週間降ル (7) 未ダ病氣ハ全快ハシナイガ試驗迄ニハ癒ルダロウト思フ

§ 4. Sequence of Tenses.

RULE: —*A* ***Past Tense*** *in the Principal Clause should be followed by another* ***Past Tense*** *in the Dependent Clause.*

He *asked* what I *wanted*. I *said* I *did not know*.
Is your brother here? I *thought* he *was* in the country.
Is that man our new principal? I *did not know* that he *was* our new principal.
The boy *ran off* as soon as he *saw* me.

Note 1: — There are two exception to this rule: —

(*a*) A Universal Truth is denoted by the Present in any position: —

Socrates *proved* that virtue *is* its own reward
Galileo *maintained* that the earth *moves*.
He *was* obliged to deny that two and two *make* four.

(*b*) Any Tense may be used after *as* or *than*: —

He *did* as well as you *do*.
He *did* better than you ever *have done* or ever *will do*.

Note 2: — If the Verb in the Principal Clause is in the *Present*, the *Future*, or the *Present Perfect* Tense (which, in fact, are different kinds of the Present Tense), it may be followed by Any Tense in the Dependent Clause: —

I think	that it **is** so.	**I shall know**	if it **is** so.
	that it **was** so.		if it **was** so.
	that it **will be** so.		if it **has been** so, *etc.*
	that it **has been** so.	**I have heard**	that it **is** so.
	that it **had been** so.		that it **was** so.
	that it **will have been** so.		that it **has been** so, *etc.*

SPECIAL RULE I:—*A* ***Past Tense*** *in the Principal Clause must not be followed by the Present Perfect, but by the* ***Past Perfect*** *in the Dependent Clause.*

Has he returned? I *did not know* that he *had returned.*

Compare: —

{ I *have found* the book I *lost.*
{ I *found* the book I *had lost.*

SPECIAL RULE II:—*A* ***Past Tense*** *in the Principal Clause must not be followed by the Ordinary Future Tense, but by* ***Should*** *or* ***Would*** *in the Dependent Clause.*

"Should" and "Would" in Indirect Speech.

Should and *Would* are most frequently used as the Past Tense of *Shall* and *Will* in Indirect Speech, and regularly follow the rules of the latter. *Should* and *Would* here form what may de called a *Past-Future Tense.*

Simple Futurity.	Past Determination.
I hoped that I should	I promised that I would
I hoped that you would	I promised that you should
I hoped that he would	I promised that he should
You hoped that you should	You promised that you would
You hoped that I should	You promised that I should
You hoped that he would	You promised that he should
He hoped that he should	He promised that he would
He hoped that I should	He promised that I should
He hoped that you would	He promised that you should

Note: — The use of the Indicative *Should* and *Would* is not confined to Indirect Speech, properly so called: —

I. **The Indicative "Should"** is used after the Past Tense of Verbs denoting —

(*a*) **Intention**: — My father intended that I *should* be a physician.

(*b*) **Determination**: — It was decided that I *should* be sent to Germany or France.

(*c*) **Agreement**: — It was agreed that the matter *should* be left to my decision.

(*d*) **Proposition**: — It was proposed that a monument *should* be erected in memory of the event.

(*e*) **Command**: — The general gave orders that no fire *should* be kept burning after ten o'clock.

II. **The Indicative "Would"** is frequently used without any introductory verb, to denote Past Determination in the shape of—

(*a*) **Resolution**: — He *would* recover the estate which belonged to his fathers. He *would* be Hastings of Daylesford.

(*b*) **Refusal**: — I offered him money, but he *would not* take it.

(*c*) **Habitual Action**: — He *would* often come of a Sunday, and stay all day.

EXERCISE: — *Supply "should" or "would."*

(*α*) I thought I — see him to-day. I thought he — come to-day. He said that he — not need the money for some time yet, so he — lend it me. He said he — never forget my kindness, and — do anything to oblige me. He expressed his hope that he — recover very soon. But he was afraid that his brother — not recover so soon. He said that he — certainly succeed. But I knew that he — not. He seemed to think that he — recover. But the doctor told me in private that he — die.

(*β*) He expressed his fears that he — fail. But he promised that he — do his best. I was afraid you — not recover so soon. He was afraid he — not recover quickly. He feared he — die. I was afraid I — die every moment. He said that he — lend me his assistance. He said that I — have all the assistance in his power. The principal dissuaded me from leaving, saying that I — have my salary raised. It was arranged that my friend — take my place in my absence.

(*γ*) The principal gave orders that no one — leave the house without his permission. The master of the house requested that we — keep no fire burning after ten o'clock. I said "Go on," but he — not go on. Holding up a gold watch, he shouted to the swimmers that it — be his who — win the race. He said he — consider what he — do. He swore that he — be revenged. He said he wanted my assistance, and I replied that he — have it. I said I wanted my assistance, and he said that I — have it. He insisted that the bill — be paid at once. I intended that you — have the position. I expected that you — accept my offer.

(*δ*) His mother was quite willing that he — marry her. But his father — not hear of it. It was agreed that an application — be made to government. We decided that the attempt — be made. I asked him what I — do. I asked him if he — need my assistance. He replied that he — not. He asked me if I — undertake the woork. I replied that I —. He requested that no one — leave the room. He gave orders that do one — leave the room. He insisted that we — all remain together.

§ 5. Tense in Indirect Speech.

How does Indirect Speech differ from Direct Speech?

In changing from Direct Speech into Indirect, the Verb in the Quotation must follow the Rule of Sequence of Tenses.

When the Verb in the Introductory Clause is in the Past or the Past Perfect Tense, the Verb in the Quotation undergoes the following changes: —

Direct.		*Indirect.*	*Direct.*		*Indirect.*
Present	becomes	**Past.**	**Shall**	becomes	**should.**
Past	„	**Past Perf.**	**Will**	„	**would.**
Pres. Perf.	„	**Past Perf.**	**May**	„	**might.**
Past Perf.	remains	**Past Perf.**	**Can**	„	**could.**
Imperative	becomes	**Infinitive.**	(**Must**	remains	**must.**)

Note 1: — All Pronouns in an Indirect Quotation must agree in Person with the words they represent: —

{ He said to me, "*I am* sorry *you are* leaving."
{ He told me that *he was* sorry *I was* leaving.

When there is any ambiguity in the pronoun *he* or *she*, it may be avoided by placing after it the noun which it represents: —

{ Harry said to Frank, "*I am* mistaken."
{ Harry told Frank, that *he, Harry,* was mistaken.

{ Harry said to Frank, "*You are* in the right."
{ Harry told Frank that *he, Frank,* was in the right.

Note 2: — The following words generally undergo a change in changing into the Indirect: —

Direct.		*Indirect.*	*Direct.*		*Indirect*
This	becomes	**that.**	**To-day**	becomes	**that day.**
Here	„	**there.**	**To-morrow**	„	**the next day.**
Now	„	**then.**	**Yesterday**	„	**the day before.**
Last	„	**the previous.**	**Ago**	„	**before.**
Next	„	**the following.**	*Etc.*		*etc.*

(1) **The Introductory Verb**: — The verb most used to introduce Direct Quotations is *say;* but such verbs as *ask, inquire, reply, answer, cry, exclaim, write,* etc., may also be used.

The verb *say*, when followed by *to* and a pronoun in the Direct form, must be changed into *tell, inform,* etc., in the Indirect: —

{ He *said to me*, "You are right."
{ He *told me* that I was right.

{ He *said to me*, "My brother has arrived."
{ He *informed me* of his brother's arrival.

The verbs *accost, command, promise,* etc., when used with Direct Quotations, are followed by *saying*: —

A traveller *accosted* Æsop, *saying*, "How long will it take me to reach yonder city?"

(2) **Interrogative Sentences**: — When the Quotation is an Interrogative Sentence, the verb *say* must be changed into *ask, inquire, demand, wonder, wish to know,* etc., in the Indirect. If the question is not introduced by an Interrogative, the conjunction *if* or *whether* must be used to introduce the Indirect Interrogative: —

{ He said "Are you tired?"
{ He *asked* (*me*) *if* I was tired.

{ He said, "Am I right?"
{ He *inquired* (*of me*) *whether* he was right or not.

{ He said, "Why did you strike my dog?"
{ He *demanded* (*of me*) why I had struck his dog.

{ The man said, "Shall I go or stay?
{ The man *wanted to know whether* he should go or stay.

EXERCISE: — *Change into the Indirect Form.*

"What is the matter?" I asked. I said to him, "Are you going?" He asked, "Where are you going?" I asked him, "Is that true?" I asked him, "What do you want?" I asked him, "Do you want anything?" I asked him, "What is your name?" I asked him, "Is your father living?" He asked me, "Have you ever been in America?" He asked me, "Where did you study English?" He asked me, "How long have you studied English?" He asked me, "Was your teacher an Englishman or an American?"

(3) **Imperative Sentences**: — When the Quotation is an Imperative Sentence, the verb *say* must be changed into *tell, bid, order, ask, beg, request,* etc., followed by a Personal Object and an Infinitive: —

{ He said, "*Follow* me."
{ He *told me to follow* him.

{ "*Fire!*" said the officer to his men.
{ The officer *ordered* his men *to fire*.

{ He said, "Please do not go."
{ He *begged me not to go*.

EXERCISE : — *Change into the Indirect Form.*

I said to the boys, "Be quiet." I said, "Boys, don't make such a noise." He said to me, "Please wait a moment." She said to me, "Don't suffer yourself to be carried away by any sudden impulse." She said to him, "For God's sake, spare my child." I said to him, "Do be quiet." He said to me, "Shut the door after you." I said to the boys, "Go to bed." I said to the man, "Come early to-morrow morning, and I will give you an answer." The servant said to me, "Wait a while, and you shall know whether mistress will see you or not?" He said, "Boys, do not kill the birds, for they do you no harm."

(4) **Exclamative Sentences :** — Expletives and Exclamative Expressions are either omitted or rendered by some equivalent : —

{ She exclaimed, "*Oh!* how glad I am that you have come!"
{ She exclaimed *with joy* that she was very glad of my coming.

Note : — **Other Ways of Changing from Direct into Indirect :** — In Indirect Narration, it often happens that only the substance of the speech is given in fewer, and frequently different, words. In such cases, it is important that we should know what are the exact words used by the speaker : —

{ He *said*, "*I will pay* you by the end of the month."
{ He *said that he would pay* me by the end of the month.
{ He *promised to pay* me by the end of the month.

{ He *said*, "*I won't pay* the money."
{ He *said that he would not pay* the money.
{ He *refused to pay* the money.

{ He *said*, "My father *has arrived*."
{ He *told* me that his father *had arrived*.
{ He *informed* me *of* his father's *arrival*.

EXERCISE (*a*) : — *Change into the Direct Form.*

(*α*) He offered to show me the way. He promised to study harder in future. He has promised me assistance in the matter.

He insisted on having his bill paid. He threatened to resign, if he had not his salary raised. He promises to make a man of me. I insisted on seeing the letter. I insisted on his showing me the letter. He threatened to bring an action against me. He expressed his resolution never to be in debt again. I offered him assistance, in case he needed help. We offered him life on condition that he would not fight against us any more.

(*β*) He promised me an appointment in some school. I offered him twice the price. I have promised him an increase of salary next year. Your brother has informed me of your success. He signified his intention of starting the next day. He confessed his guilt. He denied his guilt. He declares the statement to be false. He expressed his willingness to help me. He acknowledges his fault. He owned himself unequal to the task. He professed himself a Christian. My doctor recommends travelling for the benefit of my health. He begged me to stay.

EXERCISE (*b*) : — *Change into the Indirect form.*

(*α*) He said to me, "I'll lend you any sum you may need." He said to me, "You may depart." They said, "You must not stir from the spot." He said, "I will never confess." The doctor said to me, "You had better go to the seaside." He said, "I do not know the man." He said to me, "Wait a moment." He said to me, "Will you please come in?" He said, "I hope it will not rain." He said, "I wish you all to leave the room." He says, "I have done it." I will say, "I have been in the wrong." He has confessed saying, "I have been in the wrong." He said, "My father died last night."

(*β*) He said, "I am starting to-morrow." He said, "I came to Tokyo three years ago." He exclaimed, "Hurrah! There is no school to-day." He said, "I must have your answer, yes or no." He said, "You must give me an answer, yes or no." He said, "I will turn you all out of doors." He persisted in saying, "I do not know it." He said, "I am satisfied with the arrangement." He said, "I am afraid the man will die." He said, "I have been in the wrong." "Where is your father?" asked the stranger of the boy. He said, "Has your father a grindstone?" A traveller accosted Æsop saying, "How long will it take me to reach yonder city?" Æsop only said, "Walk on!"

(*γ*) He said to me, "Are you tired?" He asked me, "Have you ever seen my book?" He said to me, "Do you like my book?" He said to me, "Will you take dinner with me?" He said to her, "When are you leaving Tokyo?" He said to me, "Will you give me a piece of paper?" One of them said,

"Let us make a night of it." "What is the price of sake?" asked the customer. "What is the reason?" I asked. He said, "I will follow your advice." "I am a teacher," he said. "What do you teach?" I asked. "How is this?" said the king; "eggs must surely be very scare here." "Pardon me," replied the host, "eggs are plentiful enough, but kings are scarce."

(δ) The servant cried out in horror, "I have given you ink instead of your medicine." "Never mind," said Matthews, "I'll swallow a bit of blotting-paper." The king wrote back an answer to the rebel prince: "I have received your letter. I am glad to find you set so high a price on my head. I would not give a farthing for yours." "I have something to say to you," said I to him. "Will you come into the house for a few minutes? I will tell it you there." "Mistress is not quite well," the servant said to the visitor, "Wait a while, and you shall know if she will see you."

EXERCISE: — *Correct errors in Tense-Form, if any.*

(α) What are you seeing? Are you hearing? Where are you living? This house has been standing for over a century. He has been holding the post for a long time. Have you ever gone to America? I have never gone there. Have you ever come here before? I have come here once or twice before. He has come to-day, and left this note for you. I have gone to see Mr. A. to-day. He said that he has lost his watch.

(β) Have you ever lost your way in Tokyo? I have often lost my way in Tokyo. Is his father living? — No, he died. What has become of his brother? — He became a soldier. When has your father gone to America? He has gone to several countries. When has your friend arrived? Has he ever come here before? Have you seen the new teacher? — Yes, he has come here to-day. Has the doctor come to-day? — Yes, he has come just now.

(γ) Is the child awake? — No, it has slept. He said that he is going abroad next year. He says he will go to America first. He did not say when he is leaving. My father was very glad to hear that I have passed the examination. Has he succeeded? — He told me that he has been unsuccessful. What did the policeman say? — He inquired if there is a foreigner stopping in the house. He also asked if you are at home.

(δ) He said that he has bought a new house. He has told me that he wishes to sell his old house. Is your father here? I did not know that he is here. No one has told me that he

is here. The doctor says you will recover very soon. I knew you will get well very quickly. Our teacher told us not to kill the birds, for they do us no harm. Formerly it was not known that the earth is a round ball.

(ε) He said he must go to school. He said I must go to school. He said it must be true. Bluebeard told his wife that she must not open the door. What did you say his name is? Who did you say is waiting for me? Where did you say the town is? I have written to him, so that he might be prepared for the worst. I am feeling thirsty. I have long been wanting to go there. He came to Japan in 1880, and lived here ever since.

(ζ) He is ill for two months. I shall be in this school for a year next September. I shall be studying English for seven years next April. I was ill for the last three days. He was ill for three days when the doctor was sent for. It was discovered long ago that electricity and magnetism are the same agent. If he returns next year, he will be absent six years. If I stay till Christmas, I shall be staying in Japan for ten years. He does not need to work hard, for he is very rich.

CHAPTER VI.

The Subjunctive Mood.

The Subjunctive Mood is distinguished from the Indicative by the absence of the Personal Inflection in the Present Tense, as — if he *come;* if he *have* come, etc.

The Verb **To Be** alone has special forms characteristic of the Subjunctive Mood in the Present and the Past: —

Subjunctive Present.	*Subjunctive Present Perfect.*
If I **be**	If I **have been**
If thou **be**	If thou **have been**
If he **be**, *etc.*	If he **have been**, *etc.*
Subjunctive Past.	*Subjunctive Past Perfect.*
If I **were**	If I **had been**
If thou **wert**	If thou **had been**
If he **were**, *etc.*	If he **had been**, *etc.*
Subjunctive, Future.	*Subjunctive Future Perfect.*
If I **should be**	If I **should have been**
If thou **shouldst be**	If thou **should have been**
If he **should be**, *etc.*	If he **should have been**, *etc.*

(*a*) *Why is the Subjunctive Mood so called?*
(*b*) *How is it that only the Subjunctive Present and Past are recognized by some grammarians?*
(*c*) *Give the Six Subjunctive Tenses of the Active Verb "To Write."*
(*d*) *Give the Six Subjunctive Tenses of the Passive Verb "To Be Written."*

The Subjunctive Mood is used in dependent clauses, to express what is either uncertain or contrary to the fact. It always implies *doubt* or *pure supposition.*

The Tenses of the Subjunctive Mood indicate the time-relations only to a certain extent, their chief uses being to denote the degree of doubt or uncertainty: —

(*a*) **The Present Forms** [*Present* and *Present Perfect*] may refer to the future as well as to the present, and denotes *Uncertainty*: —

I shall not start to-morrow, if it *rain.*
Tell him return the book, if he *have done* with it.

Compare: —

If he *is* old, he is strong.
If he *be* not too old, I will employ him.

(*b*) **The Past Forms** [*Past* and *Past Perfect*] denote *Pure Supposition Contrary to the Fact*: —

If I *were* rich, I would go abroad; but I can not, because I am poor.
If I *had been* economical, I might have been a rich man; but I am poor, because I was extravagant.

Compare: —

If it *be* true. (= It *may be* true.)
If it *were* true. (= It *is not* true.)

(*c*) **The Future Forms** [*Future* and *Future Perfect*] may refer to the present as well as to the future, and denote *Strong Doubt or Improbability.* Compare: —

I think it will rain. I shall not start if it *rain.*
I hope it will not rain. I shall start even if it *should rain.*
He must have arrived by this time. Tell him to come at once, if he *have arrived.*
He can not have arrived yet. But if he *should have arrived,* tell him to come at once.

§ 1. Subjunctive Present and Present Perfect.

I. **Subjunctive Present**: — This form denotes *doubt* or *uncertainty*, usually joined to futurity, owing to the omission of *shall* in conditional clauses: —

If it **be** so = it **may be** so.

The Subjunctive Present is dying out of Modern English, except in a few idioms, as — ***if need be, however it be, unless it be that,*** etc. In Modern English, the Subjunctive Present gives place to the Indicative Present, or the Subjunctive *May* or *Should*: —

(*a*) **Indicative Present for Subjunctive Present**: — The Subjunctive Present gives way to the Indicative Present in the following cases: —

(α) In Conditional Clauses implying *doubt* or *uncertainty*, introduced by *if, unless, provided,* etc. Here the Subjunctive Present is the language of modern prose, but in Colloquial English the Indicative Present is used: —

If a counsel *be* (or *is*) good, it matters not who gave it.
If a man once *fall*(*s*), all will tread upon him.
Unless he *consent*(*s*), we can do nothing.
Provided he *acknowledge*(*s*) his fault, I will pardon him.

(β) In Dependent Interrogative Clauses, introduced by *if* or *whether*: —

I doubt if it *be* (or *is*) true.
We do not know whether it *be* (or *is*) true or not.
We doubt whether any name in literary history *be* so generally odious as that of Machiavelli. — *Macaulay.*

(*b*) **Subjunctive "May" for Subjunctive Present**: — The Subjunctive Present gives place to the Subjunctive *May* in the following cases: —

(α) In Concessive Clauses implying *doubt* or *uncertainty*, introduced by *though, whether, whoever, whatever, whichever, whenever, wherever, however,* etc.

Though he (*may*) *slay* me, yet will I trust in him. — *Bible.*
Whether the report (*may*) *be* true or not, something must have happened.
Wherever you (*may*) *go*, you can not succeed without perseverance.

(β) The Subjunctive Present, used in Exclamations of Optative Meaning, is equivalent to the optative use of *may* : —

God *bless* you ! (*May* heaven *protect* you !)
God *grant* that it may be so !
Thy kingdom *come !* Thy will *be done !*
Long *live* the Emperor ! Got *save* the King !

Note : — Here the Subjunctive appears to be used independently, but such is not really the case. It may be regarded as an Optative Clause with *may* understood, or an Archaic Indirect Imperative with *let* understood [See Page 463 : Note 1.] : —

Heaven *help* him ! = { I pray that heaven *may help* him. / *Let* heaven *help* him ! }

(γ) The Subjunctive Present used in Final Clauses gives place to *may* or *might* in Modern English : —

{ Judge not that ye *be not judged.* — *Bible.* / Do not judge others that you *may not be judged.* }

(c) **Subjunctive "Should" for Subjunctive Present** : — The Subjunctive Present gives place to the Subjunctive *Should* in the following cases : —

(α) In Temporal Clauses introduced by *when, before, ere, till,* etc. In Modern English, either the Indicative Present or the Subjunctive Future is used : —

We have better wait till the storm { *be* or *is* / *should be* } over.

He that marries ere he *be* wise, will die ere he *thrive.* — *Proverb.*

(β) In Clauses introduced by *lest,* the Subjunctive Present gives place to *should,* on rare occasions to *shall* : —

Beware lest you (*should*) *fail.*
Beware lest sin (*should*) *surprise* thee. — Bible.

(γ) The Subjunctive Present is used in Indirect Speech, preceded by an Introductory Clause of Determination or Proposition. This is still the language of Modern Prose ; but *shall, should,* or the Indicative Present, is used in Colloquial English : —

The sentence is that you (*shall*) *be* hanged.
I will see that your wrongs (*shall*) *be* righted.
It was proposed that the rates (*should*) *be* reduced.

II. **Subjunctive Present Perfect** : — Generally speaking, supposition belongs to the past, and doubt to the future. But doubt or uncertainty regarding the past may arise from our ignorance of the fact. When a completed action is spoken of as doubtful or uncertain in a conditional clause, the verb ought to be in the Subjunctive Present Perfect, though this is rarely the case in Modern English : —

I doubt if *he have succeeded.*
If he *have failed* this time, he will be sure to succeed next time.

Exercise (a) : — *Change into the Modern Form.*

(α) If a man once *fall,* all will tread upon him.. I will go whether he *permit* me or not. Though he *be* of high birth, his tastes are low and vulgar. Whoever he *be,* he can not be a wise man. Thou shalt stone him with stones that he *die.* — *Bible.* See that everything *be* ready.

(β) Beware lest you *fail.* Try if there *be* any room for doubt. The enterprise, *be* it good or bad, is one that requires a great man. Worse than idle is compassion, if it *end* in tears and sighs. It is better he *die.* I will see that your orders *be* obeyed. Make haste lest your ardour *cool.* If a man *smite* his servant, and the servant *die,* the man shall be put to death. — *Bible.*

(γ) I will persevere in my course though it *cost* me my life. Though a liar *speak* the truth, he will not be believed. See that no one *be forgotten.* I tremble lest *he discovered.* Whenever I shall seek a wife, it shall be my first question whether she *be* willing to be led by reason. — *Johnson.* Home is home, *be* it ever so homely. Mine *be* a cot beside the hill. — *Rogers.*

Exercise (b) : — *Change into the Subjunctive Present, wherever possible.*

(α) If he *is* too old, I will not employ him. If he *is* old, he is still strong. If the man *dies,* his children will be helpless. Though a liar *may speak* the truth, he will not be believed. Though he *speaks* the truth, nobody believes him.

(β) Though gold *is* more precious than iron, yet iron is more useful than gold. Unless he *takes* better care of his health, his constitution will break down. If it *rains,* all work is delayed. If it *rains,* the work will be delayed. Unless he *behaves* better, I will dismiss him. If the law *is* severe, it is just. If the law *is* too severe, it must be altered.

(γ) Force may be resorted to, if it *is* necessary. Whoever he *may be,* he can not be a wise man. However rich a man *may be,* he ought not to be idle. Whether the story *may be* true or false, it well illustrates the man's character. If that *is* the case, I can wait. If it *rains,* I generally stay at home. If it *rains,* I shall stay at home.

§ 2. Subjunctive Past and Past Perfect.

I. **Subjunctive Past:** — The Preterit in English has two uses — to denote *Past Fact* or *Supposition relating to the Present.* The Preterit, when used as the Subjunctive Past, denotes *Pure Supposition Contrary to the Fact.*

The Subjunctive Past is Past in *Form* only; the *Matter* relates to the Present: —

[*Subjunctive.*]	[*Indicative.*]
If I were	**= I am not.**
If I were not	**= I am.**

Note: — In colloquial English, the Indicative Form *was* is used instead of the Subjunctive Form *were*: —

I wish I *was* dead.
If I *was* you, I would not do such a thing.

The Subjunctive Past has the following four uses: —

(*a*) In Conditions Contrary to the Fact, introduced by *if, even if, suppose*, etc., and followed in the Principal Clause by a Conditional Auxiliary — *should, would, might, could*, or *must*: —

If I *were* a bird, I would fly to thee.
If I *were not* Alexander, I would be Diogenes.
If I *had* a hundred hands, I would employ all in serving you.
If all men *did* their duty, there would be less misery in the world.
Suppose you *were* as rich as he, what would you do?

(*b*) In Hypothetical Clauses introduced by *as if* or *as though*: —

The child talks as if it *were* a man.
He talks as if he *knew* everything.
Having grown rich, he treats his old friends as though he *did not know* them.

Note 1: — This is an elliptical construction, in which the principal clause is understood. Compare: —

{ The child talks ***as*** (*it would talk*) ***if*** it ***were*** a man.
{ The child talks ***as*** (*it would not talk even*) ***though*** it ***were*** a man.

Note 2: — The Subjunctive Past after *as if* or *as though* undergoes no change, when it comes after a verb in the past tense: —

{ It *seems* as if my wish *were* to be fulfilled.
{ It *seemed* as if my wish *were* to be fulfilled.

Idiom: — In books, we find the dead, ***as it were,*** living.

(*c*) The Subjunctive Past is used in expressions of unattainable wishes, introduced by *I wish* or (*I*) *would*: —

I wish I *were* a bird. I wish I *had* wings, and *could* fly.
I wish he *were* here. I wish he *would* come.
I would I *were* young again! Would that it *were* so!
Would to Heaven that the shedding of mine own blood, drop by drop, *could* redeem the captivity of Judah! — *Scott.*

Compare: —

{ I wish I *were* a scholar. { I *wish* I *were* dead.
{ I wish *to be* a scholar. { I *wished* I *were* dead.

(*d*) The Subjunctive Past is used in Indirect speech, as the Past Tense of the Subjunctive Present, to denote *Doubt* or *Uncertainty*: —

I thought I could get my own living *if need were.*
For a moment, she doubted whether the past *were* not all a dream.

II. **Subjunctive Past Perfect:** — This tense always denotes *Pure Supposition Contrary to the Fact* As the Subjunctive Past denotes Supposition relating to the Present, so the Subjunctive Past Perfect denotes Supposition relating to the Past.

In form, the Subjunctive Past Perfect is the same as the Indicative Past Perfect: —

[*Subjunctive.*]	[*Indicative.*]
If I had been	**= I was not.**
If I had not been	**= I was.**

The Subjunctive Past Perfect has the following uses: —

(*a*) In Conditions Contrary to the Fact, generally followed by the Conditional Perfect — *should, would, might, could*, or *must have been*: —

It is a mercy I did not go. If I *had gone,* I might have been killed.
If Columbus *had not discovered* America, somebody else would have discovered it.

If Napoleon *had not been defeated* at Waterloo, the history of Europe would have been different.

Had I but *served* my God with half the zeal I served my king, he would not in my age have left me naked to my enemies. — *Shakespeare.*

(*b*) In Clauses introduced by *as if, as though* : —

He coolly resumed his seat, as if nothing *had happened.*

Compare : —

He treats me as if he *did not know* me.
(= He *knows* me.)

He treats me as if he *had never seen* me.
(= He *has seen* me.)

(*c*) After *I wish,* (*I*) *would* : —

What a sight it must have been! I am sorry I was not there. I wish I *had been* there.

Would to God we *had died* in the land of Egypt. — *Bible.*

Compare : —

I *am not* rich ; I wish I *were.*

I *was not* diligent ; I wish I *had been.*

(*d*) In Indirect Speech, the Subjective Past Perfect may be used as the past of subjunctive present perfect, to express doubt : —

He said that he would try again if he *had failed.*

Exercise (*a*) : — *Supply blanks.*

(*α*) I am not rich ; if I ....., I should not have to work so hard. I have no money ; if I ....., I would lend it to you. I have no mind to try ; I could do it if I ..... . I do not know it ; and even if I ....., I would not tell you. If there ..... no fires in Tokyo, it would be a better place to live in. I make up by diligence for what I lack in ability ; if I ..... clever, I would not work so hard. You say you can not get your own living ; would you do it, if you .....? I would do it, if I ..... how.

(*β*) I am sorry my father is dead ; I wish he ..... ; if he ....., I should not have to work for my living. I have no uncle, either ; I wish I ..... . I regret that I have ever seen her ; I wish I ..... . I am glad I was not there ; if I ....., I might have got into trouble. We were delayed on the road ; if we ....., we should have arrived long ago. He is not sick, although he looks as if he ..... . He knows nothing at all, though he talks as if he ..... a great deal. I am sorry I am a boy ; I wish I ..... a man ; if I ....., I would go to the war.

(*γ*) I must take notes, because I have a poor memory ; if I ..... a better memory, I would not do so. If I ..... take notes, I should forget everything. I am sorry my brother is not here ; I wish he ..... here. If he ..... here, he would enjoy the sight. You should have seen the sight ; I wish you ..... there. If you ....., you would have enjoyed the sight. I have no time to go ; if I ....., I would go with you. I had no time to go ; if I ....., I would have done so.

(*δ*) If I ..... you, I would not do such a thing. Why did you do such a foolish thing? If I ..... in your place, I would have acted differently. I can not buy it, because I have no money ; I wish I ..... the money. If I ....., I would buy it. I could not buy it, because I had no money. If I ....., I would have bought it. If aluminium ..... as cheap as iron, it would be used for buildings ships. I borrow money, because I can not help it : I would not borrow money, if I ..... .

(*ε*) 原 文 削 除

原 文 削 除 I find I am getting old , I wish I ..... . It is a pity the weather is bad ; I wish it ..... . If it ....., more people would have come. I do not try, for even if I ..... ever so hard, I could not succeed. It is a pity she stoops a little ; if she ....., she would be a fine figure. I have know him long ; but having grown rich, he treats as if he ..... .

(*ζ*) I am sorry I did not see him ; I wish I ..... . You came just in time ; if you ..... ten minutes later, I should have been out. I applied a day too late ; if I ....., I should have obtained the position. You were not paying attention, when I explained it ; if you ....., you would have heard it. The doctor came too late ; if he ....., the man might have been saved.

(*η*) The calamity has happened owing to your carelessness ; if you ....., it would not have happened. He has acknowledged his fault ; if he ....., I should not have pardoned him. I did not work hard enough ; I wish I ..... . If I ....., I might have succeeded. I did not know that your were here ; if I ....., I would have invited you. What would you do, if you ..... in my place? What would you have done, if you ..... in my place?

Exercise (*b*) : — *Change into expressions of wish.*

I am sorry I am only a boy. I am sorry I have no parents. I am sorry I am not rich. I am sorry I can not go to school. He is sorry he has to go to school. I am sorry I am not young like you. I am sorry I do not know book-keeping. I am sorry I did not learn it at school. I am sorry I left school at that time. I am sorry I have ever seen her. I am sorry he is

not here. I am sorry I was not there. I am sorry I did not see the performance. I am sorry I did not hear the lecture. I am sick of life. I was sick of life.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 鳥ニナリタイ (2) 翼ガ欲シイ (3) 飛ンデ行キタイ (4) 兄ガ居レバヨカツタ (5) 私ハ男ニ生レリヤ宜カツタ (6) 助ケテ遣リタイガ助ケルコトガ出來ヌ (7) 私ハアナタノ樣ニ英語ガ話シタイ (8) 私ハ商賣ヲ止シテ馬鹿ナ事ヲシタ (9) 止メナケリヤ宜カツタ (10) アノ人ハ何デモ知ツテ居ル樣ナコトヲ云フ (11) 君ハ知ツテ居ル癖ニ僕ニ聞ク (12) 此子ガ男ナラ宜カツタ (13) アノ人ハ病人ノ樣ニ見エルケレモ病氣デハナイ (14) 私ハ又若クナリタイ (15) 行カナイデ殘念ナコトシタ行キタカツタ (16) 彼ニ逢ハナイデ殘念ナコトシタ逢ヒタカツタ (17) 演舌ヲ聞カナイデ殘念ナコトシタ聞キタカツタ (18) アノ時學校ヲ止メナケリヤ宜カツタ

§ 3. Subjunctive Future and Future Perfect.

Note 1 : — We have seen that in archaic style, *Shall* is used with all persons in clauses of conditional meaning, to denote contingent futurity : —

Wherever *I shall* seek a wife, it shall be my first question whether she be willing to be led by reason. — *Johnson.*

If *he* of the Lion Heart *shall* return to this land, then shall this Wilfred of Ivanhoe be unto me as a wall of defence. — *Scott.*

She will prove a treasure to any one *who shall* have the good fortune to win her affection. — *Marryat.*

It is the omission of this *shall* that makes the Subjunctive Present ; and it is this *shall* that reappears as the Subjunctive Future Auxiliary *should.*

Note 2 : — We have also seen that *Will* in Conditional Clauses is always a significant term denoting volition : —

If you *will* grant my request, I shall esteem it a great favour.

If you *will* have it so, I have nothing to say against it.

The Subjunctive *Would* is therefore always a significant term denoting volition.

Note 3 : — Verbs denoting *involuntary actions* (*i.e.* verbs requiring *I shall*) take the Subjunctive *should* with all persons ; while verbs denoting *voluntary actions* (*i.e.* verbs used with *I will*) take the Subjunctive *would* with all persons : —

I shall need it.....If I (you, he) *should* need it,....
I shall meet him.....If I (you, he) *should* meet him.
I shall succeed.....If I (you, he) *should* succeed,...

I will lend it to you.....If you *would* lend it to me,.....
I will grant your request....If you *would* grant my request.
I will try.....If you *would* but try,.....

Contingent Futurity.	*Hypothetical Determination.*
If I **should** fail	If I **would** try
If you **should** fail	If you **would** try
If he **should** fail, *etc.*	If he **would** try, *etc.*

(1) **Subjunctive "Should"** : — The Subjunctive Future with *should* may refer to the present as well as the future. The Subjunctive Present may refer to the future as well, but the addition of *should* emphasizes the notion of *uncertainty* or *improbability* : —

Say this to thy lord, *should* he *chance* to inquire after the fate of her whose life he saved. — *Scott.*

If my valour *should leave* me ! Valour will come and go. — *Sheridan.*

Don't ! if anybody *should come !* — *Dickens.*

Compare : —

I am afraid it will rain. If it *rains*, I shall not start to-morrow.
I hope it will not rain. But even if it *should rain*, I would start to-morrow.

I am afraid I shall fail. But if I *fail* this time, I shall have another chance next year.
I hope I shall not fail. But even if I *should fail* this time, I would try again next year.

Note 1 : — The Subjunctive Future with *should* may be followed by either the Indicative or the Conditional Future : —

If I *should* fail, what *shall* (or *should*) I do?
If you *should* fail, what *will* (or *would*) you do?
If he *should* die, what *will* (or *would*) become of his family?

Note 2 : — The Subjunctive *should* is further used in all cases where the archaic conditional *shall* was formerly used : —

(*a*) In Temporal Clauses of Conditional Meaning : —

They resolved, when the inundation *should cease*, to return to Abyssinia. — *Johnson.*

Rasselas was confined in a private palace, till the order of succession *should call* him to the throne. — *Johnson.*

(*b*) In Relative Clauses of Conditional Meaning : —

Queen Isabella offered a reward to the first man who *should discover* land.

A concussion that *should* shatter the Pyramid, would threaten the dissolution of the continent. — *Johnson.*

(*c*) In Clauses introduced by the Conjunction *Lest* : —

I am afraid lest he *should die.*
I tremble lest we *should be discovered.*
He works hard lest he *should fail.*

Note 3 : — The Subjunctive *should* (and in fact Subjunctive and Conditional ***should, would, could, might,*** and ***must***) undergoes no change when it comes after a verb in the Indicative Past :—

{ I *fear* lest he *should* die.
{ I *feared* lest he *should* die.

(2) **Subjunctive "Would"** : — *Would*, in Clauses of Conditional Meaning, always assumes the volition of the subject : —

{ You could see it, if you *would.*
{ (= You can not see it, because you *will not.*)

Compare : —

{ If you *will* do so, I *shall* be much obliged.
{ If you *would* do so, I *should* be much obliged.

(3) **Subjunctive "Were to"** : — Pure supposition properly belongs to the past or present. But there are some facts in the future which may be regarded as certain. Hence the need of a form to express future supposition; and the form "*were to*" is used to denote Pure Supposition relating to the Future : —

Even if the sun *were to rise* in the west, my resolution would be unchanged.

I should very imperfectly execute the task which I have undertaken, if I *were* merely *to treat* of battles and sieges. — *Macaulay.*

Three Forms of Subjunctive Future.

(*a*) *Uncertainty* : —	If he **(shall) die**	to-morrow.
(*b*) *Improbability* : —	If he **should die**	to-morrow.
(*c*) *Supposition* : —	If he **were to die**	to-morrow.

Note : — In expressing Pure Supposition with such verbs as *be, have, want, know,* etc., which denote continuous states, the Subjunctive Past is properly used, as — if I *were* ; if I *had* ; if I *wanted* ; if I *knew,* etc. But with those verbs which denote actions naturally implying futurity in the performance (*tell, ask, come, go, become, die,* etc.) the form in *were to* ought to be used in expressing pure suppositions. Compare : —

{ If I ***went*** to school, ...(= I *do not go* to school.)
{ If I ***were to go*** abroad, ...(= I *am not going* abroad.)

{ I would tell him, if I ***knew*** it.
{ I would tell him, if he ***were to ask*** me.

In ordinary conversation, however, both these forms and the Subjunctive Future are used without much distinction : —

I would help him { if he ***should ask*** me.
{ if he ***were to ask*** me.
{ if he ***asked*** me.

II. **Subjunctive Future Perfect** : — We have seen that the Subjunctive Present Perfect denotes doubt with regard to a completed action. The addition of *should* [Subjunctive Future Perfect] emphasizes the notion of uncertainty or improbability. Compare : —

He must have arrived by this time. If he *has arrived,* he will be sure to call on me first. If he *should not have* arrived yet, he will be sure to arrive to-morrow

The Subjunctive Future Perfect has two forms, — those with *should* and *would* — but the meanings are widely different : —

Doubtful Perfect or Past.	*Past Hpyothetical Determination.*
If I **should have failed**	If I **would have tried**
If you **should have failed**	If you **would have tried**
If he **should have failed,** *etc.*	If he **would have tried,** *etc.*

(1) The Form in **Should** may refer to a *completed action* [Doubtful Present Perfect] or to an *action to be completed at some future time* [Doubtful Future Perfect] : —

(*a*) I think he *has arrived* already. If he *should not have arrived* yet, I shall have to wait till he arrives.

(*b*) I think I *shall have left* when you come back. But if I *should not have left* before you return, I shall be glad of your company.

(2) The Form in **Would** always refers to a Past Action. It takes the place of the Subjunctive Past Perfect, with the *Subject's Volition* implied, and always denotes a supposition contrary to the fact : —

If you *would but have* (= *had*) *tried* harder, you must have succeeded.

If he *would only have* (= *had*) *come* to me, I would have helped him.

Exercise (*a*) : — *Supply "should," "would," or "were to."*

(*α*) I think there is no fear of my failing ; but if by any chance I — fail, I would try again next year. If any one — call, say that I shall be back by six. If you — happen to meet a young man named A.B., have the goodness to give him this letter. If you — grant my request, I should esteem it a great favour. Suppose you — choose ; which would you take? If I choose, I would study French. I could do it, if I —. If he — work harder, he would succeed. If he — succeed, he would have accomplished what many have failed to do. If I — ask him, he would consent.

(*β*) What should I say to my father, if I — fail? I might succeed, if I — try hard. If you — go without your ticket, you would not be admitted. I would not so such a thing, even if I — receive millions for it. If I — go abroad, I would go to England. If you — not amend your conduct, you would have to leave school. If I — not get better, I should have to leave school. If you — not be more careful, I should be obliged to find another man. We should be happy, if you — favour us with an order.

(*γ*) He who — have peace, should be prepared for war. A man who — do such a thing, would be called a fool. I could not speak to him, lest the others — overhear me. You would need more money, if you — not be careful. If you — need any money, I would lend it to you. If you — lend me the money, I should be much obliged to you. If you — not take better care of your health, you would not recover. If you — not recover, you would have to give up your studies.

(*δ*) If I — swallow this poison, I should die instantly. What would you do, if you — fail? I should succeed, if you

— help me. — you ever come this way, do not forget to come and see me. He would feel hurt, if you — not accept his present. I returned in haste, lest my absence — cause auxiety. If the sea — rise 500 ft., India would become an Island. He persuaded me to stay till I — get well.

Exercise (*b*) : — *Use the Subjunctive Future Perfect with "should" or "would."*

If the place of meeting *has not been appointed* yet, say that such and such a place would suit me best. If the first train *has left* before I get there, I shall wait for the next train. If he *had come* to me, I would have helped him. If he *had been* economial, he might have been a rich man. If he *had tried* harder, he would have succeeded. If he *has failed* this time, he is sure to succeed next time

SUMMARY.

Real Time.	Doubt.	Supposition.	Improbability.
Present.	If it **be**	If it **were**	If it **should be**
Past.	If it **were**	If it **had been**	If it **should have been**
Future.	If it **be**	If it **were to be**	If it **should be**

CHAPTER VII.

The Conditional Mood.

The Conditional Mood is formed by means of *Should* and *Would.*

Note : — *Might, Could,* and *Must* frequently take the place of *Should* or *Would.* [See Pages 433 — 442 : "Potential Mood."]

The fulfilment of a condition relating to the Present or Future necessarily throws the accomplishment of the action into the Future ; and the fulfilment of a condition relating to the Past places the accomplishment of the act in the Past or the Future. Hence the Conditional Mood has only two tense-forms : —

Conditional Future.	*Conditional (Perfect or) Past.*
I **should be** (if)	I **should have been** (if)
You **would be** (if)	You **would have been** (if)
He **would be** (if), *etc.*	He **would have been** (if), *etc.*

Note : — In Older English, the Subjunctive Past [*were, had,* etc.] was used in both the Dependent and the Principal Clause, in conditional sentences of supposition. (The auxiliaries *could* and *might* are still so used.) In Modern English, the Mood of Supposition has become differentiated into the Subjunctive Mood in Dependent Clauses, and the Conditional Mood in Principal Clauses : —

{ If it *were* so, it *were* well. [O. E.]
{ If it *were* so, it *would be* well. [M. E.]

{ If I *had been* there, I *had been* killed. [O. E.]
{ If I *had been* there, I *should have been* killed. [O. E.]

Exercise : — *Expand into the Modern Form.*

He were no lion, were not Romans hinds.—*Shakespeare.* If thou hadst been here, my brother had not died. Could a man live by it, it were not an unpleasant employment to be a poet. If he had killed me, he had done a kinder dead. Our union were contrary to the laws.—*Scott.* It is time we were off. Well had it been for you, had you never been born.

If it were done when 'tis done, then 'twere well,
It were done quickly.—*Shakespeare.*

§ 1. Conditional Future.

The Conditional Future denotes either *denial* or *doubt.* Whether the Conditional *Should* or *Would* implies *denial* or *doubt,* depends on the nature of the condition : —

(*a*) If the Condition is a *pure supposition* [*Subjunctive Past*], the Conditional *should* or *would* generally denotes *denial : —*

Conditional.	*Indicative.*
I **should be**.....(if)	= I **am not.**
I **would do** so (if)	= I **will not do** so.

Exercise : — *Paraphrase into the Indicative.*

If I were not in a government school, I *should be* obliged to serve in the army. I *would do* it, if I could. I *would believe* it, if I saw it. If I knew it, I *would tell* you. I *should forget* everything, if I did not take notes. If I were rich, I *would go* abroad. You *would be* stronger, if you did not drink so much. Japan

would be a pleasanter country, if earthquakes were not so frequent. If I were clever, I *should not have* to work so hard. If Japan were not an island, she *would not need* such a powerful navy. If aluminium were not so expensive, it *would be used* for building ships. I *would employ* the man, if he were younger. I *would not employ* him, if he were not honest.

原 文 削 除 I

would get my own living, if I knew how. I *would write,* if I knew his address. I *would not believe* it, if you did not say so. I *would not borrow* money, if I could help it. I *would buy* it, if I had the money. I *would go* with you, if I had time to spare. If he were not idle, he *would be* a good student.

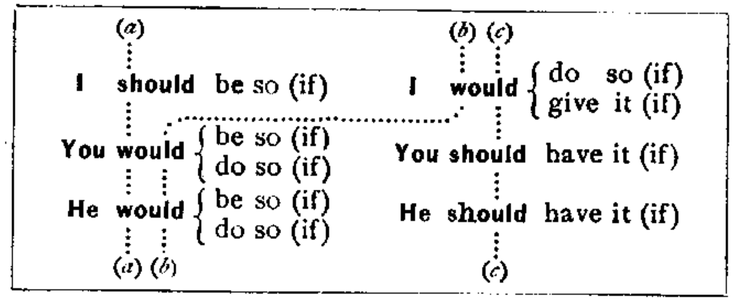
(*b*) If the Condition implies *doubt* [*Subjunctive Future*], the Conditional *should* or *would* generally denotes *doubtful or conditional futurity : —*

[Conditional.]	*[Indicative.]*
I **should be** (if)	= I **may or may not be.**
I **would do** so (if)	= I **will do** so on that condition.

Exercise : — *Paraphrase into the Indicative.*

If I should fail, I *should have* to serve my time in the army. If you would not amend your conduct, you *would have* to leave school. If you would bear the expense, I *would consent.* I *should esteem* it a great favour, if you would grant my request. We *should be* happy, if you would favour us with an order. If you would not be more careful, I *should be* obliged to find another man. If you would not amend your conduct, I *should have* to dismiss you from my service. If my friend should not arrive to-morrow, I *should have* to go all by myself.

Note : — Conditional *Should* and *Would* follow the Ordinary Rules for the use of *Shall* and *Will : —*



(*a*....*a*) **Conditional Futurity** : —

I should fail, if I did not work hard.
You would fail, if you would not be more diligent.
He would fail, if he would not work harder.

(*b*....*b*) **Subject's Conditional Determination** : —

I would do it, if I could.
Would you do it, if you could?
He says *he would* do it, if he could.

(*c*....*c*) **Speaker's Conditional Determination** : —

I would give you the money, if I could.
You should have the money, if I had it.
He should have the money, if I had it.

§ 2. Conditional (Perfect or) Past.

This tense is usually accompanied by the Subjunctive Past Perfect, and generally implies *denial of the past.*

[*Conditional.*]	[*Indicative.*]
I **should have been** so (if)	= I **was not.**
I **would have done** so (if)	= I **did not.**

Exercise : — *Paraphrase into the Indicative.*

If I had been conscious of the danger, I *should have been* alarmed. If he had been a common man, he *would have died.* I *should have been* punished, if I had been found out. If I had known your address, I *would have written* to you. Had it not been for your negligence, this calamity *would not have befallen* us. Had it not been for Frank's skill in skating, Harry *would have fallen* a prey to the wolves. If I had applied a day earlier, I *should have obtained* the position. If you had not told me so, I *would not have believed* it. If he had been there, I *should have met* him. If you had not jumped overboard, I *should have been drowned.* If we had not been delayed on the road, we *should have arrived* long ago. If you had been paying attention, you *would have heard* it. If I had known that you were here, I *would have invited* you.

Note : — The Conditional *should* and *would* followed by the Perfect Form, follow the rules for the use of *shall* and *will* : —

		(*a*)					(*b*)(*c*)		
I	**should have**		**been** so (if)		I	**would**	**have**	{ **done** so (if) / **given** it (if) }	
You	**would**	**have**	{ **been** so (if) / **done** so (if) }		You	**should have**		**had**	it (if)
He	**would**	**have**	{ **been** so (if) / **done** so (if) }		He	**should have**		**had**	it (if)
		(*a*)(*b*)					(*c*)		

(*a*....*a*) **Conditional Past** : —

I should have failed, if I had not worked hard.
You would have succeeded, if you had worked harder.
He would have passed, if he had not been sick.

(*b*....*b*) **Subject's Conditional Past Determination** : —

I would have replied, if I had not been interrupted.
Would you have done so, if you could have done so?
He would have stopped me, but I thrust him aside.

(*c*....*c*) **Speaker's Conditional Past Determination** : —

I would have given it you, if you had asked for it.
You should have had the position, if you had wanted it.
He should have had the position, if he had been here.

Exercise — *Put in the Conditional Form.*

(*α*) I do not tell you, because I do not know. I did not tell you, because I did not know. I do not see it, so I do not believe it. I did not see it, so I did not believe it. I believe it, since you say so. I believed it, since you said so. Japan is not so pleasant a country as it might be, owing to the frequency of earthquakes. Tokyo is not so good a place to live in as it might be, owing to the frequency of fires. I do not go abroad, because I want the means. He did not go abroad, because he had not the means.

(*β*) I will employ the man, because he is honest. I did not employ the other man, because he was too old. I do not write to him, because I do not know his address. I did not write to you, because I did not know your address. He will not take the money, because he is not greedy. He would not take the money I offered him, because he was not greedy. I will not tell him, because he does not ask me. I did not tell him, because he did not ask me. I do not help him, because he does not come to me. I did not help him, because he did not come to me.

(γ) I take notes of everything, because I have a poor memory. I take notes that I may not forget everything. I work hard, because I am not clever. Japan needs a powerful navy in consequence of the insular situation of the country. Aluminium is not used for building ships owing to its expensiveness. I do not get my own living, because I do not know how. It is a pity she stoops so, for she is otherwise a good figure. He is not a good student, because he is idle.

(δ) I was not punished, because I acknowledged my fault. He can not have been there, for I did not meet him. He was no common being, so he did not die. We have arrived late owing to some delay on the road. You did not hear it, because you were not paying attention. The fire did not spread, so there was no danger to my house. I did not know that you were here, so I did not invite you. I did not know who he was, so I did not look at him with attention. I was only a minute too late for the express train. Few people came owing to the badness of the weather.

Translation Exercise.

(1) 日本ニ地震ガ無カツタラ世界第一ノ國ダ (2) 私ガアナタノ樣ニ物ガ出來タラ此樣ニ勉强ハシナイ (3) 勉强シナカツタラ試驗ニ落第シマス (4) 僕チシテ君ノ位置ニアラシメバ僕ハソノ樣ナ事ハ爲ナイ (5) 僕ガ君ダツタラ世界漫遊トデモ出掛ケル (6) 若シ日本ガ島國デナカツタラ此樣ニ有力ノ海軍ハ要ランノダ (7) Aluminium ハ堅ク且ツ輕キ金ニテ若シ鐵ノ樣ニ豚價デアツタラ造船材ニ用ユルヲ得可シ (8) 其男ガアノ樣ニ年ヲ取ツテ居ナカツタラ使ツテ遣ルノダガ (9) 金ガアツタラ貸シテ上ゲル處ダガ (10) 私ハ記憶ガ悪イカラ筆記シナカツタラ皆忘レテ仕舞フ (11) 其男ガ謝ツタカラ赦シテ遣ツタ謝ラナカツタラ赦スノデハナカツタ (12) 父ガ生キテ居タラ宜カツタ父サイ生キテ居ツタナラ此樣ナ苦勞ハ無カツタニ (13) 暖ガアツタラ御一處スルノダガ (14) 金ガアツタラ買ヒ度イガ (15) 君ハ酒サイ止メタラ丈夫ニ成ルノダガ (16) 彼ガ尋子タラ云ハフト思フテ居ツタノダガ (17) 途中デ手間取ラナカツタラ疾ウニ到着スルノデアツタ (18) 若シ日清戰爭ガナカツタラ兩國ガ斯ノ如キ親密ナ關係ニ成ルノデハナカツタ (19) 私ハ行カヌノハ丁度君ハ (20) 僕侍デアツタ。若シ行ツタナラ死ヌ處デアツタ

ヨイ時ニ來タ。十分遲カツタナラ出テ仕舞フノデシタ (21) 私ハ五分早クStationニ行キ着ケバ急行列車ニ乘レルノデアツタ (22) アナタニ助ケラレナケレバ私ハ溺死スルノデアツタ (23) 御住所ヲ知ツテ居タラ手紙デモ上ゲルノデシタ (24) 私ハ退校チシナケリヤ宜カツタ。アノ時退校シナケリヤ最ウ疾ウニ卒業シタノダニ (25) アナタハ其人ニ會フタラ見覺エガアルデセウ (26) 私ハ學資サイアツタラ大學ヘ行クガ (27) 私ハ身體サヘ丈夫デアツタラ最ト勉强スルノダガ (28) 火事ガ廣ガツタナラ此家モ危ナカツタ (29) アナタガ此所ニ御出ノ丁チ知ツタラ御招ギ申スノデアツタ (30) 彼ト知ツタラ最ツト注意シテ見テ置クノダツタニ

CHAPTER VIII.

The Potential Mood.

The Potential Mood, which includes all the verbal forms containing the three modal auxiliaries — *may, can, must* — has four tense forms : —

I. — *Potential Present.*	III. — *Potential Present Perfect.*
May / Can / Must } be.	May / Can not / Must } have been.
II. — *Potential Past.*	IV. — *Potential Past Perfect.*
Might / Could / (Must) } be.	Might / Could / (Must) } have been.

(*a*) *How is it that the Potential Mood is so called?*
(*b*) *What are the two chief meanings of "may"?*
(*c*) *What are the two chief meanings of "can"?*
(*d*) *What are the two chief meanings of "must"?*

§ 1. Potential Present.

We have already seen —

(*a*) That *May*, *Can*, and *Must* have two chief meanings, Primary and Secondary;

(*b*) That these auxiliaries, in their Primary Use of *permission*, *ability*, and *necessity*, relate to some *action*;

(*c*) That the same auxiliaries, in their Secondary Use, denote *Inference* (*certainty* or *uncertainty*) regarding some *fact*.

Note: — We shall now see how these auxiliaries are used in other forms and combinations.

§ 2. Potential Past.

We have seen that the Preterit in English denotes either *Past Fact* or *Supposition*, and consequently the auxiliaries *Would* and *Should* represent three distinct moods: —

(*a*) *Indicative*: — { He hoped he *should* succeed. / He promised he *would* do his best.

(*b*) *Subjunctive*: — { If you *should* succeed,..... / If you *would* but try hard,.....

(*c*) *Conditional*: — { I *should* succeed, if..... / I *would* try, if.....

The same is true of *Might*, *Could*, and *Must* [Past]: —

(*a*)	**Fact**.....	**Indicative Mood.**
(*b*)	**Supposition**.....	**Subjunctive Mood.** / **Conditional Mood.**

I. **INDICATIVE "MIGHT" AND "COULD"**: — *Might* and *Could* may here be used in either the Primary or the Secondary Senses. *Must*, having no Preterit, has its wanting form supplied by "*had to*" in the Primary Sense of *Necessity*, but is used without any change in the Secondary Sense of *Logical Necessity* or *Certainty*: —

I. **Primary "Must"**: —

(*a*) *Necessity*: — { I *must* go to school to-day. / I *had to* go to school yesterday.

(*b*) *Insistence*: — { He said, "I *must* have my bill paid." / He said that he *must* have his bill paid.

(*c*) *Compulsion*: — { He said, "You *must* pay me at one." / He told me that I *must* pay him at once.

(*d*) *Prohibition*: — { He said, "You *must not* stir from the spot." / He told me that I *must not* stir from the spot.

II. **Secondary "Must"**: — { He said, "The report *must* be true." / He said that the report *must* be true.

Primary Sense.	*Secondary Sense.*
He said that I **might** go, but that I **must not** stay away long.	He said that the report **might** or **might not** be true.
But I **could not** go.	I thought it **could not** be true.
For I **had to** learn my lesson.	I thought it **must** be false.

II. **SUBJUNCTIVE "MIGHT" AND "COULD"**: — These auxiliaries are here used only in the Primary Sense. Therefore *must* has its wanting form supplied by *had to*.

The Subjunctive *Might*, *Could*, and *Had to*, always imply the contrary of the present: —

[*Subjunctive.*]		[*Indicative.*]
If I **might**	=	I **may not.**
If I **could**	=	I **can not.**
[If I **had to**	=	I **need not.**]

Exercise: — *Paraphrase into the Indicative.*

If I *might* give an opinion, I should say that it is the best book of the kind. I would do it, if I *could*. I would help you, if I *could*. I wish I *could* help you. I would not try, if I *could not* do it. If I *had to* do it, I would do it at once. If I *had not to* serve in the army, I would go into business.

III. **CONDITIONAL "MIGHT" AND "COULD"**: — *Might* and *Could* may here be used in either the Primary or the Secondary Sense. *Must* in the Primary Sense has its wanting form supplied by "*should* (*or would*) *have to*"; in the Secondary Sense, it remains unchanged.

I. Primary Uses.

[*Conditional.*]	[*Indicative.*]
I **might** (= *should be at liberty to*) do so (if)	= { I **may not**.....do so. I **may, but do not** do so
I **could** (= *should be able to*) do so (if)	= { I **can not**.....do so. I **can, but do not** do so.
(I **should have to** do so (if)	= I **need not** do so.)

Note : — The Conditional Potential Past is generally accompanied by the Subjunctive Past, and *Might* and *Could* here imply *some sort of denial of the present.*

Exercise : — *Paraphrase into the Indicative.*

You *might* go to the play, if you were older. I *might* have a bycicle, if I wanted. You *could* see it, if you would. I *could* do it, if I tried. I *could not* do it, even if I would. I *should have to* serve in the army, if I were not in a government school. I *should not have* to serve, if I were in a government school.

II. Secondary Uses.

[*Conditional.*]	[*Indicative.*]
It **might** (= *would perhaps*) be so (if).....	= It **is not** so.
It **must** (= *would certainly*) be so (if).....	= It **is not** so.
It **might not** (= *would perhaps not*) be so (if).....	= It is so.
It **could not** (= *would certainly not*) be so (if).....	= It is so.

Note : — The Conditional *Might, Could,* and *Must* are used in the Secondary Sense, in place of the Conditional *Should* or *Would,* with the additional notion of *doubt* or *certainty* : —

Might	= **should** *or* **would** (+ **perhaps**).
Might not	= **should** *or* **would** (+ **perhaps**) **not.**
Must	= **should** *or* **would** (+ **certainly**).
Could not	= **should** *or* **would** (+ **certainly**) **not.**

Exercise : — *Paraphrase into the Ordinary Conditional Form.*

I *might* succeed, if I tried hard enough. If I tried my hardest, I *must* succeed. You *might not* succeed, if you did not try hard. I *could not* succeed, even if I did my utmost. You *must* succeed, if you did your utmost. You *might* win the prize, if you tried. The ship, being built of iron, is very strong ; but

it *must* be stronger, if it were built of steel. The ship, though built of wood, is very strong ; it *could not* be stronger, if it were built of iron. One more or less *might* be of great consequence. One more or less *must* be of great consequence. One more or less *might* be of no consequence. One more or less *could* be of no consequence.

Exercise : — *Use the Potential Past.*

(α) He said, "I can not go because I must learn my lesson." I said, "I am sorry that I must refuse your request." He said, "The tree must be dead ; it must be cut down." I asked, "Must I take off my shoes? May I keep them on?" He said, "You may keep them on ; you need not take them off." I said to him, "You may keep the money ; you need not return it." He said to me, "You must keep the money ; you must not spend it."

(β) I said to myself, "How can he know my name?" I said to myself, "What can be the reason?" I thought, "It can not be true ; it must be some mistake." He said to me," You need not make yourself uneasy about him, for he must get well." I said, "There can be no doubt about it." I thought it possible that the report was true. He thought it possible that the report was true. My father thought it impossible that the report was true. My mother was certain of the truth of the report.

(γ) He permitted me to go wherever I pleased. I forbade him to stir from the spot. I thought it impossible that he was her husband, for he was old enough to be her father. I thought it impossible that you were aware of my being here. I thought it possible that you were ignorant of the fact. I was certain of your knowing the fact. I thought that there was surely some mistake. I thought that there was surely no harm in reading the letter. I am able to go abroad, but I do not want to.

(δ) I borrow money, because I can not help it. I do not help you, because I can not. You are quite able to teach, only you do not try. I have weak eyes, so I can not work hard. I need not serve in the army, because I am in a government school. One would perhaps be able to master English in three years, if one were only diligent. I am sorry I can not speak English well.

(ε) He can not live in comfort, because he is so extravagant. I can not pardon him, because I must fulfil justice. He must know English, for he is teaching it. If you are going to college, you must know either French or German. Perhaps you

do not succeed, because you do not work hard enough. I am sorry I can not oblige you. I can do it, but I do not try. I can go to college, but I have decided to go into business.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 出來ルヿナラ金ヲ貸シテ上ゲルノダ (2) 仕ヨウト思ヘバ出來ヌヿハナイ (3) 君ハ最ツト忍耐ガアツタラ何事モ成効スルダロウ (4) 私ハドチラモ遣ル氣ハ無イガ若シ遣ランケレバナラヌノデアツタラ佛蘭西語ヲ遣ル (5) 君ハ若シ大學ヘ行クノデナカツタラ何チラモ遣ラナイデ宜イノダ (6) 私ハ其評判ガ本當カモ知レヌト思フタ (7) 或者ハ本當ニ相違ナイト云フタ (8) 本當ナ筈ガナイト云フ者モアツタ (9) 父ハ何ナリト私ノ好キナ專門ヲ選ンデ宜シイト云フタ (10) 遣ツテ見レバ出來ルノダ (11) 英語ガ苦デナク話シテ見タイ (12) 勉メテ熟練スレバ一年掛レバ苦デナク話セル樣ニナレル (13) アノ人ハアノ樣ニ贅澤デナカツタラ最ツト能ク暮セルノダガ (14) アノ人ハアノ樣ニ高イ給料ヲ望マナカツタナラ地位ガ容易ニ得ラレルノダニ (15) 私ハ借リズニ濟ムナラ金ヲ借リハシナイ (16) 此金ヲ貸シタラ自分ニ借リナケレバナラヌ樣ニナル (17) 今度落第スレバ徵兵ニ出ナケレバナリマセヌカ (18) 落第シテモ未ダ出ルニ及バナイ (19) 平常最ツト勉强シテ居タナラ試驗ノ前ニナツテコンナニ勉强チスルヿハナイノダ (20) アナタハ御存知ニ違ナイト思ツタ (21) 洋行ナシヨウト思ヘバ出來ルノダガ (22) アナタハ遣ツテ見タナラ屹度出來ルノダニ (23) 伯父ガ學資ヲ出シテ呉レマスカラ大學ヘ行カウト思ヘバ行カレマス

§ 3. Potential Present Perfect.

The Perfect Form after *May*, *Can*, or *Must*, in the Potential Present Perfect, denotes either a Completed or a Past Action. Now a past action is an accomplished event which does not admit of the notion of *permission*, *ability*, or *necessity*. *May*, *Can*, and *Must*, when followed by the Perfect form, are therefore used only in the Secondary Sense of Inference. The event is in the past; the inference is in the present.

(*a*)	*Possibility* : —	**I may have done so.** / **I may not have done so.**
(*b*)	*Impossibility* : —	**Can I have done so?** / **I can not have done so.**
(*c*)	*Certainty* : —	**I must have done so.**

Note : — *Can*, in the form "*can have done*," being always in the secondary sense, is used only in questions and negative statements. It may, however, be used in the affirmative form in clauses preceded by an introductory clause of a negative or interrogative meaning : —

It is impossible that I *can have done* wrong.
Is it possible that I *can have done* wrong?
I wonder how I *can have done* wrong.
I can not comprehend how I *can have done* wrong.

EXERCISE : — *Use the Potential Present Perfect.*

(*α*) Perhaps I have seen you before, but I have no recollection. Perhaps I said something to that effect, but it is impossible that I used such an expression. If he left yesterday, I am sure he has arrived at Nagoya by this time ; but it is impossible that he has arrived in Kyôto yet.

(*β*) I can not find my purse ; I wonder if I have lost it. I saw you putting it in your pocket ; so it is evident that you lost it. I did not bring it with me, so it is impossible that I lost it. Perhaps I have lost it, or perhaps I did not bring it with me. Perhaps the man was privy to the secret.

(*γ*) I wonder who has done this. I wonder where he has gone. He is a long time coming ; I wonder if he has lost his way. He is never behind time ; I am sure he has lost his way. He knows the neighbourhood very well, so it is impossible that he has lost his way. Perhaps he has forgotten his promise to come.

(*δ*). The ground is wet ; it seems to have been raining here. I wish I had been there ; it was a fine sight, I dare say. I wonder if he has said such things of me. It is impossible that he has spoken ill of me. I wonder what has become of the man. It is impossible that he has fallen overboard.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 私ハ其人ニ會フタコトガアルカモ知レヌ。會フタニ違ナイ (2) 彼ハ今頃ハ到着シタニ違ナイ (3) イヤ未ダ着スル筈ハナイ (4) モウ着イテ居ルカモ知レヌ (5) 彼女ハ若イ時ハ美シカツタニ違ナイ (6) 彼ハ昨夜出掛タ筈ハナイ早ク寢タカラ (7) 此論

説ハ西洋人ガ書タイニ違ナイ (8) 決シテ日本人ノ書イタノデハナイ (9) 私モ行キタカツタ。嘸壯觀デシタロウ (10) 御兩親ハ嘸御悦ビデシタロウ (11) 彼ハソンナ事ヲ云フタカ知ラン (12) 彼ハソンナ事ヲ云フ筈ハナイ (13) アノ人ハ如何成ツタカ知ラン (14) 西洋ヘ行ク抔ト云ツテ居タガ本當ニ行ツタカモ知レヌ (15) 或ハ心ガ變ツタカモ知レヌ (16) (船ガ着キマシタカ)今頃ハ着イタカモ知レヌ (17) 未ダ着カヌカモ知レヌ (18) モウ着イテ居ルニ違ナイ (19) イヤ未ダ着ク筈ハナイ (20) 田中ガ少シモ見エナイガ何處ヘ行ツタカ知ラン (21) 誰ガコンナ事ヲ爲タノカ知ラン (22) 彼ガコンナ事ヲ爲タカ知ラン (23) 私ハ如何シテ彼ノ氣ニ障ツタカ知ラン (24) 如何モ御氣ニ障ル筈ハナイガ (25) 如何シテ御氣ニ障ツタカ私ニハ少シモ分ラナイ (26) 此着物ハ昨晩着タニ違ナイ着タ樣ナ跡ガアル (26) 彼ガ若シ此本ヲ書イタナラ餘程學者デアツタニ違ナイ (27) 何カ間違デアツタニ違ナイ (28) 小供ガ何處ヘ往ツタカ知ラン (29) 眞逆カ逃亡ハシマイガ (30) イヤ如何ウシテモ逃亡シタニ違ナイ (31) 私ノ處置ハ何處ガ惡イカ知ラン (32) 惡イ筈ハナイ (33) 惡カツタニ違ナイ

§ 4. Potential Past Perfect.

Might, *Could* (and *Must*) followed by the Perfect Form may, like the Potential Past, be used in either the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Conditional Mood.

I. INDICATIVE { might have been. could have been. must have been.

These forms are here used only in Indirect Speech, as the Past Tense of *may*, *can*, or *must have been;* and consequently *Might*, *Could*, and *Must* are here always in the Secondary Sense.

{ He said, "You *may* (*not*) *have done* wrong."
{ He said that I *might* (*not*) *have done* wrong.

{ I said, "How *can* I *have done* wrong?"
{ I wondered how I *could have done* wrong.

{ I thought "I *can not have done* wrong."
{ I thought I *could not have done* wrong.

{ He said, "You *must have done* wrong."
{ He said that I *must have done* wrong.

Note: — The form "*might* or *could have been*" is sometimes used in place of "*may* or *can have been*," in expressing a present inference regarding a past event. The Past form implies a greater degree of doubt: —

I met him last year — it *might have been* about the last of July.
Surely it was not you. *Could* it *have been* you?

II. SUBJUNCTIVE { might have done. could have done.

Might and *Could* are here used only in the Primary Sense; so that *Must* has its wanting form supplied by "*had to.*" These forms always imply the contrary of the past: —

[*Subjunctive.*]	[*Indicative.*]
If I **might have done** so.	= I **might not do** so.
If I **could have done** so.	= I **could not do** so.
(If I **had had to do** so.	= I **had not to do** so.)

EXERCISE: — *Paraphrase into the Indicative.*

He would have come, if he *might have done* so. He would have helped you, if he *could have done* so. If I *had had to go*, I would have gone at once. If I *had not had to* serve in the army, I would have gone abroad. I should have been happy, if I *could have been* of service to you. How proud that Spartan mother would have been, who *could have sent* her seven sons to join Leonidas to fight for king and country!

III. CONDITIONAL { might have been. could have been. must have been.

Might and *Could* are here used in either the Primary or the Secondary Sense. *Must*, in the Primary Sense, has its wanting form supplied by "*should* (or *would*) *have had to*"; in the Secondary Sense, *must* is used.

I. Primary Uses.

[*Conditional.*]		[*Indicative.*]
I might have done so (if).....	=	**I might not do** so. / **I might, but did not, do** so.
(I *should have been at liberty to do* so.)		
I could have done so (if).....	=	**I could not do** so. / **I could, but did not, do** so.
(I *should have been able to so* so.)		
[**I should have had to do** so (if).....	=	**I had not to do** so.)

Note : — These Conditional Forms are generally accompanied by a verb in the Subjunctive Past Perfect, and implies *some sort of denial of the present.*

Exercise : — *Paraphrase into the Indicative.*

You *might have picked* the whole orchard and welcome. I *could have entered* the school, if I had been here. I *could have entered* the school, if I had wanted to. If I had entered the school, I *should not have had to serve* in the army. If you had not come, I *should have had to send* for some one else.

II. Secondary Uses.

[*Conditional.*]	[*Indicative.*]
It might (=*would perhaps*) **have been** so (if).....	= **It was not.**
It must (=*would certainly*) **have been** so (if).....	= **It was not.**
It might not (=*would perhaps not*) **have been** so (if)	= **It was.**
It could not (=*would certainty not*) **have been** so (if)	= **It was.**

Note : — These forms take the place of the ordinary conditional forms [*should* or *would have been*] with the additional notion of *doubt* or *certainty*.

Exercise : — *Paraphrase into the Ordinary Conditional Form.*

Had it not been for your care, I *might have died.* But for your care, I *must have died.* But for your care, I *might not have recovered.* But for your care, I *could not have recovered.* If you had tried harder, you *might have succeeded.* If you had done your utmost, you *must have succeeded.* If you had tried harder, you *might not have failed.* If you had done your utmost, you *could not have failed.* If I had gone, I *might have been killed* — I *must have been killed* — I *might not have been* alive — I *could not have been* alive If you had not plunged overboard, I *might have been drowned* — I *must have been drowned* — I *might not have been saved* — I *could not have been saved.* If I had tried, I *might have succeeded.* If you had tried, you *might have succeeded.* If you had tried, you *might have won* the prize.

Exercise : — *Use the Potential Past Perfect* [*Indicative, Subjunctive,* or *Conditional*] *wherever possible.*

(α) He said that it was possible I had done wrong in opening the letter. I wondered how it was possible that I had done wrong. I thought it impossible that I had done wrong. He was sure that I had done wrong. I wondered what had become of the boy. I thought it impossible that he had run away. I should perphaps (certainly) have succeeded, if I had tried harder. You would perhaps (certainly) not have failed, if you had persevered.

(β) If I had seen him, I should have been able to recognize him. I could enter the Higher School last year, but I did not want to. If I had met you in the streets, I should perhaps (certainly) not have been able to recognize you. I did not come, because I could not. I went to the play, because I had nothing to do. If I had not received your treatment, I should perhaps (certainly) not have recovered so quickly.

(γ) If the doctor had come sooner, the man would perhaps (certainly) have been saved. I should perhaps (certainly) have been able to find the place, if I had known the exact address. I had to be examined, because I had not completed my middle school course. He had no son to help him, and had to work hard in his old age. I could not go alroad, because I had to serve in the army.

Translation Exercise.

(1) 番地サイ知ツテ居タラ家ガ分カルノデアツタ (2) 尋子タラ家ガ分カルノダツタニ (3) 警察デ尋子タラ分ルノデアツタロウ (4) 最ツト勉強シタラ及第ガ出來タノカモ知レン (5) 爲ナケレバナランノナラ爲ルノデアツタ (6) 丁度ニ君ガ來ナカツタラ誰カヲ呼ビニ遣ラナケレバナランノデアツタ (7) アナタニ助ケラレナケレバ私ハ屹度死ヌノデアツタ (8) 彼ハ來ルヿガ出來ナカツタニ違ナイ (9) 來ルヿガ出來タラ屹度來タノダ (10) 私ハアノ時洋行シヨウト思ヘバ出來タノダ (11) 何レ程勉強シテモ成効出來ナカツタニ違ナイ (12) 君ハ若シ行ツタナラ殺サレタツタカモ知レナイ (13) 醫者ガ最ツト早ク來タナラ其人ハ助カツタノカモ知レン (14) 御治療ヲ受ケナカツタナラ此樣ニ早ク癒ルノデハアリマセンデシタロウ (15) アナタガ最ツト注意サイシタナラ此樣ナ災難ハ無カツタロウ (16) 私ハ勉強シタラ學者ニ成レルノデアツタニ (17) 私ハ少シ辛抱スレバ

金持ニ成レルノダツタニ (18) 彼ハ如何シテ此様ナ事ヲ爲タカ知ラント思フタ (19) 彼ハ其様ナ事ヲ爲ル筈ハナイト思フタ (20) 何カノ間違ヒダロウト思フタ (21) 私ハ何カ外ノ職業ヲ選ンダナラ最ツト金ガ取レタカモ知レン (22) 中學校ヲ卒業シタラ試驗ヲ受ケルコトハナカツタノダ (23) アノ人ハ善イ息子デモアツタラアノ年デ働ラクコトハナイノダニ (24) boat ヲ卸シタラ其男ハ助カツタロウ(助カツタニ違ナイ) (25) 私ハ誰ガ此様ナ事ヲ爲タカ知ラント思フテ怪ンデ居ツタ (26) 私ノ父ガ金ヲ持ツテ居ツタニ違ナイガ其ヲ如何シタカ知ラン (27) アノ人ハ醉ツテ居ルコトガアルカラアノ時モ醉ツテ居ツタカモ知レン (28) 彼様ナ女ガ此様ナ男ノ妻ニ成ルノハ不思議ダト思ソタ

CHAPTER IX.

Conditional Sentences.

A Conditional Sentence consists of two parts : —

I. The Conditioning Clause or **Antecedent** ;
II. The Conditioned Clause or **Consequent.**

§ 1. Sequence of Tenses in Conditional Sentences.

There are three classes of conditional sentences : —

I. If the Condition denotes a *fact*, the Verbs in the Antecedent and the Consequent are both in the *Indicative Mood* : —
   If he *is* old, he *is* still strong and active.
   If he *was* guilty, he *was* still to be pitied.

II. If the Condition denotes a *supposition*, the Verb in the Conditional Clause is in the *Subjunctive Past or Past Perfect*, and the Verb in the Consequent is in the *Conditional Form* :—
   If he *were* guilty, he *would not speak* so boldly.
   If he *had been* guilty, he *would not have spoken* so boldly.

III. If the Condition denotes an *uncertainty*, the Verb in the Antecedent is in the *Subjunctive Present or Future*, and the Verb in the Consequent is generally in the *Indicative Form* : —
   If he *be found* guilty, he *will be punished.*
   If he *should be found* guilty, he *will* (or *would*) *be punished.*

Rules of Sequence.

RULE I : — *The* ***Subjunctive Present*** *or* ***Present Perfect*** *in the Antecedent is followed by the* ***Indicative Mood*** *in the Consequent.*

If he *confess* his fault, I *will pardon* him.
If he *have done* so, he *will be* sure to repent it.

RULE II : — *The* ***Subjunctive Past*** *or* ***Past Perfect*** *in the Antecedent is followed by the* ***Conditional Form,*** *either Simple or Perfect.*

Supposition relating to the Present.

[*Antecedent.*]	[*Consequent.*]
If I **did** so If I **would* do** so If I **might* do** so If I **could* do** so	I **should be....** I **would be....** I **might† be....** I **could† be....** I **must† be....**

Supposition relating to the Past.

[*Antecedent.*]	[*Consequent.*]
If I **had done** so If I **would* have done** so If I **might* have done** so If I **could* have done** so	I **should have been....** I **would have been ...** I **might† have been....** I **could† have been....** I **must† have been....**

(*) *In what sense are "would," "might," and "could" used in the Antecedent ?*

(†) *In what sense are "might," "could," and "must" used in the Consequent ?*

Note : — The *Subjunctive Past* may sometimes be followed by the *Perfect Conditional Form*, and the *Subjunctive Past Perfect* by the *Simple Conditional Form.* Paraphrase the following into the Indicative : —

If he *were* a common man, he *would have died* long ago.
If the locomotive *had not been* invented, we *should be* travelling in coaches now.

RULE III: — *The Subjunctive Future or Future Perfect in the Antecedent may be followed by either the Indicative or Conditional Form in the Consequent.*

If I *should fail* this time, I *will* (or *would*) *try* again next year.

If he *should not have arrived* yet, he *will* (or *would*) *be* sure to arrive to-morrow.

Sequence of Tenses in Conditional Sentences.

[*Antecedent.*]	[*Consequent.*]
Subjunctive Present / **Subjunctive Present Perfect**	**Indicative.**
Subjunctive Past	**Simple** (*or* **Perfect**) **Conditional Form.**
Subjunctive Past Perfect	**Perfect** (*or* **Simple**) **Conditional Form.**
Subjunctive Future (*should*)	**Indicative** *or* **Conditional.**
Subjunctive Future (*would*)	**Conditional.**
Subjunctive Future (*were to*)	**Conditional.**
Subj. Fut. Perf. (*should have*)	**Indicative** *or* **Conditional.**
Subj. Fut. Perf. (*would have*)	**Perfect Conditional Form.**

EXERCISE : — *Put in the Conditional Form.*

(α) He is not likely to succeed, because he is not diligent. He did not succeed, for he was not diligent. He may not succeed, for he will not try hard. He would not try hard, so he failed. I have no right to give an opinion, so I will not say that it is the best work of the kind. I borrow money, because I can not help it. I borrowed money, because I could not help it. I do not help you, because I can not. I did not help you, because I could not.

(β) I can go abroad, but I do not want to. I could go abroad, but I did not want to. I do not earn my own living, because there is no need for me to do so. I did not earn my own living, because it was not necessary for me to do so. He must work hard, for he has a large family to provide for. He had to work hard, for he had to support a large family. He has no perseverance, so he never succeeds in anything. She had perseverance, so she succeeded in everything she undertook.

(γ) I have no one to help me, so I must work for my living. He is no common man, so he did not die. The man was not

saved, because the doctor arrived too late. The man will die, for the doctor has come too late. He can not be here, for I have never met him. He can not have been here, for I never met him. He has succeeded, because he is no common being. He succeeded, because he was no common being.

(δ) I owe my success to your aid. My success was all owing to your aid. You do not find any difficulty in learning, for you have a good teacher. I experienced great difficulty in learning, for I did not have a good teacher. Few people have come, because the weather is bad. Few people came, because the weather was bad. You must not go to the play, because you are too young. You can not see, because you will not. I can not do it, so I do not try. You can do it, but you do not try. He could do it, but he did not try.

(ε) You need not serve in the army, because you are in a government school. I had to serve in the army, because I was not in a government school. The ship, though built of wood, is as strong as if it were built of iron. It was not so strong as if it were built of steel. He can not live comfortably, because he is extravagant. He could not live in comfort, because of his extravagance. I can not pardon him, because I must fulfil justice. He must know English, because he is teaching it. I did not go, so I was not killed. I did not go, so I am alive. I did not win the prize, because I did not try.

§ 2. Forms of the Antecedent.

I. **The Antecedent :** — A Conditional Clause may be introduced —

(a) By any of the conjunctions — *if, even if, though, whether, unless, provided, suppose, in case, on condition that*, etc.

(b) By any of the Subjunctive Auxiliaries — *be, were, did, had, should*, etc.

Home is home, *be* it ever so homely.

Were it not for his idleness, he would be a good student.

Had it not been for your care, I could not have recovered so quickly.

Should any one call in my absence, say that I shall be back in a few days.

Did not hope prolong the duration of life, it would be short indeed.

Note : — There are two large classes of conditional sentences — those with conditions introduced by *if*, and those with conditions introduced by *even if*. In the latter class, the conditional mood does not imply a denial of the fact, but a confirmation of the fact in spite of the condition. Compare : —

(*a*) **I would do** it, **if I could.**
(= I *will not do* it, because I *can not.*)

(*b*) **I would not do** it, **(even) if I could.**
(= I *will not do* it, *nor can* I.)

EXERCISE : — *Explain the difference in meaning by paraphrasing the verbs into the indicative form.*

1. I could do so, if I would.
   I could not do so, if I would.
2. I would work, if I were poor.
   I would work, even if I were rich.
3. He would succeed, if he worked harder.
   He would succeed, even if he did not work so hard.
4. He would not have succeeded, if he had not worked hard.
   He would not have succeeded, even if he had worked hard.
5. I would help him, if I could.
   I would not help him, even if I could.
6. I would not have believed it, if you had not told me.
   I would not have believed it, even if you had told me.
7. I would go abroad, if I were rich.
   I would not go abroad, even if I were rich.

II. **Contraction of the Antecedent** : — A Conditional Clause may be contracted into —

(*a*) **An Infinitive** : —
If would be wrong (*if I were*) *to steal.*
(*If one were*) *to hear him speak English*, one would take him for a foreigner.

(*b*) **A Phrase** : —
With (= If I had) *your assistance*, I should certainly succeed.
Without (= If there were no) *water*, every living thing would die.
But for (= Were it not for) *your aid*, I should have failed.
But that (= But for the fact that) he prevented me, I should have replied.

(*c*) **A Conjunction** (*or, else, otherwise*) : —
We were delayed on the road, *or else* we should have arrived sooner.
I knew you were coming, *otherwise* I should have gone out.

(*d*) **A Single Word** : —
A *just* judge would have pardoned the man.
(= *If he had been a just judge*, he would have ....)
A *Japanese* would not do such a thing.
(= *If it were a Japanese*, he would not do ....)

EXERCISE : — *Contract the Conditions into Phrases, Infinitives, or Single Words.*

(*α*) What would you do *if you were in my place*. *If you had not aided me*, I should have failed. *Had it not been for your care*, I should have died. *If he had not interfered*, I might have obtained the position. *If you had not kindly interceded for me*, I should have been punished. My list would be incomplete, *if it did not include your name. If your name were added to it*, the list would be complete. *If you would patronize the society*, it would be sure to flourish.

(*β*) *If you would not patronize it*, it would never flourish. I would have replied, *if he had not interrupted me*. It would be difficult *if one tried to find a place better suited for the purpose*. I should consider it an honour *if I were connected with your school*. I should be happy *if I could be of service* to you. *I should be sorry, if I were to stand in your way*. I should be glad, *if I were relieved of this trouble*. It would be madness, *if one were to attempt such a thing*.

(*γ*) I think it would be uncivil *if I were to refuse*. *If I were to grudge him due praise*, it would be unjust. *If one were to die such a death*, it would be glorious. It would have been better, *if he had acknowledged his fault at once*. *If we had been shut up in the dark*, it would have been miserable. *If he were a wise man*, he would not do such a thing. *If he had been a lenient prince*, he would have pardoned the insurgents that surrendered.

(*δ*) *If the air consisted of pure oxygen*, it would be too active for us to live in. *If I had interfered*, it would have done more harm than good. He can not have been stopping here ; *if he had been stopping here*, I should have met him. The weather was bad ; *if it had been fine*, more people would have come. He must be diligent ; *if he were not diligent*, he would not make such progress. *If he had been a brave man*, he would have faced the danger. *If you had been present*, no such disaster would have happened.

III. **Suppression of the Antecedent** : — When a verb in the conditional form (*should, would, could, might, must*) is used unaccompanied by any conditional clause or phrase, the condition is understood as being easily supplied from the meaning of the context : —

You did better than I *could have done.*
The picture *would have done credit* to a professional.

(*a*) **IDIOMS WITH IMPLIED CONDITION** : —

(*α*) ***Would you (please)? Could you? Might I?*** — The Conditional Forms are considered more polite in making requests than the simple *Will you? Can you?* or *May I?* as implying some such condition as "*If I were to ask you*" —

Would you kindly show me the way?
Could you come and show me the way?
Might I ask you to show me the way?

(*β*) ***I should like, you would like, he would like:*** — The conditional form of the verb *like* is equivalent to the verb *wish*, but the former has a more diffident air about it than the latter : —

I *should like* to go. (Implied : — *If I might.*)
Will you take a glass of wine? — I *should like* tea better. (Implied : — *If I had some.*)
I am sorry I did not hear the lecture ; I *should like* to have heard it.

Which is correct : — { "*Should you like?*" / "*Would you like?*"

(*γ*) ***I should think, one would think, it would seem:*** — The conditional form of verbs of judgement [*think, take, seem, appear, etc.*] denotes *uncertainty* or *likeliness*, as implying some such condition as "*if one were to think about it*" : —

He must be some forty years old, *I should think.*
He is a scholar, isn't he? — So *it would seem.*
He says and does such foolish things, *one would think* he was a simpleton.
He speaks English so well that *one would take* him for a foreigner.

(*δ*) ***I should have thought, one would have thought:*** — The perfect conditional form of verbs of judgement or expectation [*think, take, expect,* etc.] denotes surprise at something unexpected, with the implied condition "*if one had thought about it*" : —

Has he accepted the proposal? *I should have thought* he would never do such a thing.
Has he not resigned? Why, *one would have expected* him to resign after such a failure.
You are very tall for your age. *I should have taken* you for more than fifteen.
How foolish of him to do such a thing! *Who would have thought it?*

(*b*) **IDIOMS WITH CONDITIONAL "WOULD"** : — The perfect conditional form with *would* is frequently used with implied condition to denote *unsuccessful attempt* : —

{ I ***would have replied.*** (Implied : — *If I could have done so.*) (= I *was going to reply*, but *could not.*)

{ He ***would have stopped*** me. (Implied : — *If he could have done so.*) (= He *tried to stop* me, but *could not*)

(*c*) **IDIOMS WITH CONDITIONAL "MIGHT"** : — The Conditional *Might* has the following idiomatic uses : —

(*α*) ***Might*** (= *may possibly*) is used to denote a greater degree of doubt than *may*. Compare : —

{ It *may* be so ; it is very likely.
{ It *might* be so ; but it is very unlikely.

(*β*) ***Might as well....as*** is used in the comparison of impossibilities : —

You *might as well* throw a stone at the sun *as* try to injure such a man.

(*γ*) ***Might*** (= *could perhaps*) is the usual expression of *regret* or *reproach* : —

I *might have been* a rich man.
You *might* easily help me, might you not?
He *might* at least *have come* to say good bye.

(*δ*) ***Might*** (= *should, would,* or *could perhaps*) ***have been*** is frequently used to denote *likeliness* : —

A pin *might have been heard* to drop, the silence was so profound.
The man failed to keep his promise, as *might have been* expected from his general character.

(*d*) **IDIOMS WITH CONDITIONAL "COULD"** : — Past Ability is denoted by the Perfect Conditional Form, when non-performance is implied. Compare : —

{ I *could hear* his voice. (= I *heard* his voice.)
{ I *could have called* to him. (= I *did not call* to him.)

{ I *could not come* yesterday morning.
{ I *could have come* in the evening.

EXERCISE : — *Supply conditions.*

(*α*) *Would* you kindly get me a glass of water? *Could* you take charge of my school in my absence? *Might* I trouble you for some money? The style *might* be improved, *I should think.* One *would have expected* him to decline such a proposal. I *should have taken* him for a Japanese, he spoke Japanese so fluently. Has he really done so? Who *would have thought* it? There is nothing he *would not do* for me. You have done better than I *could have done.*

(*β*) I *would have replied,* but he interrupted me. There were so many that one or two *would not have been missed.* A pin *might have been heard* to drop. He submitted to his fate with a magnanimity which *would have done credit* to Socrates. I *could have come* yesterday. You *might* as well reason with the wolf as try to persuade that man. No being less than an angel *could have given* satisfaction. You *might have spared* yourself the trouble. I know how often I have omitted doing good, when I *might have done so.* There is nothing a Japanese *would not do* for his country.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 私デ御用ニ立ツ事ナラ善イガ (2) 御邪魔チシテハ済マナイカラ (3) 如何シヨウ虚言チ云フテハ悪イシ (4) アノ人ハアノ缺點サイナケレバ善イ教師ダガ (5) アナタニ助ケラレナカッタラ私ハ溺死スルノデアッタ (6) 私ナラ其様ナ事ハ爲ナイ子 (7) アレハ利巧ナ人間ノ爲ル事デハナイ (8) アナタサイ賛成シテ下サレバ屹度成効シマス (9) 私ガ會員ニ成レルナラ榮譽ト思ヒマス (10) 其レハ云ハズニ置ク方ガ宜カッタロウ (11) 彼ハ病氣ダッタニ違イナイ左様デナケレバ屹度來タノダ (12) 騒レタ役人ナラ是位ノ犯罪ハ默許スルノダ (13) 君ノ爲メナラ如何ナル事チモ厭ハヌ (14) 失禮ナガラ御國ハ何方デスカ (15) 誠ニ申シ兼子マシタガ一寸此荷物チ御預リ下サイマセンカ (16) 私チ留メヨウトシタ男チ押シ除ケテ家ニ這入ッタ (17) 此機ニ澤山アルカラーツ二ツ位無クナッテモ分ラナイ

(18) 此書ハ商賈人ガ書イタト云ッテモ駄カシクハナイ (19) アナタハ金チ貸シテ呉レテモ宜カリソウナモノダ (20) 彼ハ何トモ云ハズニ行クノハ酷イ暇乞位ニ來テモ宜カリソウナモノダ (21) アノ頃ハ私ハ金ガ澤山這入ッタカラ容易ニ金持ニ成レタンダ (22) 其人ニ會ハナイデ殘念ナ事チシタ會ヒタカッタ (23) アノ人ハ變ナ事バッカリ云フカラーヶ寸ト人ガ馬鹿カト思フ (24) アノ人ハ英語チ流暢ニ話ス故西洋人カト思フ (25) 一ッ二ツノ差違ハ何ノ事モナイ (26) アノ人ハ年齢ニハ若イ一寸ト三十前後ニ見エル (27) アナタハ私ニモ書ケナイ程能ク書イタ (28) 私ハ昨年學校ニ這入レタノデス (29) 其ンナ事チ學ブノハ宇書チ讀記スルノモ同然ダ

CHAPTER X.

Uses of "Should" and "Would."

§ 1. Ordinary Uses of "Should" and "Would."

Should and *Would*, being the preterits of *shall* and *will*, generally follow the rules of the latter. We have seen that the Preterit has two uses in English : —

I. Primary Use, to denote a *Past Fact;*
II. Secondary Use, to denote a *Supposition.*

I. **PRIMARY USES** : — *Should* and *Would* in their primary use denote Simple Futurity or Past Determination in Indirect Speech : —

He said he *should need* the money.
He said he *would lend* me the money.

Here *Should* and *Would* denote a futurity viewed from the past, and form the Past Tense of the Indicative Future. We have seen that *Should* and *Would* in Indirect Speech follow all the rules of *Shall* and *Will* in Indirect Speech.

Is the use of the Indicative "Should" and "Would" confined to Indirect Speech, properly so called?

II. **SECONDARY USES**: — *Should* and *Would* in their Secondary Uses denote —

(*a*) *Contingent Futurity* or *Hypothetical Determination* in Conditional Clauses: —

I could do it, if I *would*.
If I *should* succeed, I should be very glad.
If you *would* grant my request, I should esteem it a great favour.

Here *Should* and *Would* are in the Subjunctive Mood, and are generally called the Subjunctive Future. We have seen that the Subjunctive *Should* and *Would* follow the rules for *Shall* and *Will* in Conditional Clauses.

(*a*) *Why is "Should" used as the Snbjunctive Future Auxiliary for All Persons?*
(*b*) *Why does the Subjunctive "Would" denote Determination with All Persons?*
(*c*) *Is the Use of the Subjunctive "Should" and "Would" confined to Conditional Clauses, properly so called?*

(*b*) *Conditional Futurity or Determination*, a futurity or determination which may be doubtful or hypothetical, according as the condition on which it depends expresses a doubt or a supposition: —

If I were to swallow this poison, I *should* die instantly.
If my brother should arrive to-day, I *would* start to-morrow.

Here *Should* and *Would* are in the Conditional Mood, and regularly follow the rules for *shall* and *will*.

THREE USES OF "SHOULD" AND "WOULD": — These auxiliaries have thus three distinct uses: —

I. **Indicative "Should" and "Would,"** generally occurring in Indirect Speech, as the Past Tense of the Indicative *Shall* and *Will*;

II. **Subjunctive "Should" and "Would,"** generally occurring in Conditional Clauses implying *doubt* or *uncertainty*;

III. **Conditional "Should" and "Would,"** generally occurring in Conditional Sentences limited by hypothetical conditions.

Note 1: — *Should* or *Would* followed by the Perfect Form has likewise three uses: —

I. **Indicative**: — { He said he *should have left* by that time. / I thought he *would have left* by that time.
II. **Subjunctive**: — { If he *should have failed*,..... / If he *would have tried* harder,.....
III. **Conditional**: — { I *should have succeeded*, if..... / I *would have tried*, if.....

Note 2: — All other uses of *Should* and *Would* treated of below are derived from, and traceable to, these three uses.

---

§ 2. Presentive Uses of "Should."

(*a*) Children **should** obey their parents.

Should is used presentively to denote *Duty* or *Obligation* derived from the Ordaining Power. Here *Should* may be regarded as the Past Tense of *Shall* of Commandment. Compare: —

Commandment: —.....Thou **shalt** not steal.
Duty: — (It was ordained that) We **should** not steal.

Hence *should* comes to be used in general statements in the sense of *rightness* or *propriety*: —

Brothers *should* love each other.
We *should* always prefer duty to pleasure.
One *should* always be prepared for misfortune.
That is quite proper and *as it should be*.

(*b*) You **should have asked** your father.

Should of duty, when followed by the Perfect Form, implies Denial of the Past, and signifies *blame for omission* (*blame for commission* in the negative): —

You **should**.....**have done** it.= You *did wrong in not doing* it.
You **should not have done** it.= You *did wrong in*.....*doing* it.

Why did you not ask your father? You *should have consulted* him before taking the step.
You *should not have deceived* him. It was very wrong of you to do so.
Did you not go to see him? You *should have gone*.

(*c*) He **should have arrived** by this time.

The Presentive *Should*, besides its Primary Sense of Duty or Obligation to do some *Action*, has a Secondary Use to denote Natural Inference with regard to *Facts* or *Events*. Compare : —

{ *Primary :* — He is never to be found where he *should* be.
{ *Secondary :* — If he started early, he *should* be here now.

Should of Natural Inference, when followed by the Perfect Form, does not necessarily imply Denial of the Past : —

If he started early, he *should have arrived* by this.

(*d*) { **Why should I** fear?
{ **There is no reason why I should** fear.

Should, used in connection with the Interrogative *Why*, comes to signify *reason* or *necessity* : —

Do you not think we shall succeed? *Why not. I see no reason why we shouldn't.*
Why do you dislike him? I can not comprehend *why you should* dislike him so.
Why may I not ride in a carriage? *I see no reason why I shouldn't.*

(*e*) **It is** not good that man **should** be alone.

Should is used in Impersonal Constructions, after such introductory clauses as *it is good, it is well, it is right* (*wrong*), *it is fit* (*unfit*), *it is proper* (*not proper*), *it is natural, it is important* (*necessary*), *it is time* (*high time*), etc. Here the meaning of *should* is extended to *fitness, propriety, expediency*, etc. Compare : —

{ One *should* speak well of the absent.
{ *It is right* that one *should* speak well of the absent.

{ You *should* know this.
{ *It is well* that you *should* know this.

{ Children *should not* know any wickedness.
{ *It is not good* that children *should* know any wickedness.

The Impersonal Construction with *Should* is used to emphasize the meaning of a Modal Auxiliary : —

{ I *must* have something to do.
{ *It is absolutely necessary* that I *should* have something ....

{ You *ought* to pay what you owe.
{ *It is proper* that you *should* pay what you owe.

{ He is so industrious, so he *ought* to succeed.
{ *It is quite natural* (*no wonder*) that he *should* succeed.

Note 1 : — The only exceptions are the use of *may* and *can* after the adjectives *possible* and *impossible* : —

{ The report *may* be false.
{ *It is possible* that the report *may* be false.

{ The report *can not* be true.
{ *It is impossible* that it *can* be true.

Note 2 : — The Impersonal Construction with *should* may be contracted into an Objective and Infinitive : —

{ It is better *that you should do* it.
{ It is better *for you ..... to do* it.

{ It is time *that we should do* it.
{ It is time *for us .....to do* it.

EXERCISE : — *Recast into the Impersonal Form.*

One *should not* speak ill of the absent. There *should* be no difference among the members of a family. He *must* die. Young folks *ought* to seek one another. The brave *should* love one another. You *ought* to ask your father about it. He has been studying English for over ten years, so he *ought* to speak it well. He is an Englishman, so he *ought* to know English. *Can* this report be true? He *can not* have done such a thing. I thought he *might* become a formidable rival.

(*f*) Do you think so? **It is strange** that you **should** think so.

After expressions of *surprise* or *regret, should* is used to emphasize the notion of surprise or regret at what is contrary to our expectation. The Reality [*what is*] is contrary to the Expectation [*what should be*].

Do you not know it? *It is strange* that you *should* not know it.
Have they pardoned him? *I am surprised* that they *should* have pardoned him.
I am sorry that any difference *should* arise between your captain and yourself.—*Southey.*

The expression of *surprise* or *regret* is sometimes understood before *should* in exclamations : —

That a brother *should* be so perfideous.—*Shakespeare.*
'Mongst all foes that a friend *should* be the worst.—*Shak.*

In Interrogation, the notion of *surprise* passes into that of *perplexity* : —

Who are you that you *should* speak thus to me?
What good *should* it do? [Implied : — *I wonder.*]
Where *should* this music be?—*Shakespeare.*

(*g*) **Who should** come in at that moment **but** the very man we were talking of?

Should in this idiomatic construction expects surprise on the part of the part of the hearer : —

I was going in quest of the man, when, on turning a corner, *whom should* I light upon *but* the very man? (= Whom *should you suppose* I lighted upon *but*.....?)

§ 3. Presentive Uses of "Would."

(*a*) What **would** you have me do?

The Conditional *would*, as a softened form of *will*, is used presentively in the sense of *wish* or *desire*. Compare : —

{ What *will* you have me do?
{ What *would* you have me do?

This use of *Would* is to be traced to two sources : —

(*α*) **Subjunctive "Would"** (= *wish*) : —

If you *would* be happy, be virtuous.
He who *would* search for pearls, must dive deep.
If we *would* study with profit the history of our ancestors, we must never forget that the country of which we read was a different country from that in which we live.—*Macaulay*

(*β*) **Conditional "Would"** (= *wish*) : —

I *would* not have people know this.
Retire, excepting only Elgitha; I *would* speak with this holy pilgrim.—*Scott.*
It was my happiness to own her once. I *would* forget her now —*Sheridan Knowles.*

(*b*) I **would rather** die than live in dishonour.

The combination of the Conditional *would* and *rather* [Older Form: — *will rather*] denotes preference : —

{ I *would rather* die than live in dishonour.
{ (= I perfer death to dishonour.)

(*c*) I **would I were** young again.

The Conditional *would*, when used as an independent verb followed by the Subjunctive Past, to introduce an optative sentence, is equivalent to the verb *wish* followed by the Subjunctive Past. The Subject *I* is usually understood :—

Would that it were so!
Would to Heaven I had never see him!
Would to God we had died in the land of Egypt!

Exercise (*a*) : — *Explain the uses of "Should" and "Would."*

(*α*) My father originally intended that I *should* have no other education than such as might qualify me for commerce.—*Johnson.* I was met by one of the overseers who *would have stopped* me; but I beat his brains out with his own musket, and thus gained the woods.— *Marryat.* Be not righteous overmuch; neither make thyself over-wise; why *shouldst* thou die before thy time?—*Bible.* It is time I *should* inform thee further. — *Shakespeare*

(*β*) When I see the lambs chasing one another, I fancy that I *should* be happy if I had something to pursue. — *Johnson.* Better that nine guilty men *should* escape than that one innocent man *should* suffer. Rasselas was desirous to go, but neither his sister nor Imlac *would* consent. — *Johnson.* If I were emperor, not the meanest of my subjects *should* be oppressed with impunity. They considered it advisable that she *should* set up some business by which she might gain a respectable livelihood.—*Marryat.*

(*γ*) If I had the choice of life, I *should* be able to fill every day with pleasure. I *would* injure no man, and *should* provoke no resentment. I *would* relieve every distress, and *should* enjoy the benedictions of gratitude. I *would* choose my friends among the wise, and my wife among the virtuous, and therefore *should* be in no danger from treachery or unkindness. My children *should*, by my care, be learned and pious, and *would* repay to my old age what their childhood had received.

—*Johnson.*

(*δ*) Oh that men *should* put an enemy into their months to steal away their brains! It is the misfortune of your life that you *should* never have been acquainted with the language of truth, until you heard it in the complaints of your people.

What I *would* not do for kindness, I *would* not do for money. A concussion that *should* shatter the pyramid, *would* threaten the dissolution of the continent. O that he *would* succeed! O that he *should* fail after such labours!

(*ε*) We have always thought it strange that while the history of the Spanish Empire in America is familiarly known to all the nations of Europe, the great actions of our own countrymen in the east, *should*, even among ourselves, excite but little interest. — *Macaulay*.

(*ζ*) We know that death is always near, and it *should* therefore always be expected.—*Johnson*. He gave a signal that the evening meal *should* be placed upon the board.—*Scott*. The Templar *would* have made an angry reply, but was interrupted by the Prior. There can be no reason why the spectres *should* haunt the Pyramid more than any other places.—*Johnson*. At certain intervals my ambition *would* revive. — *Smollet*. You *should* not get possession of my money, if I had my arms free.—*Scott*. Whom *should* I next see enter the room but my dear Miss Arabella Wilmot? — *Goldsmith*. Oh that it *would* be so! Alas! that it *should* be so!—*Scott*. The Jew *would* hear the merchant's reproaches with seeming patience. — *Lamb*.

(*η*) The squire *would* sometimes fall asleep in the most pathetic part of my sermon.—*Goldsmith*. One of the merchants proposed that it *should* be the boy's camel that *should* be killed. The boy said to himself that his favorite camel *should* not die. If people *would* accustom themselves to use their noses, they *would* never consent to live in the horrid air they do.

Wouldst thou view fair Melrose aright,
Go visit it by the pale moonlight.—*Scott*.

EXERCISE (*b*) : — *Supply "Should" or "Would" (or any other auxiliary necessary).*

(*α*) That man — do a great service to the state who — invent some remedy for this evil. You — need more money, if you — not be more careful. If you — need any money, I — lend it to you. If you — lend me the money, I — be much obliged. It is high time we — turn our attention to the matter. You — know better at your age. If you — fail this time, — you try again? If you — but try hand enough, you — be sure to succeed.

(*β*) I can not comprehend why they — wonder at my success. I wonder that such a man — have succeeded. I wonder if he — have succeeded. If my eyes — not get better, I — have to give up my studies. You — not get better, if you — not take better care of yourself. If you — not get better, you — have to give up your studies. I am surprised that you

— not be able to explain the reason. If you — not be more careful, I — have to dismiss you; you — have to leave my servise; you — leave my service at once. I regret that it — have come to this!

(*γ*) I promised him that he — have no reason to charge me with ingratitude. — you do it, if you could? — you be able to do it, if you tried? This I wonder at, that he — be in debt. If you — not drink so much, you — be stronger. What — you do, if you — fail? What — I say to my father, if I — fail? What — my father say, if I — fail?

(*δ*) He — often tell stories, and tell them well. But for his care, I — have died He says that but for your care, he — have died. There were so many that I — not have missed a few; one or two — not have been missed. I intended that you — have the position. I expected that you — accept my offer. One — have thought that he — decline the offer. How foolish of him! Who — have thought it? — you like to have the position? If you — have him recover, you must have him operated upon.

(*ε*) It — be madness to attempt it. I — not be surprised, if he — go mad. If we — fail, we — be utterly ruined. He says that the statement is true, and that he — prove it to any one who — deny it. If I — die, what — become of my children? If you — die, what — become of your school? A man who — such a thing, — be called a fool. They — rather die, than submit to such treatment. If they — rather die, they — better do so.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 語學研究ニハ理論ト熟練ト相並ンデ進ムヲ要ス (2) 親ニ物ヲ隠スモノデハナイ (3) 其人ヲ屋イ入レル前ニ如何イフ人物カ尋ヲナイノガ悪イ (4) 鳥ガ飛ブノニ何モ不思議ハナイ (5) アノ様ニ勉強シテ成効スルノハ當然ダ (6) 何モ人ノ喧嘩ヲ買フニモ及バヌ事ダ (7) 彼ノ成効シタノハ何モ不思議ハナイ (8) 君ニシテ此ノ誤リニ氣ガ付カナカツタノハ意外デアル (9) 彼ハ何故余ヲ害サントスルノカ分ラナイ (10) 假令ヘ死ンデモ致シマス (11) 歸リガ遲イノデ心配ヲサセテハイケナイト思フテ急イデ歸ツタ (12) 私ノ不在中ニ何事デモアツタナラ知ラシテ下サイ (13) 私ニ賴ミサイスレバ助ケテ遣ツタノニ (14) 何モ私ダツテ人ノ爲シタ事ガ出來ナイ道理ハナイ (15) 死ンダ人ノ事ヲ悪ク云フモノデハナイ (16) 借リタモノヲ返スノハ當然

ダ (17)アノ男ガ及第シタノハ意外ダ (18)コンナ事ニナロウトハ夢ニモ思ハナンダ (19)不正ナ利ヲ得ルナラバ寧ロ餓死シタ方ガ増ダ (20)彼ハ年甲斐モナイ事ヲスル

CHAPTER XI.

The Imperative Mood.

§ 1. Forms of the Imperative.

I. **Direct Imperative** : — The Imperative Mood has only one Tense — the Present; and the Ordinary Imperative is always in the Second Person, the Root-Form being used without any change for both Singular and Plural, usually with the Subject understood : —

Keep (*thou* or *you*) still.	*Emphatic Form* :— **Do keep** still.
Be (*thou* or you) quiet.	*Emphatic Form* :— **Do be** quiet.

The Ordinary Negative Imperative begins with *Do not* : —

Do not fear.	*Older Form* : — **Fear not.**
Do not be afraid.	*Older Form* : — **Be not** afraid.

Note : — The Imperative Mood occasionally has the subject expressed, and then generally take the auxiliary verb *do*, in the affirmative as well as in the negative : —

Do you impress the fact upon your mind.
Don't you ever forget it.

II. **Indirect Imperative** : — The Verb *Let*, followed by a Pronoun of the First or Third Person, forms a sort of Indirect Imperative : —

(*a*) **Let me** is used as an indirect command to oneself : —

Let me see,— what have I bought?

(*b*) **Let us** proposes, and is generally equivalent to *we will* :—

Let us go to the field.— Yes, and *we will* play ball.

(*c*) **Let him (her, it, them)** is used —

(*α*) As an Indirect Imperative to a Third Person through the Person Addressed. (*Let* = *bid*.)

Shall I show the man in? — *Let him wait* a while.

(*β*) As a Rhetorical Imperative with a Noun or Pronoun of the Third Person as Subject : —

Let ABC *be* a triangle.
Let the wind *blow!* *Let* the storm *rage!*
Let not the sun *go down* upon your wrath.— *Bible*.
God said, *Let there be* light, and there was light.—*Bible*.
I am not afraid of them. *Let them come* and *work* their will on me.— *Thackeray*.

(*γ*) When the Person Addressed is denoted by a word in the Third Person. Compare : —

Boys, *beware* of this habit.
Let the student beware of this habit.

If *you* want anything, *call* for it.
If *any one of you* wants anything, *let him call* for it.

If *you* see any boy looking off his book, *come and tell* me.
Let any one of you who sees another boy looking off his book, *come and tell* me.

(*δ*) In Indirect Speech, the Imperative with *Let* is used when the introductory expression is left out. Compare : —

"Mistress is not well," said the servant to the visitor, "*Wait* a moment, and you shall know whether she will see you or not."
The servant said to the visitor that her mistress was not well. *Let him wait* a moment, and he should know whether she would see him or not.

(*ε*) If an Active Verb in the Imperative is put in the Passive, the new subject not being of the Second Person, must be preceded by *let*, the verb thus becoming an Indirect Imperative : —

Hear me.	*Obey* him.
Let me *be heard.*	*Let* him *be obeyed.*

EXERCISE : — *Put the Verb in the Passive.*

Do it at once. *Do not forget* it. *Learn* these rules by heart. *Seek for* knowledge, not novelty. *Divide* this line into two equal parts. *Listen to* me when I speak. *Regard* these facts as of especial importance. Always *act upon* this rule. *Look to* the matter. *Attend to* your business first. *Shut* all the doors. *Consider* the matter well. *Don't give up* the attempt.

Note 1 : — The following is the Older Form of the Indirect Imperative without *Let* : —

Every soldier *kill* his prisoners.—*Shakespeare.*
Wend we to yonder fountain.—*Scott.*
Part we in amity.—*Cooper.*
Well, *sit we down,* and *let us hear* Barnardo speak of this.—*Shakespeare.*
God *bless* you ! = { *May* god *bless* you ! / *Let* god *bless* you ! }

Note 2 : — The Older Form of the Indirect Imperative without *let* is still in use in some archaic phrases : —

They say I have done wrong. *Be it so.*
It would be long to recount the story of my misfortunes. *Suffice it to say* that our family, already reduced to poverty, was, by the death of my father, left on the verge of destitution.
Far be it from me to say anything against my benefactor.
Flashman, *be it said,* was about seventeen years of age, and big and strong of his age —*Hughes.*
Be the matter what it may, do your very best.
Witness Heaven that I never meant any harm !

§ 2. Uses of the Imperative.

The Imperative has the following occasional uses : —

(*a*) **CONDITIONAL IMPERATIVE** : —

{ **Persevere, and** you will succeed. / (= *If you persevere,* you will succeed.) }
{ **Persevere, or** you will fail. / (= *If you do not persevere,* you will fail.) }

Exercise : — *Change the Condition into the Imperative.*

If you are diligent, you will succeed *If you are not diligent,* you will fail. *If you work hard,* you will be sure to succeed. *If you do not work hard,* you will lose your place. *If you give him an inch,* he will take an ell. *If you give him more than his fare,* he will clamour for still more. *If a man once fail,* all will tread upon him. *If he tries to do it himself,* he will find how difficult it is. *If you scratch a Russian,* you will find a Tartar. *If you are virtuous,* you will be happy. *If you take care of the pence,* the pounds will take care of themselves *If you do not stop,* you are a dead man. *If you resist the devil,* he will flee from you. *If you do not take the eggs,* there will soon be little birds in the nest.

(*b*) **CONCESSIVE IMPERATIVE** : —

{ **Come what may,** I am prepared for it. / (=*Whatever may happen,* I am prepared for it.) }
{ **Be the matter what it will,** / **Let the matter be what it will,** / (=*Whatever the matter may be.*) } do your very best.

Exercise : — *Change into the Emphatic Contruction with the Imperative.*

Wherever you may go, you can not succeed without perseverance. Home is home, *however homely it may be. Whoever he may be,* he can not be a good man. *However this may be,* it does not alter my decision. *Though he may be a good scholar,* he may not be a good teacher. The report, *whether it may be true or not,* does not concern us. *Whoever may say so,* I do not credit it. *However rich a man may be,* he ought not to be idle. *Whatever others may say,* I will do my duty. *Whichever you may choose,* you can not escape more or less difficulty. *Whatever one may do,* one can not succeed without diligence. *However clever a man may be,* yet, if he is not good, he may be a paltry fellow. *Whatever I might do,* I could not get the total right. *However hard you may work,* you will never be able to satisfy him. *However you may laugh,* it is a fact. *Whenever you may call,* you will always find him at his books. He was resolved that, *whatever it might cost,* his son should go to college. *However you may argue,* you will never convince him. *However you may* try, you will never succeed.

(*c*) **ABSOLUTE IMPERATIVE** ; — A few verbs in the Imperative are used *absolutely,* as Conjunctions, Prepositions, or Adverbs : —

(*α*) **Suppose** (= *if*) you had a sum of money — **say** (=*for instance*) a thousand dollars — what would you do with it ?
(*β*) All **except** or **save** (= *but*) one.

PART FOURTH:
INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, AND GERUNDS.

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. Two Infinite Verbal Forms.

I. **Verbal Form with "TO":**—This form has two uses:—

(1) **Noun-Infinitive**: — *To eat* is necessary to life.
(2) **Gerundial Infinitive**: — But we do not live *to eat*.

Note: — These two uses of the Modern Infinitive really represent two distinct Anglo-Saxon forms: —

(*a*) Infinitive: — *Etan* (= eating).
(*b*) Gerundial: — *To etanne* (= for eating).

II. **Verbal Form in "-ING"**: — This form likewise has two uses: —

(1) **Participle**: — He is *writing* a novel.
(2) **Gerund**: — He is very fond of *writing*.

Note: — These two uses of the form in *-ing* really represent two distinct Anglo-Saxon forms *-ende* and *-ung*, which have become merged in *-ing*: —

(*a*) Participle: — *Writende* (= one *writing*).
(*b*) Verbal Noun: — *Writung* (= the act of *writing*).

§ 2. Sense-Subject.

Infinitives, Participles, and Gerunds, being *verbs not finite*, have no Grammatical Subject: —

To see her is *to love* her. *Seeing* is *believing*.

When Infinitives, Participles, or Gerunds are used merely as nouns or adjectives, they are generally used impersonally — that is, without any word denoting the agent. But when an Infinitive, a Participle, or a Gerund forms part of a phrase contracted from a dependent clause, (which, by the way is one of the chief uses of these verbal forms), the original subject of the verb generally remains in a *sense-subjective relation* to the verb not finite.

I **Sense-Subject of Infinitive**: — This is always in the Objective Case, with or without the preposition *for* before it: —

Clause: — I thought *that he was* a good man.
Obj. & Inf.: — I thought *him to be* a good man.

Clause: — It is better *that you should go*.
Obj. & Inf.: — It is better *for you.....to go*.

II. **Sense-Subject of Participle**: — This is the noun to which it relates, and is generally in the Nominative Case: —

Verb and Subj.: — *He went* into the next room, and brought a box.
Part. and Nom.: — *Going* into the next room, *he* brought a box.

Clause: — *When the moon rose*, we put out the light.
Nom. and Part.: — *The moon rising*, we put out the light.

III. **Sense-Subject of Gerund**: — This is, or ought to be, in the Possessive Case. Pronouns before Gerunds are always in the Possessive Form; but Nouns usually omit the Possessive Inflection: —

Clause: — I was not aware *that the man was* so rich.
Poss. & Ger: — I was not aware of *the man('s) being* so rich.
I was not aware of *his being* so rich.

Clause: — I am glad *that the examination is* over.
Poss. & Ger.: — I am glad of *the examination being* over.
I am glad of *its being* over.

EXERCISE: — *Point out the Sense-Subject, and state the Case.*

I saw a man *sitting* at the window. Who was the man *sitting* at the window? He denied her *to be known* to him. He denied her *being known* to him. I thought him *to be* a good man. I found him *to be* a knave. I do not doubt your *being* able to do it. She fancies herself *to be* beautiful. *Writing* something on a piece of paper, he gave it to me. We expected the ship *to go down* every moment. *Written* in an easy style, the book is well adapted for beginners. It is impossible for me *to go*. Night *coming on*, we started for home. It will be easy *for you* to learn French. You will find it easy *to learn* French. The rice that the farmer grows is for us *to live on*. On the clock *striking* ten, all the lights are extinguished. Is there a house for travellers *to stop in?* The king caused a temple *to be built*. His father

being rich, he has no need to work. He is proud of his father *being* a rich man. The man's *making* money is no proof of his merit. What was there wonderful about the apple *falling ?*

§ 3. Position of "Not."

With Finite Verbs, the position of *not* is after the verb, or the auxiliary verb, if any. When the auxiliary verb *do* is not used, *not* follows the verb : —

It *matters not* whether he consents or not.
What he intends to do, I *know not.*

With Verbs Not Finite, on the contrary, *not* always precedes. Compare : —

He said that he *did not know.*
He pretended *not to know.*

The moon *was not* up, and all was dark.
The moon *not being* up, all was dark.

I am well aware that the work *is not* easy.
I am well aware of the work *not being* easy.

Exercise : — *Change the Verb into an Infinitive, a Participle, or a Gerund.*

The moon *had not risen* yet, and it was dark. As I *was not* able to find my friend, I went by myself: I am resolved that I *will not let* him escape. He promised that he *would not tell.* It seems that he *is not* aware of the fact. Say to him, "*Fear not.*" I supposed that the man *was not* alive. I was surprised that he *was not* dead. Be careful and *do not* take cold. I am under a promise that I *will never* taste strong drink. As the participle *is not* a finite verb, it can not have a grammatical subject.

§ 4. Verbal Adjuncts.

Infinitives, Participles, and Gerunds, though used as other parts of speech, still retain the nature of the verb in taking any Verbal Adjunct : —

(*a*) **Infinitive with Object** : — He wants *to study English.*
(*b*) **Inf. with Complement** : — He intends *to be a scholar.*
(*c*) **Infinitive with Adverb** : — He promises *to work hard.*

Note : — An Adverb qualifying an Infinitive ought not to be placed immediately after the *to.* But this rule is frequently departed from with such adverbs as are usually placed before the verb : —

He promises *to earnestly try* to do better.
I expected him *to readily consent* to my proposal.
These proofs are not sufficient *to fully establish* the fact.

(*a*) **Participle with Object** : — The man, *writing something* on a piece of paper, gave it to me.
(*b*) **Part. with Complement** : — The man, *being poor,* could not send his children to school.
(*c*) **Participle with Adverb** : — The man, *working hard,* was able to live in comfort.

(*a*) **Gerund with Object** : — I am fond of *reading novels.*
(*b*) **Ger. with Complement** : — He insisted on *being master.*
(*c*) **Gerund with Adverb** : — He succeeded by *working hard.*

CHAPTER XII.

Noun-Infinitives.

The Infinitive (sometimes called a Mood) is in its simplest form the Root of the Verb, with the preposition *to* prefixed to it. It does not make a statement by joining itself to a subject, but only names the action without the agent. It is therefore a sort of verbal noun : —

To see her is *to love* her.
To live is not merely *to breathe.*

The Infinitive (=*unlimited*) is so called, because, not having any grammatical subject of its own, it is not restricted in its use by the limitations of Person or Number, so that the same form may be used in any position : —

Do you wish *to go ?*
I wish *to go.* He wishes *to go,* too.

§ 1. Forms of the Infinitive.

The Infinitive has two chief forms : —

I. Simple : — **To be.**
II. Perfect : — **To have been.**

The Infinitive of a Transitive Verb has *six* forms : —

	Active.		*Passive.*
Simple.	**To do.**	**To be doing.**	**To be done.**
Perfect.	**To have done.**	**To have been doing.**	**To have been done.**

Note 1 : — The sign of the Infinitive *To* sometimes stands alone with the verb understood : —

I might go, if I wanted *to*.
You do not speak English, as you ought *to*.

Note 2 : — The Infinitive drops its *To* when used as the complement of —

(*a*) The Auxiliary Verbs — *shall, will, may, can, must*, etc. ;
(*b*) The Verbs of Perception — *see, hear, feel, perceive*, etc. ;
(*c*) The Four Verbs of Causation, — *let, make, have, bid.*

When a Finite Verb in a clause is condensed into an Infinitive, the two forms, *Simple* and *Perfect*, represent all the Moods and Tenses of the Finite Verb : —

Ind. Pres. : — ..... He seems **to be** diligent.
Ind. Past : — ..... He seemed **to be** diligent.
Ind. Fut. : — ..... He expects **to succeed.**
Ind. Pres. Perf. : — He seems **to have worked** hard.
Ind. Past Perf. : — He seemed **to have worked** hard.
Ind. Fut. Perf. : — He expects **to have finished** it by that time.
Subj. Past : — ..... It would be better **to do** so.
Subj. Past Perf. :— It would have been better **to have done** so.
Cond. Fut. : — ..... The weather is bad enough **to afford** us a reasonable excuse if we did not go.
Cond. Past : — ..... The weather was bad enough **to have afforded** us a reasonable excuse, if we had not gone.
Imperative : — ..... I told him **to be** quiet.

These Representative Uses of the Infinitive are based on the following principles : —

I. **The Simple Infinitive** denotes —

(*a*) A **Simultaneous Fact,** after verbs of *judgement, knowledge, statement*, etc. [*seem, appear, be thought, be said*, etc.] : —

It **is** thought that he **is** a scholar.
He **is** thought.....**to be** a scholar.
It **was** thought that he **was** a scholar.
He **was** thought.....**to be** a scholar.

(*b*) A **Subsequent Action,** after verbs of *volition* or *expectation* [*wish, hope, intend, expect, promise*, etc.] : —

I think I **shall succeed.**
I expect.....**to succeed.**
I thought I **should succeed.**
I expected.....**to succeed.**

II. **The Perfect Infinitive** has two uses, — *priority* or *denial*, — which correspond to the two uses of the Preterit : —

(*a*) A **Prior Fact,** after verbs of *judgement, knowledge, statement*, etc. : —

It **seems** that he **was** (or **has been**) diligent.
He **seems**.....**to have been** diligent.
It **seemed** that he **had been** diligent.
He **seemed**.....**to have been** diligent.

Note : — The want of the Past Infinitive makes it sometimes necessary to use the Perfect Form to represent the Past Tense. Compare : —

(*a*) It *seemed* that he *was* innocent.
He *seemed*.....*to be* innocent.

(*b*) It *seems* that he *was* innocent.
He *seems*....*to have been* innocent.

(*b*) **An Unrealized Action,** after verbs of *volition* or *expectation* : —

I intended **to have tried.**
(= I *intended to try*, but *did not*.)
I expected **to have succeeded.**
(= I *expected to succeed*, but *did not*.)
I was **to have gone abroad.**
(= I *was to go abroad*, but *did not*.)
I should like **to have been** there.
(I wish I *had been* there ; I am sorry I *was not*)

Note : — It is these two uses of the Perfect Infinitive that accounts for the uses of the Compound Potential and Conditional Tense Forms. With auxiliary verbs denoting *inference*, the Compound Form denotes Inference regarding a Prior Fact, and Non-Realization with auxiliary verbs denoting *futurity* :—

(*a*) { He *may have been* a scholar. / He *must have been* a scholar. / He *can not have been* a scholar.

(*b*) { I *would have tried*, if.... / I *should*, *might*, or *must have succeeded*, if.... / You *should* (or *ought to*) *have done so*.

Exercise (*a*) : — *State whether the Perfect Form denotes Priority or Non-Realization.*

(*α*) I am glad *to have met* you. I should like *to have met* him. I felt sorry *to have hurt* his feelings. I should like *to have heard* the lecture. It would have afforded me great pleasure *to have been* present. It would have been better *to have left* the words unsaid.

(*β*) The snow was deep enough *to have afforded* them a reasonable excuse ; but Horatio was not to be prevailed upon to turn back.—*Southey*. *To have been shut up* in the dark would have been miserable. I expected *to have found* him here. I did think *to have beaten* thee.—*Shakespeare*.

(*γ*) It was an easy thing for Lord Byron to be a great poet ; but *to have curbed* his wilful humour, (*to have*) soothed his fretful discontent, and (*to have*) *learned* to behave like a reasonable being and a gentleman, that was a difficult matter, which he does not seem ever seriously *to have attempted*.—*Blackie*.

Exercise (*b*) : — *Condense into Infinitives.*

I am glad that I *have escaped*. I wish I *had been* there. I am sorry that I *offended* him. I wish I *had seen* him. If I *had deceived* him, it would have been wrong. It would have been better, if you *had left* the words unsaid. It seemed that he *was* working hard at the time. It seems that he *was* working hard at that time. It was believed that he *was* innocent. It is believed that he *was* innocent. I hoped I *should succeed*, but failed. It seems that he *has been studious*. It seems that he *was* studious in his youth. It is said that Yoshitsune *went over* to Manchuria. It is reported that the man *made* his fortune in Hawaii. I did not think I *should succeed* thus. It was said that he *was* a great scholar. It is said that he *was* a great scholar. If I *were not to reply*, it would be acting contemptuously.

§ 2. Uses of the Noun-Infinitive.

A Noun-Infinitive may be the Subject, Object, or Complement of a Verb : —

I. **Infinitive as Subject** : — *To reign* is worth ambition though in Hell.

II. **Infinitive as Object** : — He who would command, must learn *to obey*.

III. **Infinitive as Complement** : — To live is not *to breathe*.

Note : — Infinitives are not used as the object of prepositions, this being the special function of gerunds. The only exceptions are their use after the preposition *but*, and after *for* in an obsolete construction. They are also used after the conjunction *than*.

(*a*) **For** : — { What went ye *for to see ?* — *Bible*. / All countries came into Egypt *for to buy* corn. — *Bible*.

(*b*) **But** : — { She desired nothing *but to go home*. / I could not *but pity* her. / She did nothing *but cry* all day.

(*c*) **Than** : — { She did nothing else *than cry* all day. / She killed herself rather *than marry* him.

§ 3. Noun-Infinitive as Subject.

An Infinitive used as Subject may either be placed at the head of a Sentence, as —

To err is human, *to forgive* divine.
To give is more blessed than to receive.
To know oneself is a difficult thing.

Or it may be thrown to the end of the sentence, with the Pronoun *It* as Formal Subject, as —

It would be wrong *to tell* a lie.
It is easy *to learn* English, but *it* is difficult *to attain* perfection in it.
He who knows not what *it* ts *to labour*, knows not what *it* is *to enjoy*.

§ 4. Noun-Infinitive as Object.

Verbs taking the Infinitive as Object are those denoting —

(*a*) **Volition and Desire** : — I *want to see* him on particular business. A friend of mine *wishes to secure* the position. Those men *desire to win* renown. I do this, because I *choose to do so*. I *intend to go abroad* next year. I have *decided to go* to England. He *means to stay* here if he can. He is *determined to effect* his purpose. I *resolved to be revenged*.

(*b*) **Liking and Dislike** : — He *likes to play* all the time. I *dislike to be disturbed* in my study. She *loves to listen* to music. I *hate to tell* a lie. A good man does not *fear to die*.

(*c*) **Endeavour** : — I have vainly *tried to persuade* him. The prisoner *attempted to escape*. I shall *endeavour to gain* his confidence. The swimmers *strove to win* the goal. I *manage to keep* out of debt. How do you *contrive to make* both ends meet?

(*d*) **Commencement, Continuance, Cessation** : — I *begin to understand* English better. He *continues to progress* in his studies I shall never *cease to feel* grateful for your favours.

Etc. *etc.*

Note 1 : — The Infinitive after some of these verbs is called a complement, but the distinction is of little practical importance.

Note 2 : — Some of these verbs may take either an Infinitive or a Gerund as Object. [See Pages 531, 532 : (2) GERUND AS OBJECT OF VERBS.]

I like *to do* (or *doing*) it.
I intend *to do* (or *doing*) it.
I have decided *to do* (or *on doing*) it.
I begin, continue, or cease *to do* (or *doing*) it.

OBJECTIVE INFINITIVE AFTER SPECIAL VERBS.

(*a*) **Verbs of "Knowing"** : — The Objective Infinitive after Verbs of *Knowledge* [*know, learn, teach,* etc.] is frequently preceded by a Dependent Interrogative : —

I did not *know — what to do — how to do it.*
He did not *tell* me — *when to come — where to go.*
I am *learning — how to ride* a bicycle.
I will *show* you — *how to do* it.
He *taught* us — *how to live* — and *how to die.*
I do not *know — what to make* of him.

(*b*) **Verbs of "Thinking"** : — The verb *think* when used as a verb of volition or expectation (=*intend* or *expect*) is followed by the Objective Infinitive in Older English, as —

I did never *think* (= *intend*) *to marry.*
I did *think* (= *expect*) *to have beaten* thee.
I *thought* (= *hoped*) thy bride-bed *to have decked.*

But in Modern English it is not followed by the Infinitive, though other verbs of *volition* or *expectation* may be followed by the Infinitive : —

I *thought I would die.*
I *resolved to die.*

I *think I will try.*
I *intend* (or *mean*) *to try.*

I *think I shall succeed.*
I *expect* (or *hope*) *to succeed.*

(*c*) **Verbs of "Saying"** — The verb *say*, when used to express *volition* can not be followed by the Infinitive ; but other verbs of *saying* implying *volition* [*consent, refuse, offer, promise, threaten,* etc.] may be followed by the Infinitive. Compare : —

He *says he will undertake* the work.
He *consented to undertake* the work.

He *says he will not undertake* the work on such terms.
He *refuses .....to undertake* the work on such terms.

He *says he will lend* me the money.
He *offers .....to lend* me the money.

He *says he will do* his best.
He *promises to do* his best.

He *says he will bring* an action against me.
He *threatens to bring* an action against me.

(*d*) **Factitive Verbs** : — When the Infinitive is used as the Object of a Factitive Verb [*make, find, think,* etc.], it is placed after the complement, the Pronoun *It* being placed between the verb and the complement as Formal Object. Compare : —

It is my rule *to side* with the weaker party.
I make *it* a rule *to side* with the weaker party.

It is hard work *to teach* English.
I find *it* hard work *to teach* English.

I thought that *it* was wrong *to disobey* him.
I thought .....*it*.....wrong *to disobey* him.

EXERCISE : — *Change into the Factitive Construction.*

It is a rule with me never to eat between meals. As they are credulous, it is easy to deceive them. Why is it so difficult to master English? It is his business to find fault. It is in my power to help you. It was easy to accomplish my design. I consider that it is my duty to inform you that ..... I thought that it was prudent to remain silent.

Note 1 : — The formal object is omitted in the expressions *think fit, deem proper, see good*, etc.

I thought fit *to refuse* his request.

Note 2 : — The factitive verb *think*, as a verb of volition or expectation, is not followed by the Infinitiue, but as a verb of judgement, admits of two infinitive constructions : —

I thought *it* easy *to succeed.* [*Obj. Inf.*]
I thought success *to be* easy. [*Compl. Inf.*]
I found *it* difficult *to succeed.* [*Obj. Inf.*]
I found success *to be* difficult. [*Compl. Inf.*]

§ 5. Noun-Infinitive as Complement.

The Infinitive Complement is nearly always a condensed clause : —

It *seems* that he *is* diligent.
He *seems*.....*to be* diligent.
I *thought* that he *was* honest.
I *thought* him *to be* honest.

Verbs taking the Infinitive as Complement are a sort of Incomplete [*Neuter* or *Factitive*] Verbs, and actually become such by the omission of *to be* : —

(*a*) He *seemed* (*to be*) honest.
(*b*) I *thought* him (*to be*) honest.

I. INFINITIVE COMPLEMENT OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

(*a*) **To Seem, Appear** : — It *seems* that the report *is* true. / The report *seems*.....*to be* true.
(*b*) **To Prove, Turn out** : — It *proved* that the report *was* true. / The report *proved*.....*to be* true.
(*c*) **To Happen, Chance** : — It so *happened* that he *was* present. / He *happened*.....*to be* present.
(*d*) **To Come** : — How *comes* it that you *know* him? / How *came* you.....*to know* him?

Idioms : —

(*α*) ***To come to be*** (= *become*) : — How *came* you *to be* so intimate with him?
(*β*) ***To come to do*** (= *get to do*) : — How I *came to overlook* so obvious a mistake, is more than I can tell.
(*γ*) ***To come to pass*** (= *happen*) : — And it *came to pass* that.....

II. INFINITIVE COMPLEMENT OF TRANSITIVE VERBS.

A Neuter Verb taking the Infinitive Complement has its Transitive Counterpart in the Factitive or Causative Verb taking the Infinitive Complement : —

Seem to be : — They *seemed to be* happy. / **Think ( ) to be** : — I *thought* them *to be* happy.
Prove to be : — The report *proved to be* true. / **Find to ( ) be** : — We *found* the report *to be* true.
Come to be : — Thus I *came to regard* him as my enemy. / **Cause ( ) to be** : — This *caused* me *to regard* him as....

EXERCISE : — *Substitute the Factitive or Causative for the Neuter.*

The man *appeared to be* honest. He *turned out to be* an impostor. How *came* he *to be* so much beloved? He *came to be* beloved on account of his goodness. By this fact he *seems to be* honest.

Note 1 : — The Infinitive Complement after such transitive verbs as *think, find, know, declare, show*, etc., forms part of a *Complex Object* [*Objective* and *Infinitive*], which is a contracted form of the Objective Noun Clause. Expand the Objective-and-Infinitives into Clauses : —

We supposed *him to be honest.* We found *him to be a knave.* The fact shows *him to be a knave.* I know *him to be honest.* I can prove *him to be honest.* I judged *this course to be the best.* We concluded *him to be dead.* We found *him to be alive.* I ordered *him to be punished.* They permitted *me to depart in peace.* I forbade *him to stir from the spot.*

Note 2 : — When an Objective Noun Clause is condensed into an Objective and Infinitive, the Objective denoting the same person as the Subject takes the Reflexive Form : —

I imagined *that I was* safe. / I imagined *myself to be* safe.
She fancied *that she was* beautiful. / She fancied *herself to be* beautiful.

The Infinitive Complement of Transitive Verbs denotes either *Fact* or *Action* :—

I. The **Infinitive of Fact** is used after the following classes of verbs : —

(*a*) **Judgment** : — I *thought* him *to be* honest.
(*b*) **Experience** : — I *found* him *to be* a knave.
(*c*) **Knowledge** : — I *know* him *to be* honest.
(*d*) **Declaration** : — He *declares* the statement *to be* false.
(*e*) **Demonstration** : — I can *prove* the statement *to be* true.

II. The **Infinitive of Action** is used after verbs of *causation*, which include —

(*a*) **Simple Causation** : — Heat *causes* water to evaporate.
(*b*) **Compulsion** : — Circumstances *compel* me *to practise* economy.
(*c*) **Permission** : — I have *permitted* him *to use* my library.
(*d*) **Prohibition** : — I have *forbidden* them *to smoke* in the library.
(*e*) **Command** : — I have *told* (or *ordered*) him *to come* tomorrow.
(*f*) **Request** : — I have *asked* (*begged* or *requested*) him to attend the meeting.
(*g*) **Desire** : — I *desired* my servant *to leave* the room.
(*h*) **Persuasion** : — I have *persuaded* him *to undertake* the work.
(*i*) **Advice** : — My doctor *advises* me *to go* to the sea-side.
(*j*) **Inducement** : — Nothing shall *induce* me *to do* such a thing.

Note 1 : — Of these verbs admitting of the Infinitive Construction, those requiring special consideration are verbs of *judgment*, *declaration*, and various verbs of *causation*.

Note 2 : — The verb *think* may denote *Intention* or *Expectation* as well as *Judgment*. When used as a Verb of Judgment *think* admits of the Infinitive Construction ; when used as a Verb of Intention or Expectation, it must be changed into *intend* or *expect* : —

I *intend* him *to be* a lawyer.
I *expect* him *to succeed*.

The Infinitive after verbs of *Intention* or *Desire* is an Infinitive of Action ; that after *Expectation* or *Liking* is as Infinitive of Fact. All these Verbs admit of two Infinitive Constructions : —

[*Objective Infinitive.*]	[*Complementary Infinitive.*]
I intend *to be* a teacher.	I intend *him to be* a teacher.
I expect *to succeed*.	I expect *him to succeed*.
I wish *to be* a scholar.	I wish *him to be* a scholar.
He likes *to be* well-dressed.	He likes *his wife to be* well-dressed.

(*a*) **Verds of Judgement:** — Among those admitting of the Infinitive Complement are —

To Think : — I *thought* him *to be* honest.
To Believe : — I *believed* the story *to be* true.
To Suppose : — We all *supposed* him *to be* dead.
To Imagine : — I *imagined* myself *to be* quite safe.
To Fancy : — He *fancies* himself *to be* still young.
To Consider : — I *considered* the matter *to be* very important.
To Judge : — We *judged* this course *to be* the best.
To Conclude : — We *concluded* it *to be* the only way possible.

(*b*) **Verbs of Declaration** : — The verb *say* does not admit of the Infinitive Construction, except in the passive : —

{ They *say* that he *is* a good teacher.
{ He *is said*.....*to be* a good teacher.

Note : — We never say.....They *say* him *to be* a good teacher.
But we may say.....They *speak of* him *as* a good teacher.

Other verbs of *saying* or *declaration* take the place of the verb *say* in the Infinitive Construction : —

{ He *says* that the story *is* false.
{ He *affirms* the story *to be* false.

{ He *says* that the statement *is* true.
{ He *affirms* the statement *to be* true.

{ He *says* that the statement *is not* true.
{ He *denies* the statement *to be* true.

Among verbs taking the place of the verb *say* in the Infinitive Construction are —

To State : — He *states* such and such *to be* the case.
To Declare : — He *declares* the charge *to be* false.
To Pronounce : — The doctor *pronounced* the wound *to be* slight.
To Assert : — He *asserts* his claim *to be* valid.
To Affirm : — He *affirms* the statement *to be* true.
To Admit : — He *admits* the charge *to be* founded.
To Allow : — I can not *allow* you *to be* right.
To Acknowledge : — He *acknowledges* himself *to be* wrong.
To Own : — He *owns* himself *to have been* foolish.
To Confess : — He has *confessed* himself *to be* guilty.
To Profess : — He *professes* himself *to be* a Christian.
To Deny : — He *denies* the woman *to be known* to him.

(*c*) **Verbs of Causation** : — The Infinitive after Verbs of Causation is not always a condensed clause : —

To Cause : — Heat *causes* water *to evaporate.*
To Enable : — Wealth *enables* one *to be* generous.

To Oblige : — I am *obliged to refuse* your request.
To Compel : — Circumstances *compel* me *to do so.*
To Force : — If they will not obey, we can *force* them *to do so.*

To Permit : — Have you *permitted* him *to go?*
To Allow : — I will not *allow* him *to be ill-treated.*
To Suffer : — I will not *suffer* myself *to be ill-treated.*
To Forbid : — I *forbid* you *to stir* from the spot.

To Order : — The officer *ordered* his men *to fire.*
To Tell : — I *told* the man *to come* again.

To Request : — He *requested* me *to assist* him.
To Beg : — He *begged* me *to stay* with him.
To Ask : — He *asked* me *to come* into the house.

To Wish : — I *wish* you *to begin* at once.
To Want : — I *want* you *to be here* this evening.
To Desire : — He *desired* us *to leave* the room.

To Persuade : — I have tried to *persuade* him *to undertake* it.
To Prevail upon : — I can not *prevail upon* him *to do so.*
To Advise : — I can safely *advise* you *to buy* the goods.

To Induce : — What *induced* you *to do* such a foolish thing?
To Lead : — These circumstances *led* me *to think* that he was not in his right mind.
To Get : — I could not *get* him *to accept* the offer.
To Bring : — I could not *bring* myself *to accept* the offer.

Note 1 : — The verb *cause* with a neuter subject signifies *simple causation,* and with a personal subject *command.*

(*a*) The rain *caused* the river *to rise.*
(*b*) The king *caused* a temple *to be biult.*

Compare : —

I *ordered* my cook *to prepare* a feast.
I *caused* a feast *to be prepared.*

Note 2 : — The verb *get,* when followed by an Infinitive, signifies *to induce* or *prevail upon,* and is a colloquial substitute for all verbs of *inducement, persuasion,* or *request.* (何ニ何々サセル。爲テ貰フ) Paraphrase *get* : —

Get some one *to do* it for you.
I could never *get* him *to do* his work properly.
She could never be *got to own* this fault.

Note 3 : — What is the difference of meaning between —

I *permitted* him *to enter.* / I *allowed* him *to enter.*
It is *not allowed.* / It is *not permitted.*

He *told* me *to wait* a moment. / He *asked* me *to wait* a moment. / He *desired* me *to wait* a moment.
I *beg* you *will come.* / I *wish* you *would come.* / I *wish* you *to come.*

I *told* him *that the child was asleep.*
I *told* him *to be quiet.*

EXERCISE : — *Change the Verbs marked into Complementary Infinitives.*

(*α*) It appears that he *is* ignorant of the fact. We found that he *was* an impostor. It was afterward found out that the man *was* an impostor. How does it happen that you *know* him? It once chanced that I *saved* his life. How comes it that you *are* acquainted with him? We all supposed that he *was* dead. We found that he *was* alive. I know that he *is* worthy of confidence. He imagined that he *was* quite safe. She fancies that she *is* still beautiful. You may do so, if you think that it *is* necessary. My father intended that I *should be* a physician

(*β*) I hope I *shall succeed* this time. I hope he *will succeed.* We hoped that he *would recover* quickly. We feared that the ship *would founder* every moment. I think that I *am* able to effect my purpose. I hope I *shall be* able to do it. At any rate, I think I *will try.* I can prove that the statement *is* true. I know that he *is* a fool. He knows that he *is* a fool. He fancies that he *is* an important personage. It was supposed that he *was* immensely rich, while he was alive. They said that he *had* lots of money. But when he died, it was found out that he *was* penniless.

(*γ*) I know that he *is* the cause of my misfortune. He also knows that he *is* the cause of my misfortune. It is thought by some that the moon *is inhabited.* It was formerly supposed that the earth *was* the center of the universe. It was not known that the earth *is* round. It was generally believed that he *was* innocent. It is generally believed that he *was* innocent. It is believed that he *died* in the war. It is said that he *was drowned* while crossing a river.

(*δ*) The doctor said that he *would cure* me very quickly. The stranger said that he *was* a surgeon by profession. He said that my wound *was* very slight. He says that the statement *is* false. He says he *is* innocent. He says he *is not* guilty. Teacher says that the new boy *is* a dunce. He says he *is* my inferior. He says I *am* his superior.

(ε) He says that the accusation *is* just. But he says that the account *is not* quite correct. Are you not obliged to say that you *are* mistaken? He says he *is* a Buddhist, but no one thinks he *is* one. He is a hypocondriac, and always fancies that he *is* ill. He said that the story *was not* true. He said that it *was* calumny. Some hoped he *would live*. The others feared he *would die*.

(ζ) It is said that Yoshitsune *went over* to Manchuria. We supposed that he *was* a brave man. We found that he *was* a great coward. The doctor has said that his recovery *is* impossible. The man said that he *was* able to furnish me with the funds. He said he *would furnish* me with the funds. The gentleman ordered his cook that he *should prepare* a feast. The doctor says we *may go* into the sick-room. But he says we *must not make* any noise while there.

(η) He said to me, "You *must pay* the money." He said to me, "*Wait* a moment." He said to me, "*Will you please walk in?*" I said, "Boys, *be* quiet." I said, "Boys, *do not make* such a noise." The teacher said, "Boys, *don't be* idle. *Be* diligent, and you will become wise." He said to me, "I beg you *will accept* of a trifling present." The river *rose* in consequence of the rain. Why do things *fall* to the earth? He said to me, "You *had better do so*." We can *predict* the weather by means of the barometer.

Translation Exercise.

(1) 評判ガ本當ラシカツタ (2) ケレドモ[後ニ成ツテ見タナラ]虚言デアツタ (3) 此語ハ如何シテ此意味ニ用ユル樣ニ成ツタカ分ラヌ (4) 私ハ如何シテモ英語ガ好キニ成レナイ (5) 今ニ上手ニ成ルト奴キニ成ル (6) 其時ニ丁度彼ガ居合ハシタ (7) 誰モ丁度ニ私ノ行ク方ヘ行クモノガナカツタ故一人デ行ツタ (8) アナタハひよつとSBrownト云フ英國人ヲ御承知ナイカ (9) 校長ガ此室ヲ使用スルコトヲ許可シマシタ (10) 下駄ニテ昇校スルヲ許サズ (11) 其男ハ神妙ニ縄ニ掛ツテ引キ立テラレタ (12) 彼ハ自身ノ肖像ヲ畵カシメ之ヲ會議室ニ掛ケシメタリ (13) アナタハ金ヲ返サナケレバ止ムヲ得ズ訴ヘナケレバナラン (14) 私ハ彼ニ家ヲ買フ事ヲ切リニ勸メタケレ𪜈申々承知シナイ (15) ヤツトノコトニ承知サセマシタ (16) 彼ニ白狀サセヨウトシテモ申々シナイ (17) 待タシテ置ケ (18) 御入レ申セ (19) 君ハ游ギ樣ヲ知ツテ居ルカ (20) 小供等ニ氣ヲ付ケロト云ヘ (21) 深

イ處ヘ行クナト云ヘ (22) 彼ハ來ルト云ツタカ (23) 屹度來ルト云ヒマシタ (24) 何時出發ノ積リカ (25) 今度ハ及第スル積リカ (26) 此事實ニ依ツテ見ルト其男ハ無罪ラシイ (27) 君ハ死ンダカト思ツタ (28) 彼ハ未ダ若イ氣ダ (29) 皆ガ私ヲ候補者ニ爲ヨウト思フテ居ル (30) 皆ハ私ガ成功スルダロウト思ツテ居ル (31) 私ハ彼ヲ助ケテ遣ロウト云フタ (32) 彼ハ其說ハ虚言ダト云フテ居ル (33) 彼ハ自分デハ耶蘇教信者ダト云フテ居ル (34) 醫者ガ病氣ハ輕イト云フタ (25) 彼ハ其說ハ嘗ツテ本當ダト云フタ (26) 私ハ本當デナイト云フタ (37) 彼ハ自分ガ間違ツテ居ツタト云フタ (38) 馬鹿ニサレテ居ルナ (39) 如何ナル事ガアツテモ斯樣ナ事ハ爲ヌ (40) 誰カニ道ヲ教ヘテ貰ヒ (41) 誰カニ一處ニ行ツテ貰ヒマセウ (42) アナタハ此手紙ヲ誰ニ書イテ貰ツタカ (43) 明日來テ貰ヒタイ (44) 明日御來車アランコトヲ乞フ (45) 私ハ教師ニ成ロウト思ツテ居ル (46) 私ハ彼ヲ教師ニ爲ヨウト思ツテ居ル

§ 6. The Infinitive without "To" as Complement.

The Infinitive drops its *To* when used as the complement of certain verbs, which are of an auxiliary or representative character. Such are *Auxiliary Verbs, Verbs of Perception,* and *Four Verbs of Causation.*

We have seen that an Infinitive Complement denotes either an *action* or a *fact.*

The *Auxiliary Verbs,* when used in the Primary Sense, take Infinitives of Action, and in the Secondary Sense take Infinitives of Fact or Event: —

[*Infinitive of Action.*]	[*Infinitive of Fact or Event.*]
I think I will *try.*	I hope I shall *succeed.*
You may *do so.*	It may *be so.*
I can not *do so.*	It can not *be so.*
You must *do so.*	It must *be so.*

Verbs of *Perception* are representative of Transitive Verbs taking Infinitives of Fact — that is, verbs of *judgment, experience, knowledge, declaration,* and *demonstration.* Compare: —

I have *seen* him *do* so.
I have *known* him (*to*) *do* so.

Verbs of *Causation* are representative of Transitive Verbs taking Infinitives of Action — that is, verbs of *simple causation, compulsion, permission, command, request, persuasion,* etc. Compare : —

Allow, permit, or *suffer* me *to go.*
Let.....me.....*go.*

I *obliged, compelled,* or *forced* him *to do so.*
I *made*.....him ....*do so.*

I can not *get* or *persuade* him *to undertake* the work.
I can not *have*.....him.....*undertake* the work.

1. AUXILIARY VERBS.

The Auxiliary Verbs taking the Root-Infinitive as Complement are representative of other expressions of *volition, ability. necessity*, etc., which naturally coalesce with Infinitives of Action. Compare : —

(*a*) **Shall** : — You are *to come* with me. / You shall *come* with me.

(*b*) **Will** : — I am willing or determined *to go.* / I will.....*go.*

(*c*) **May** : — You are at liberty *to go.* / You may.....*go.*

(*d*) **Can** : — I know *how to swim.* / I can.....*swim.*

(*e*) **Must** : — He needs *to work* for his living. / He must.....*work* for his living.

The two following verbs take the Root-Infinitive only in the Negative and Interrogative. Compare : —

(*f*) **Need** : — Why need he *fear?* He need not *fear.* / He needs *to work* for his living.

(*g*) **Dare** : — How dare you *do* that? You dare not *do* that. / He dares *to do* anything.

The Root-Infinitive is used after the following quasi-auxiliary expressions : —

(*h*) **Had better** : — You had better *do* it yourself.

Note : — This form is thus explained : —

You *had* better *go* yourself.
(= You *would have it* better *to go* yourself.)

So that the combination *had better* is originally of the same meaning as the combination *would rather* : —

I *had* (or *would*) *rather* die than yield.
I *had* (or *would*) *sooner* die than yield.
I *had* (or *would*) *as soon* die as yield.

In Modern English the meanings of *had better* and *would rather* have become thus differentiated : —

Choice : — They *would rather* die than go to the workhouse.
Advice : — If they would rather die, they *had better* do so.

(*i*) **Can not but** : — I can not but *pity* her.

(*j*) **Do nothing but** : — She does nothing but *cry* all day.

(*k*) **Do no more than** : — She does no more than *cry*.

Note : — The *To* is not omitted after the three following auxiliary verbs : —

(*a*) **Be** : — I am *to go* ; I was *to go.* / I was *to have gone.* / If I were *to go*,.....

(*b*) **Have** : — I have *to go.* I have had *to go.* / I had *to go.* I had had *to go.* / I shall have *to go.* I shall have had *to go.*

(*c*) **Ought** : — You ought *to go.* / You ought *to have gone.*

(1) Ought.

Ought is originally the Preterit of the verb *owe.* In Modern English, the ordinary Preterit of *owe* is *owed ;* the form *ought* being used as an auxiliary verb, in the presentive sense of duty or obligation, nearly equivalent to *should* in its presentive sense.

Ought (like *may, can, must,* and the presentive *should*) has two uses, Primary and Secondary : —

(*a*) **Primary Meaning** : — When used with a verb denoting *action, Ought* is the strongest form of *duty* or *obligation* : —

One *ought* to pay what one owes.
One *ought* not to promise what one can not perform.

Note 1 : — Compare the meanings of *should* and *ought* *Should* denotes *general fitness of things*, and is used in making general statements ; while *ought* denotes *propriety*, and is used in making particular statements. Compare : —

You *ought* to ask your father before taking the step.
You *should* have no secret from your parents.

Note 2 : — It is to be noted that *ought* or *should* does not always attribute the duty or obligation to its subject, especially when used in connection with a verb of passive meaning : —

Your father *ought* to know it.
(= *You ought* to tell your father.)

Children *should* be taught obedience.
(= *We should* teach children obedience.)

(*b*) **Secondary Meaning**:—When used with a verb denoting *fact*, *Ought* of Inference denotes *natural consequence* (當然の答):—

I have lived here all my life, so I *ought* to know the neighbourhood well.
He has been studying English for a long time, so he *ought* to speak it well.
An Englishman *ought* to know English.

Compare *must*:—

(*α*) { He is diligent, so he *must* succeed.
(= He is sure to succeed.)

(*β*) { He is diligent, so he *ought* to succeed.
(= It is quite natural, no wonder that he should.)

(*c*) **Primary "Ought to have done"**:—This form, when used with a verb denoting *action*, denotes denial. It expresses *blame for omission* in the affirmative, and *blame for commission* in the negative:—

{ Have you not told your father? You *ought to have done so.*
(= You did wrong in not doing so.)

{ Did you deceive him? You *ought not to have done so.*
(= You did wrong in doing so.)

(*d*) **Secondary "Ought to have done"**:—This form, when used with a verb denoting *event* in the sense of inference, does not denote denial:—

{ If he started early, he *ought to have arrived* by this time.
(= It is quite natural that he should have arrived.)

(2) Need.

The Auxiliary Verb *Need* has two Tense-Forms:—

(*a*)	*Simple*:— You **need not do** it.
(*b*)	*Perfect*:— You **need not have done** it.

(*a*) The **Simple Form** is used as the negative of the Primary *Must*.

(*b*) The **Perfect Form** denotes that one has done a superfluous action:—

I could have lent you my book, so you *need not have bought* it. (= You did what was unnecessary.)

(3) Dare.

This verb is used as an Auxiliary Verb only in the Negative Form, and in the Present and Past Tenses:—

	Negative.	*Affirmative.*
Present.	He **dare not do** so.	He **dares to do** so.
Past.	He **dared (durst) not do** so.	He **dared to do** so.

I have done nothing I *dare not own.*
After his shameful conduct, he *dared not show* his face.
How *dare* you *face* me again?

Idiom:—***I dare say*** = *I presume.*
You are hungry, *I dare say.* (= You *must* be hungry.)

Translation Exercise.

(1) 其樣ナ生活ヲスルヨリモ一層死ンダ方ガ増ダ (2) 人ニ物ヲサセテ氣ニ入ラヌナラバ何事モ自分デスルガ宜イ (3) 自分デ行ツタ方ガ宜クハナイカ (4) 私ハアナタノ處置ヲ非難セザルヲ得ナイ (5) 彼ハ不平計リ云フテ居ル (6) 彼等ハ毎日毎日酒計カリ飲ンデ居ル (7) 早ク出發シタノナラ今頃ハ着スル筈ダ (8) 此樣ニ永ク降ツタカラモウ天氣ニ成ツテモ宜イ譯ダ (9) アナタハ未ダ金ヲ返サンノカ。疾ウニ返ス可キノデアツタ (10) 何故私ニ相談シナカツタノカ。私ニ相談スレバ宜カツタニ (11) 私ニ隱サナケレバ宜カツタニ (12) 先月讀イタノガカラ最ウ出來テ居ル筈ダ (13) 態々此遠路ヲ來タノカ。入ラヌコトヲシタ (14) アナタガ來ルト知ツタナラ行カナクテモ宜カツタノダ (15) 貴樣ハ能クモ己レニ其樣ナ事ヲ云フナ (16) 君ニ出來ヌコトナラ如何シテ私ニ出來ル道理ガ無イ

II. VERBS OF PERCEPTION.

Verbs of Perception which take the Complex Object consisting of Objective and Root-Infinitive are —

(*a*) **To See**:— I *saw* him *take* it.
(*b*) **To Hear**:— I *heard* him *say* so.
(*c*) **To Feel**:— I *felt* some one *pull* me by the sleeve.
(*d*) **To Perceive**:— I did not *perceive* any one *enter*.
(*e*) **To Behold**:— We *beheld* the monster *rise* to the surface.
(*f*) **To Watch**:— I was *watching* the crowd *pass*.
(*g*) **To Observe**:— We *observed* the sky *change*.

Note 1:— The omission of *to* with infinitives after verbs of perception seems to be owing to the fact that the perception of the object and its action are so intimately connected that they coalesce more closely than in the case of judgement or knowledge.

Note 2:— A verb of perception followed by the objective and root-infinitive is used in speaking of some action as having come under one's personal observation:—

He can teach ; I have *seen* him *teach*.
He speaks English ; I have *heard* him *speak* it.
The house shook ; I *felt* it *shake*.
No one entered ; I did not *perceive* any one *enter*.

Note 3 : — The verbs *know* and *find* occasionally take the place of verbs of perception : —

Strange ! I never *knew* this gun *miss* fire.— *Dickens*.
Some, sunk to beasts, *find* pleasure *end* in pain.— *Pope*.

Note 4 : — The Passive of Verbs of Perception is followed by the Ordinary Infinitive. Compare : —

We *saw* him *enter* the house.
He was *seen to enter* the house.
One might have *heard* a pin *drop*.
A pin might have been *heard to drop*.

Note 5 : — The Infinitive Complement of Verbs of Perception, when put in the Passive, drops the *be*, and becomes a Past-Participial Complement. Compare : —

I should like to *see* them *fire* this gun.
I should like to *see* this gun *fired*.
I never *heard* any one *speak* Russian.
I never *heard* Russian *spoken*.

Exercise : — *Put the Verbs marked in the Passive.*

We *saw* him enter the house. We *heard* him give orders to the servant. We *saw* a boat put off. We saw them *fire* a gun. I have *heard* him say so. I have heard some one *say* that it is so. I felt some one *touch* me on the arm. I have heard them *speak of* him as a good teacher. I have never *heard* him speak English. Did you ever hear any one *speak* Italian ? I heard some one *call* me.

Translation Exercise.

(1) 私ハアノ人ノ英語ヲ話スノヲ聞イタコトガナイ (2) アノ婦人ハ佛蘭西語ヲ話シマスヿ話スノヲ聞キマシタ (3) 亦能ク踊リマスヿ踊ルノヲ見マシタ (4) ハテ不思議ダ此時計ガ止マッタ試メシハナイガ (5) 私ハ幾度モ彼ガソウ云フノヲ聞イタ (6) 誰カ背中ヲ叩イタト思フタ (7) 此大魂ヲ打ッノヲ見タカ (8) 私ハ船ノ進水ガ見タイ (9) 私ハ先達紙ヲ製スルノヲ見ニ行ッタ (10) 此歌ヲ謡ウノヲ聞イタコトガナイカ

III. VERBS OF CAUSATION.

Four Verbs of Causation take the Complex Object consisting of Objective and Root-Infinitive. Compare : —

(*a*) **To Let** : —
Let me *come* here.
Allow me *to come* here.

(*b*) **To Make** : —
They *made* me *drink*.
They *compelled* me *to drink*.

(*c*) **To Have** : —
Have some one *do* it for you.
Get some one *to do* it for you.

(*d*) **To Bid** : —
Bid the fellow *wait*.
Tell the man *to wait*.

Note 1 : — We have seen in the last section that Verbs of Causation taking the Objective and Infinitive include those denoting *simple causation*, *compulsion*, *permission*, *command*, *request*, *desire*, *inducement*, etc. It is a fact worthy of note that the four incomplete verbs of causation are representative of all verbs of causation. Paraphrase the verbs marked into *let*, *make*, *have*, or *bid* : —

Heat *causes* water to evaporate. He *compelled* us to obey him. I will not *allow* so good an opportunity to slip. *Tell* the man to come in. *Ask* some one to show you the way. What do you *wish* me to do? If I can not do it myself, I will *get* some one to do it for me.

Note 2 : — The word *help* frequently follows the analogy of the incomplete verbs of causation : —

I must go home and *help* aunt *prepare* for Christmas.
The tame elephants are now quite willing to *help catch* their old friends of the forest.

Note 3 : — The Passive of *Make* and *Bid* is followed by the Ordinary Infinitive. The Passive of *Let* usually gives place to that of the Verb *Allow* ; while *Have* is not used in the Passive, the Passive of the Verb *Get* being used instead. Compare : —

He *made* me *wait* for a long while.
I was *made to wait* for a long while.
He *bade* me *follow* him.
I was *bidden to follow* him.
They *let* me *have* my own way.
I was *let* (or *allowed*) *to have* my own way.
I could not *have* him *confess* his fault.
He could not be *got to confess* his fault.

Note 4 : — The Infinitive Complement of *Let* and *Bid* may be put in the Passive. The Passive Infinitive after *Have* (and *Get*) drops the *be* (or *to be*), and becomes a Past-Participial Complement. The Passive Infinitive after *Make* either drops the *be*, and becomes a Past-Participial Complement ; or *Make* gives place to the Verb *Cause* followed by the Ordinary Passive Infinitive. Compare : —

{ *Let* them *do* it at once.
{ *Let* it *be done* at once.

{ I do not *let* them *read* such books.
{ I do not *allow* such books *to be read.*

{ She *bade* them *divide* the money.
{ She *bade* the money *be divided.*

{ I will *have* some one *do* it. { I must *get* some one *to do* it.
{ I will *have* it .....*done.* { I must *get* it .....*done.*

{ I could not *make* them *understand* me.
{ I could not *make* myself *understood.*

{ He *made* us *pay* the money.
{ He *caused* the money *to be paid.*

EXERCISE : — *Put the Verbs marked in the Passive.*

We may *let* him have his amusement. He *bade* me wait a moment. He *made* us learn the rules. He made us *learn* the rules. *Learn* this rule by heart. *Write* your exercise with pen and ink. *Read* this chapter carefully. *Study* the following examples. We do not *let* them do such things. We do not let them *do* such things. I could not make them *hear* me. I will have some one *take* the letter to his house. Please have some one *carry* my luggage to the station. He let them *bind* him. He made them *bind* him.

Of the Four Incomplete Verbs of Causation, those requiring special attention are *Let*, *Make*, and *Have*.

(1) To Let.

This verb signifies *to allow* or *to suffer*, to which it generally gives place when a passive infinitive follows. Compare : —

{ I will not *let* them *do* such things.
{ I will not *allow* such things *to be done.*

{ He *let* them *bind* him.
{ He *suffered* himself *to be bound.*

The Verb *Let*, besides its original signification, has two uses— as a *Causative*, and as an *Imperative*, Auxiliary. The latter use has already been explained. [See Pages 462—464 :II.]

The Causative *Let* (=*cause*) is used in combination with certain verbs to give them a causative meaning : —

Let him *come*.	= *Bring* him.
Let him *go*.	= *Send* him.
Let me *go*.	= *Take* me with you.
Let me *have* your answer.	= *Give* me your answer.
Let me *see* the letter.	= *Show* me the letter.
Let me *hear* the story.	= *Tell* me the story.
Etc.	*etc.*

Idioms : —

(*a*) ***To let go :*** — *Let go* your hold. *Let go* my hand.
(*b*) ***To let fall :*** — He *let fall* a hint that he would resign.
(*c*) ***To let fly :*** — The savages *let fly* a shower of arrows.
(*d*) ***To let slip :***—I must not *let slip* such a good opportunity.

(2) To Make.

When used as an incomplete verb of causation, *make* denotes—

(*a*) **Simple Causation** (*with Neuter Subjects*) : —
The rain *made* the river *rise*.
What *makes* things *fall* to the earth ?

(*b*) **Compulsion or Command** (*with Personal Subjects*) : —
If you will not leave the room, I will *make* you (*do so*).
My father *made* all of us *learn* some trade.

(*c*) **Effort** (*with Verbs denoting Mental Actions*) : —
I could not *make* them *understand* what I wanted.
He *made* me *believe* that he was in earnest.

EXERCISE : — *Show in what sense the word "make" is used, by paraphrasing it into some equivalent expression.*

Pleasure and action *make* the hours seem short. They *made* me comply against my will. The last drop *makes* the cup run over.— *Proverb*. What *makes* you think so ? One man can lead a horse to water, but ten can not *make* him drink —*Proverb*. He succeeded in *making* people fear and respect him. But he could not *make* them love him. Try not to make such a noise when you eat, because you *make* me think of a pig. The cunning merchant *made* me believe that the sword was a genuine Masamune. You *make* me think of my brother. You *make* me forget my misfortunes.

Idioms : —

(*a*) ***To make believe :*** — He *made believe* not to be aware of my presence.
(*b*) ***To make both ends meet :*** — I care not for wealth ; I only wish to *make both ends meet.*

(3) To Have.

Have, followed by the Objective and Root Infinitive, originally has no causative meaning, but merely connects some external occurrence to a personal subject, and is therefore allied to verbs of perception : —

{ A curious thing *happened* yesterday.
{ We *had* a curious thing *happen* yesterday.

{ I am glad, when people *come*.
{ I am glad to *have* people *come*.

Compare : —

{ I am delighted to *have* you *come*.
{ I am delighted to *see* you *here*.

Have is thus originally *passive* in meaning, and only acquires a *causative* meaning when volition is implied. Compare : —

{ I shall *have* him *come*. (= He will *come*.)
{ I will *have* him *come*. (= I will get him to *come*.)

(*a*) **Passive "Have"** : — *Have* is frequently used in the Passive Sense after the verbs *like* and *wish* : —

I wish you *to go* = I wish to *have* you *go*.
I like you *to come* = I like to *have* you *come*.

The Passive *Have* is frequently used after adjectives of emotion [*glad, sorry, pleased, delighted,* etc.], since they do not admit of the infinitive construction. Compare : —

{ I like .... { you *to come*.
{ *to have* you *come*.
{ I am glad *to have* you *come*.

(*b*) **Causative "Have"** : — The transition from the passive to the causative meaning is quite natural.

{ What would you *have* me *do ?*
{ = What would you *like* me *to do ?* [*Passive.*]
{ = What do you *wish* me *to do ?* [*Causative.*]

Have acquires a causative meaning, when volition is implied, in combination with *will* or in the imperative, and thus takes the place of *get*. Compare : —

{ *Have* some one *carry* my luggage to the station.
{ *Get* some one *to carry* my luggage to the station.
{ *I will have* my servant *carry* it for you.
{ *I will get* my servant *to carry* it for you.

EXERCISE : — *Paraphrase "Have," and show whether it is used in a Passive or a Causative sense.*

Do to others as you would *have* others do to you. We often *had* the traveller visit us to taste our gooseberry wine.— *Goldsmith.* I will *have* the players play something like the murder of my father.—*Hamlet.* I don't like to *have* my little brother make me think of a pig. Harry seemed anxious to *have* his elder brother help him bear his trials. Sometimes the children would *have* him stop under a tree, while they picked nuts or berries from the branches. If you will *have* me stay, I will stay.— *Thackeray.* As we would *have* others judge us, so we ought to judge others. Now go at once, and *have* one of them [the doctors] visit your mother. It is not pleasant to *have* your enemy become your chief. I must *have* you attend to the matter at once. You will *have* your father blame you.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 私ハ忙ガシイ時ニ人ニ來ラレルノガ嫌イダ (2) 御到着前ニ家ヲ悉皆掃除サシテ置キマス (3) アナタハ彼ノ病氣ヲ癒シ度クバ入院サセナケレバナラナイ (4) 私ハ人ニ來ラレルヨリハ好キデス (5) 人ニ依テハ人ニ來ラレルノヲ嫌イナモノモアル (6) 學生等ハアノ人ニ校長ニ成ラレルノガ嫌ナノダ (7) アナタハ私ニ辭職シロト云フノナラ辭職致シマス (8) 餘リ勉强シテ病氣ニデモ成ツテ貰ツテハ困ル (9) 何人モ小供ヲ立派ナ人ニ爲度クナイ人ハナイ (10) お前達ヲ學校ヘデモ出シ度イモノダガ (11) 明日ハ大勢ニ來ラレルカラ出ラレナイ

CHAPTER XIII.

Gerundial Infinitives.

The Gerundial Infinitive (or the Infinitive of Purpose) is a Qualifying Infinitive used to qualify —

(*a*) **A Noun** : — Are there any sights *to see* here?
(*b*) **A Verb** : — Let us go *to see* the sights of the town.
(*c*) **An Adjective** : — The town is pretty *to look at*.
(*d*) **An Adverb** : — You are old enough *to go* to school.
(*e*) **A Sentence** : — You are a bad boy *to frighten* a girl.

The Gerundial Infinitive, besides *purpose*, sometimes denotes *cause* or *result* : —

(*a*) **Purpose** : — I went *to see* my old friend.
(*b*) **Cause** : — I wept *to see* him in that condition.
(*c*) **Result** : — He did not live *to see* his native land.

§ 1. Infinitives qualifying Nouns.

When a Concrete Noun is qualified by an Infinitive, the Noun stands to the Infinitive in —

(1) **A Subjective Relation** : — There is no one *to do* it.
(2) **An Objective Relation** : — I have nothing *to do*.

When an Infinitive qualifies an Abstract or a Verbal Noun, the Infinitive stands to the Noun in —

(3) **An Attributive Relation** : — I have a right *to do* so.
(4) **An Appositive Relation** :—I have made a promise *to do* so.

EXERCISE : — *Explain the Relation between the Infinitive and the Qualified Noun.*

I must have some one *to help* me. We must have food *to eat*, clothes *to wear*, and a house *to live in*. If there is no one *to undertake* the work, I am willing to do it myself. Water, water everywhere, Nor any drop *to drink*. — *Coleridge*. He is not the man *to do* such a foolish thing. There are many sights *to see* in Kyôto. House *to let*. This is no time *to quarrel*. I want some book *to read*. I want some one *to read* to me. I have no business *to attend to*. I have no business *to detain* me. I am under a promise *never to drink* wine. I see no danger *to alarm* us. He is not the man *to be disheartened* by a single failure. These are signs *not to be mistaken*. Time *to come*. I have no time *to spare*. I have no time *to do* it. Autumn is the time *to visit* Nikko. Practice is the only way *to learn* a language. I have a right *to control* you. You lack the courage *to do good*. He fulfilled his promise *to be* a second father to the child. I have received an invitation *to pass* the summer at Kamakura.

(1) SUBJECTIVE RELATION.

The Qualified Noun stands in a Subjective Relation to the Qualifying Infinitive in the following and similar cases : —

(*a*) There is no one to do it.

The Indefinite Pronouns *some one*, *any one*, and *no one*, followed by an Infinitive, generally stand in a Subjective Relation to the latter : —

{ I must have *some one to help* me.
{ (= I must have *some one that will help* me.)

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 誰カ學資金ヲ出シテ呉レル人ハナイカ (2) 誰モ仕事ヲ引受ケル者ガナカツタ故私ガ自身ニ遣ツタ (3) 留守中誰カ學校ヲ監督スル人ガ無ケレバナラン (4) 誰モ反對スル者ハ無カツタ

(*b*) He is not the man to do such a thing.

A Common Noun with the Qualitative *The* followed by an Infinitive, stands in a Subjective Relation to the latter : —

{ He is not *the man to do* such a foolish thing.
{ (= He is not *such a man as will do* that.)

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 彼ハ困ツテ居ル友ヲ見捨ル樣ナ人デハナイ (2) 彼ハ一度ノ失敗ニ屈スル樣ナ人デハナイ (3) アレハ虛言ナドヲ云フ樣ナ男デハナイ (4) 彼ハ約束ヲ破ル樣ナ人間デハナイ

(*c*) He was the first man to do it.

A Noun qualified by an Ordinal Numeral when followed by a Relative Clause, may have the latter condensed into an Infinitive : —

Little Jane was the first { *that died.* / *to die.* }

The next { *that died* / *to die* } was Robert.

George was the last { *that died.* / *to die.* }

Note : — Compare the uses of *first* (*adv.*) and *the first* (*adj.*) : —

{ He *first* went to America, and *then* to Europe.
{ He was *the first* man to go to America, and his brother was *the next* to go.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 一番先キニ米國ヘ行ツタ日本人ハ誰デアツタカ (2) 世界中第一ニ開ケタ國ハ埃及デアル (3) 彼ハ何時モ一番先ニ來テ一番仕舞ニ歸ル (4) 始メテ日本ニ來タ外國人ハ葡萄牙人デアツタ (5) 船ガ沈沒スル時一番後ニ船ヲ去ルモノハ船長デアル (6) Washington ガ第一番ニ大統領ニ選マレ次ニ選マレタノハ John Adams デアツタ

(*d*) What is the first thing to be done?

A Noun qualified by a Passive Infinitive naturally stands in a Subjective Relation to the latter : —

When a child is born, the first thing { *that must be done* / *to .....be done* } is to give it a name.

Passive Infinitive as Adjective : — A Passive Infinitive qualifying a Noun, either *attributively* or *predicatively*, generally has a potential meaning : —

Something **to be done** = { **that may be done.** / **that can be done.** / **that must be done.** }

What is *to be done?* = What *can, may,* or *must be done?*
There is nothing *to be done.* = That *can, may,* or *must be done.*

A Passive Infinitive qualifying a Noun with a Potential Meaning is equivalent to a Latin Adjective ending in **-able** or **-ible** : —

Not a soul was *to be seen* (= *visible*).
Not a voice was *to be heard* (= *audible*).
The shock was hardly *to be felt* (= *perceptible*).

Idioms : —

(*a*) ***To be done*** = *possible, practicable.*
(*b*) ***To be had*** = *obtainable.*
(*c*) ***To be found*** (***seen, met with***) = *discoverable.*
(*d*) ***To be heard of*** = *ascertainable.*
(*e*) ***Not to be thought of*** = *inconceivable.*

EXERCISE (*a*) : — *Change into Passive Infinitives.*

Nothing was *visible* but sea and sky. Time once lost is *irrecoverable.* These are *unmistakable* signs. The book is not *obtainable* in Tokyo. These artificial flowers are *indistinguishable* from natural ones. The two works are *incomparable.* Practice is *indispensable* in learning a language. Death is *inevitable.* Such a success is hardly *expectable.* His condition is *pitiable.* His success is *owing* to good luck. It is *incomprehensible* how such a thing is *possible.* His death at the commencement of so hopeful a career is very *lamentable.* Many hardships *must be endured.*

EXERCISE (*b*) : — *Change into Adjectives.*

His failure is very much *to be regretted.* It is *to be attributed* to his carelessness. That is *not to be done.* Formerly theft was a crime *to be punished* with death. Such folly is *not to be excused* in a man of his years. He embraced her with a joy *not to be described.* The obstacle is *not to be overcome.* Such hardships are *not to be borne.* The news is *not to be credited.* Such a success is *not to be thought of.* His condition is *to be pitied.* The fact is *not to be denied.* The offence is *not to be pardoned.* The vibration caused by the engine is *to be felt* at the masthead.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 彼ノ死ハ國家ノ爲メニ惜ム可シ (2) 此品ハ日本デハ得ラレナイ (3) アノ樣ナ成効ハ稀ニ見ル處デアル (4) 此本トアノ本トハ較ベモノニ成ラヌ (5) 其樣ナ失策ハ彼ノ如キ經驗家ニ在リテハ許シ難イ (6) 此報知ハ信ジ難イ (7) 彼ハ何處ニモ居ラナイ (8) 其樣ナ成効ハ思ヒモ依ラヌ事ダ (9) 彼ノ事ハ學校ヘ行ケバ何時デモ分カリマス (10) 不漁ノ爲メ魚類ガナカツタ (11) 此本ハ東京ニアリマスカ

(2) OBJECTIVE RELATION.

The Qualified Noun stands in an Objective Relation to the Qualifying Infinitive in such expressions as —

Have you *anything to do?* No, I have *nothing to do.* Is there *anything to drink?* There is *something to eat,* but *nothing to drink.* I should like *some book to read.* Are there any *sights to see* here? I have no *time to spare.* There is no *time to lose.* There is *little to do* and *much to get. Apartments to let. Books to sell. Water to drink.*

Note 1 : — This apparent use of the Active Infinitive in a Passive Sense arises from the confusion of two Anglo-Saxon forms, the Infinitive and the Gerundial : —

House *to let*.....signifies { not — house *to be let,*— / but — house *for letting.*
Water *to drink*....signifies { not — water *to be drunk,*— / but — water *for drinking.*

Thus the use of the active form in an apparently passive sense is quite correct ; but the over-anxiety of some people for grammatical correctness has caused the passive form to be used side by side with the active form : —

House *to let* — house *to be let.*
There is no time *to lose* — not a moment *to be lost.*

The Active Form is to be preferred in most cases, where a potential meaning is not implied. Compare : —

{ Sights *to see*..... = sight *for seeing.*
{ Things *to be seen* = things *that can be seen.*

Note 2 : — If the Infinitive in this case is Intransitive, it must be followed by a Preposition : —

We must have *food to eat, clothes to wear,* and *a house to live in.*
They gave us *nothing to eat,* and not even *a little straw to lie down upon.*

The Qualified Noun here stands in an Objective Relation to the Preposition. So it is wrong to say — a house *to live,* a chair *to sit,* a bed *to lie,* etc. The Infinitive here may be preceded by a Preposition and a Relative Pronoun : —

In old times, before the white men came to this country, the Indians had only bows and arrows *with which to hunt.*

Therefore an Intransitive Infinitive qualifying a Noun in an Objective Relation admits of two constructions : —

A house { **to live in.** / **in which to live.**

Idioms : —

(*a*) Somebody ***to blame*** = *blamable.*
Who is *to blame* for the accident?
Nobody is *to blame* for it.

(*b*) Something ***to spare*** = *more than enough.*
I have no money *to spare.*
You have enough and *to spare.*

(*c*) Something ***to speak of*** = *worth mentioning.*
He has accomplished nothing *to speak of.*
The house is large, but there is no garden *to speak of.*

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 何カ食フ物ガアルカ (2) 食フ物モ飲ム物モ何モ無イ (3) 此處ニハ何カ見ル物ガアルカ (4) 何ニモ見ル物トテハ無イ (5) 私ハ本ヲ買フ金ガ入ル (6) 手ヲ洗フ水ガ欲シイ (7) 今度ノ失敗ハ我等ノ罪デハナイ (8) ソレナラ誰ガ悪イノカ (9) 今御閑暇デスカ (10) 今ハ急ガシイガ午後ニナレバ暇デス (11) アノ人ハ財產ト云フ程ノモノモナイ (12) 此邊ハ河ハ多イケレモ飲料水ハ更ニ無イ (13) アノ人ハ生活スル丈ケノ收入ガ無イ (14) アノ家ニハ坐ハル椅子モ無イ (15) アノ子ハ父母モナク又便リニ成ル親戚モナイ

(3) ATTRIBUTIVE RELATION.

An Infinitive qualifying an Abstract Noun stands in an Attributive or Adjective Relation to it : —

A way **to do** anything = **of doing** it.
A right **to do** anything = **of doing** it.
A time **to do** anything = **for doing** it.

Autumn is the best *time to visit* Nikko. What is the best *way to learn* a language? Practice is the only *way to do* it. There is no other *way to learn* a language. He has no *right to control* us. What *business* has he *to be* here? I have *the honour to inform* you that.....

Note : — An Abstract Noun with the Qualitative *The* and qualified by an Attributive Infinitive, is equivalent to an adjective or an adverb : —

He had *the kindness to show* me the way.
He was *so kind as to show* me the way.
He.....*kindly*.....*showed* me the way.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 松島ヘ行クノニ何時ガ一番宜イカ (2) 幸福ノ道ハ唯一ツアル即チ滿足デアル (3) お前ハ此事ニ付イテハ口ヲ出ス權利ガナイ (4) 或人ハ善ヲ行フ勇氣ガ無イ (5) 彼女ハ深切ニモ病氣中始終看護シテ呉レタ (6) 私ハ愚ニモアンナ人ヲ信用シタ (7) 私ハ幸ニモ初メニ遣ツタ時成効シタ (8) 其男ハ厚面シクモ金ヲ呉レロト云ツタ (9) 彼ハ無禮ニモ此ンナ手紙ヲ寄コシタ (10) 彼ハ不幸ニモ幼少ノ時ニ兩親ヲ亡クナシタ (11) 幸ヒニ彼ガ在宅デアツタ

(4) APPOSITIVE RELATION.

An Infinitive qualifying a Verbal Noun [*wish, desire, promise, agreement, consent, refusal, attempt, endeavour, order, advice,* etc.]stands in an Appositive or Complementary Relation to it : —

I am under a promise *to do so.*
I am under a promise *that I will do so.*
I have no wish *to be* rich.
I do not wish *to be* rich.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 私ハ決シテ酒ヲ飲マヌト云フ約束ヲシタ (2) 三千圓ニテ家ヲ建テル契約ヲシタ (3) 彼ハ醫者ガ外出ヲスルナト云フノニ其命ニ背イタ (4) 彼ハ金ヲ先月返スト云フテ違約シタ

EXERCISE : — *Use Gerundial Infinitives for the expressions marked.*

I am under a promise *that I will never be* in debt. Is there no one *who will undertake* the work? These are signs *that can not be mistaken.* He fulfilled his promise *that he would be* a second father to the child. He gave me advice *how I should behave* on such occasions. He always *comes* first, and *goes away* last. He is not *such* a man *as will desert* a friend in need. Johnson was not *such* a man *as would endure* such treatment. Egypt was the first country *that became civilized.* The Portuguese were the first Europeans *that came* to Japan. The first object *that greets* the eye on nearing the coast is Mt. Fuji. I was the last man *that saw* him alive. He committed a folly *that could not be excused* in a man of his years. He has no one *on whom he can depend.* I have no time *that I can spare.* He was so imprudent *that he ran* into debt. He was *so* unfortunate *that he was born* to rank and wealth. He persisted in saying *that he could out comply* with my request.

§ 2. Infinitives qualifying Verbs.

A Infinitive qualifying a Verb may denote *Purpose*, *Cause*, or *Result*.

(1) INFINITIVE OF PURPOSE.

The Infinitive of Purpose may be used after any verb : —

(*a*) **Active** : — They *sent* him *to buy* meat and wine.
(*b*) **Passive** : — He *was sent to buy* meat and wine.
(*c*) **Intransitive** : — He *went to buy* meat and wine.

But most frequently after Intransitive Verbs of Motion : —

Come *to see* me.
I am going *to see* a friend.
I have been *to see* the cherry-blossoms.

Note 1 : — The phrase "**in order**" is placed before the Infinitive of Purpose, in order to emphasize the notion of purpose, and to prevent ambiguity when other words (especially nouns) intervene : —

We go to school *in order to learn.*
He seeks for wealth *in order to obtain* power.
I threw myself on the grass *in order to rest myself.*

Compare : —

{ I wanted money *to buy* some books *with.*
{ I borrowed money *in order to buy* some books.

Note 2 : — The Infinitive of Purpose is equivalent to a Final Clause (*in order that.....may* or *might*). The Clause must be made use of when the subject changes.

He works hard { *to get.....* / *that he may get* } his own living.

Compare : —

{ He works hard *in order to support* his family.
{ He works hard *in order that* his family *may* live in comfort.

Note 3 : — The Infinitive of Purpose is frequently replaced by the preposition **for**, when the sense is easily supplied by the context. This is the case after such verbs as *go, come, send, call, write,* etc. Paraphrase *for* into the Infinitive : —

I am going out *for* a walk. He has gone home *for* his dinner. You must go home *for* your book. Send *for* the doctor. Let me go *for* the doctor. Have you come *for* my brother? He will call *for* the articles. To be kept till called *for.* Shall I send *for* a copy? I will write *for* one.

Compare : —

{ Are you going *for* a walk?
{ No, I am going *to see* a friend.

Note 4 : — After the verbs *go* and *try*, the preposition *to* is sometimes replaced by **and**, or entirely suppressed : —

I will *try and do* my best.
Go and see what is the matter.
I was resolved to *go seek* my fortune.

Besides Purpose, an Infinitive qualifying a Verb may denote *Cause* or *Result* : —

(2) **INFINITIVE OF CAUSE** : — An Infinitive denotes *Cause* or *Occasion* after Verbs of Emotion [*rejoice, grieve, regret, weep, laugh, smile,* etc.]. Paraphrase the Infinitives : —

I rejoiced *to hear* of your success. I grieved *to learn* of your conduct. I wept *to see* him in this condition. I regret *to say* that I am not in a position to oblige you. I could not but smile *to hear* her talk in such lofty strain.—*Goldsmith.*

(3) **INFINITIVE OF RESULT** : — An Infinitive is used to denote *Result* after such verbs as *live, grow up, awake,* etc. ; also with the adverbs *only, never,* etc. : —

He lived *to see* (= *till he saw*) his son a great man.
He grew up *to be* (= *and became*) a fine youth.
He awoke *to find* (= *and found*) himself famous.
I worked hard *only to fail* (= *but failed*) at last.
Byron left his native land *never to return* (= *and never returned*).

EXERCISE : — *Change the Verbs marked into Infinitives.*

Despotic governments resemble savages who cut down trees *that they may get* at the fruit A railing ought to be put up here, *that accidents may be prevented. If we wish to love* mankind, we must not expect too much of them. I could not but laugh *at seeing* such a strange sight. Few people live *till they are* a hundred years old. I fear I shall not live *till I can see* the success of my plan. You will *see* many other battles while you live. I awoke one morning and *found* myself poorer than the poorest clerk in the house. They escaped the sword, but *perished* by famine. He escaped the gallows, but *was drowned.* He went to Formosa, but *died* soon after his arrival. He sank beneath the waves, and never *rose* again. He woke up, and *found* that he was lying on the floor.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 御兄様ハ散歩ニ御出デスカ (2) 馬デ出マシタ (3) 私ハ飯ヲ食ヒニ家ヘ行クノダ (4) 醫者ヲ呼ビニ遣リマセウカ (5) 私ガ醫者ヲ呼ンデ來ヨウ (6) 何時藥ヲ取リニ來マセウカ (7) 本ヲ一部取ツテ見マセウカ (8) 手紙ヲ遣ツテ取リ寄セマセウ (9) 彼ガ死ンダカト思フタ處ガ生キテ居ツタノデ皆悦ンダ (10) 百迄生キル人ハ少ナイ (11) 其子ガ生長シテ善イ若者ニ成ツタ (12) 私ハ生キテ故郷ヘ歸ルコトガ出來マイ (13) 目ヲ明イテ見タラバ寢臺カラ落チテ床ニ臥テ居ツタ (14) 晝夜働ライテ遂失敗ニ歸シタ (15) 來テ見レバ最ウ遲カツタ

§ 3. Infinitives qualifying Adjectives.

An Infinitive qualifying an Adjective denotes *Purpose*, *Cause*, or *Respect* (*in what respect?*) : —

(1) **INFINITIVE OF PURPOSE** : — The Infinitive denotes *Purpose* after the following adjectives : —

(*a*) **Good** : — Is this water *good to drink?*
Fit : — This water is *not fit to be drunk.*

(*b*) **Worthy** : — He is *worthy to fill* the post.
Unworthy : — She is *unworthy to be* his partner.

(*c*) **Able** : — He is *able to understand* English.
Unable : — But he is *unable to speak* it.

(*d*) **Easy** : — English is *easy to understand.*
Difficult : — But it is *difficult to master.*
Hard : — He is not *hard to please ;* he is *easy to deal with.*

(*e*) **Ready** : — I am *ready to undertake* any work.
Willing : — I am *willing to help* you.

(*f*) **Eager** : — The children are *eager to go* to the festival.
Desirous : — He is *desirous to secure* the position.
Anxious : — He is *anxious to know* the result.
Curious : — I am *curious to hear* the story.

(*g*) **Pretty** : — The cottages are *pretty to look at.*
Beautiful : — The scenery is *beautiful to behold.*
Etc. *etc.*

Note : — Compare the use of the Active and Passive Forms.
Such men are *hard to find.*
Such men are *hardly to be found.*
The inscription is *hard to trace.*
The inscription is *hardly to be traced.*

(2) **INFINITIVE OF CAUSE** : — The Infinitive denotes *Cause* or *Occasion* after Adjectives of Emotion [*glad, sorry, pleased, delighted, happy, surprised*, etc.] Paraphrase the Infinitives : —

I am glad *to see* you, but sorry *to see* you here. I was surprised *to hear* the news. My parent will be delighted *to see* you.

Note : — The Infinitive in the following constructions imply conditions : —

I should be glad *to have* the position.
I should be sorry *to stand* in your way.
I should be happy *to be* of service to you.

(3) **INFINITIVE OF RESPECT** : — The Infinitive denotes *Respect* (*in what respect?*) after the following Adjectives : —

(*a*) **Quick** : — He is *quick to see* the faults of others.
Slow : — He is *slow to sympathize* with others.

(*b*) **Sure** : — Be *sure not to forget.*
Certain : — He is *certain to succeed.*
Likely : — The weather is *likely to be* fine.

Note : —The Infinitive Construction with the adjectives *sure, certain*, and *likely*, takes the place of the Future Tense : —

I am sure that *you will succeed.*
You are sure.....to succeed.
I am certain that *he will fail.*
He is certain.....to fail.
It is likely that *he will recover.*
He is likely.....to recover.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 此水ハ飲マレマスカ (2) 此動物ノ肉ハ食フニ宜シ (3) 此ざまデハ人前ニ出ラレナイ (4) 英語ハ入リ易クシテ極メ難イ (5) 此詩ハ分リ憎イ (6) アノ人ノ文章ハ分リ易イ (7) 彼ハ六カシイ人間デハナイ (8) 彼ハ付合易イ人間ダ (9) 私ハ何時デモ金ヲ返スノハ宜シイ (10) 漢字ハ學ブニ困難デアル (11) 彼ハ學位ヲ得ルコトヲ望ンデ居ル (12) 日本ノ學生ハ熱心ニ學ビタガル (13) 私ハ試驗ノ成績ガ早ク聞キタイ (14) 其ノ様ナ人ハ探シテモ容易ニ無イ (15) 御面倒ヲ掛ケテ濟マナイ (16) 御面倒ヲ掛ケテハ濟イナイカラ (17) 困難ヲ免レテ先ヅ有難イ (18) 此困難ヲ免レタナラ實ニ有難イガ (19) 君ハ勉强スレバ屹度成効シマス (20) 彼ハ今度ハ成効シソウモナイ

§ 4. Infinitives qualifying Adverbs.

The Infinitive is used to qualify the adverbs *too* and *enough*; the adverb *so* must be followed by *as* : —

(*a*) **Too** : — { She is *too* young *to marry*. / (= She is *so* young *that she can not marry*.)

(*b*) **Enough** : — { She is young *enough to marry*. / (= She is *so* young *that she can marry*.)

(*c*) **So...as** : — { She is *so* young *as to look* quite a child. / (=She is *so* young *that she looks* quite a child.)

Note 1 : — *Too* or *Enough* followed by the Infinitive may be paraphrased in terms of *so.....as*, which in turn may be regarded as a condensed form of the clause of consequence introduced by *so.....that* :—

{ She is *too* old *to marry*. / She is *so* old *as to be unable to marry*. / She is *so* old *that she can not marry*.

{ She is young *enough to marry*. / She is *so* young *as to be able to marry*. / She is *so* young *that she can marry*.

Note 2 : — An Adjective qualified by "*enough to*" or "*so.....as to*" is equivalent to an Abstract Noun with the Qualitative *The* :—

{ Will you be *good enough to show* me the way? / Will you be *so good as to show* me the way? / Will you have *the goodness to show* me the way?

Note 3 : — "*So.....as*" is omitted with some adjectives : —

Be (*so*) careful (*as*) *not to take cold*.

Take care (*so as*) *not to give offence*.

EXERCISE : — *Change the Verbs marked into Infinitives.*

He was so imprudent that he *ran* into debt. I was so prudent that I *kept* out of debt. He spoke so eloquently that he *moved* us to tears. He is so ill that he *can not be removed*. Her hair was so long that it *swept* the floor. He is so proud that he *will not acknowledge* that he is related to me. He is so stupid that he *can not learn* anything. He is so mean that he *will not buy*, and so honest that he *can not steal*. I got up early so that I *might be* in time. The force was not so strong that it *could maintain* order. The sight was so dreadful that it *could not be seen* twice. Nothing is so difficult that it *can not be conquered* by perseverance. He spoke in such a low voice that he *could not be heard* at the farther end of the room. It is never so late that one *can not mend*.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 彼ハ愚鈍デ何モ覚エナイ (2) 夜ガ真暗デ一寸先モ見エナカツタ (3) 私ハ一番汽車ニ間ニ合フ様ニト早ク起キタ (4) 話ガ好過ギテ本當ラシクナイ (5) 彼ハ怖ガツテ物モ言ヘナイ (6) 日中ハ暑クテ外出ガ出來ナイ (7) 彼ハ傲慢デ人ニ物チモ尋子ナイ (8) 私ハ遲クテ汽車ニ乘レナカツタ (9) 私ハ遲レテ汽車ニ乘リ損フタ (10) 此事實ハ明白デ證據ハ入ラヌ (11) お前ハ未ダ若イカラ此ノ樣ナ事ハ分ラナイ (12) 問題ガ六ケ敷ツテ誰モ出來ナカツタ (13) 彼ハ能ク出來テ私ハ追ツ付イテ行ケナイ (14) 造花ガ上手ニ出來テ居ルノデ本當ノ花ト區別ガ出來ナイ

§ 5. Infinitives qualifying Whole Sentences.

Qualifying Infinitives which do not qualify single words either qualify the Predicate only or the Whole Sentence : —

(1) **INFINITIVES QUALIFYING THE PREDICATE** : — These may be regarded as the condensed form of certain kinds of clauses : —

(*a*) I should be happy **to be** of service to you.

Conditional clauses may be condensed into Infinitives qualifying the predicate : —

I should be happy { *if I could be* of service to you. / *to.....be* of service to you.

(*b*) You are a bad boy **to frighten** a girl.

Clauses denoting *Surprise* and *Cause of Blame* (*that.....should.....*) are regularly condensed into Infinitives qualifying the Predicate : —

You are a bad boy { *that you should frighten* a girl. / *to ..... frighten* a girl.

(*c*) It is very kind of you **to say** so.

When the adjectives *kind, wise, foolish*, etc., are used in reference to particular acts, they have an idiomatic construction with the preposition *of* and the Infinitive, which may be regarded as a contraction of the clause "*that..... should...*"

It is very kind { *that you should say* so. / *of you.....to say* so.

(2) **ABSOLUTE INFINITIVES**: — The Infinitive is sometimes used to introduce parenthetical adverbial phrases qualifying the whole sentence. An Infinitive so used is called absolute, because it is used without any particular relation to any other word in the sentence — that is, neither as subject, object, or complement, nor to qualify any particular word. [Compare "Absolute Participles." (Pages 526, 527)]

The Absolute Infinitive is an elliptical construction, and is generally of a *Conditional* or *Concessive* meaning. Supply ellipses : —

To look at the drops of water on the grass, you would think it had rained during the night. *To hear* him talk, one would think he knew everything. *To add* to our discomfort, hunger began to make itself felt. She is, *to use a common expression*, one too many for him. *To tell the truth*, I am tired of being always wise. *To be frank with you*, I do not care much for your project. *To do him justice*, he was not a bad man at heart. But *to go on with my story*. *To return to my subject*. *To be short*, they consider themselves the height of good company. *To make a long story short*, he wanted money, and tried to get it without working for it. *To conclude*, I will say that an exhaustive study of the subject is impossible.

Idioms : —

(*a*) ***So to speak*** = *as it were.*
(*b*) ***Not to say*** = *one might almost say, if not.*
(*c*) ***Not to speak of*** / ***To say nothing of*** = *setting apart : much less ; besides.*
(*d*) ***To say the least of it*** = *at best.*
(*e*) ***To be sure*** = *certainly ; of course.*
(*f*) ***To begin with*** = *in the first place.*
(*g*) ***To wit*** = *namely, that is to say.*

Note 1 : — Certain Adjectives of *Emotion* followed by the Infinitive are used parenthetically as adverbial phrases : —

(*a*) ***Sad to say*** : — *Sad to say*, he grew more and more addicted to drinking and gambling.
(*b*) ***Strange to say*** : — But, *strange to say*, the fall did not kill her.
(*c*) ***Curious to relate*** : — *Curious to relate*, the giraffe has no voice.

Etc. *etc.*

Note 2 : — The Infinitive is sometimes used absolutely in exclamative expressions : —

Poor fellow ! *to suppose* that he could be pardoned !
To think that it should have come to this !
To think what diligence he must have used !

EXERCISE : — *Change into Infinitives or Infinitive Phrases.*

What has he done, *that he should deserve such punishment ?* I should be sorry, *if I were to stand in the way of your advancement*. *If you wish to master a language*, you must constantly practise it. What would I not give, *if I could see you happy ?* I thought it would be uncivil, *if I were to refuse the favour*. You will do well *if you consider the matter well*. *If one were to see you do it*, one would think it was difficult. He must be a great man, indeed, *if he is pronounced such by such a Timon*. I must have snored very loud, *if I was heard in your room*. He is a wise fool, *as it were*. They all regard him with respect, *if I may not say* awe. *It is true* the method is a good one, but it is not easy to put in practise. *If I may speak without reserve*, I do not regret his departure. *Though I did my best*, I could not make the matter clear.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 鶏チ雉子ト間違ヒお儲ケニ其チ外ストハ随分名人ダ子 (2) アンナ人チ信用スルトハ如何シタ馬鹿ダ (3) 害モナイ動物チいぢメテ悪イ子ダ (4) 彼ハ私ノコチ其ンナ事チ云フトハ人ガ悪イ (5) お前ハ此様ナ明ラカナ間違チ見落ストハ如何シタ間抜ダ (6) 子供チ學校ヘモ遣レヌトハ餘程困ッテ居ルニ違ヒナイ (7) 日曜ニモ仕事チ休メヌトハ餘程繁忙シイト見エル (8) 實チ云ヘバアノ人ノ云ッテ居ル事ハ何ノ事カ少シモ分ラナイ (9) 贅澤ハ扨テ置イテ日用品ニモ缺乏シテ居ル (10) 俸給ハ別ニシテ著述ノ方カラ大分收入ガアル (11) 其ハ極善ク云フタ處デ悪イ癖ダ (12) アノ人ノ英語チ話スノチ聞ク ト西洋人カト思フ (13) 正直ニ云ヘバ彼ハ先ヅ馬鹿者ダ (14) アノ人ガ息子ノ話チスルノチ聞ク ト如何ンナ立派ナ人カト思フ (15) 彼ハ非常ナ節儉家デ吝嗇ト云ッテ宜イ位ダ (16) 彼ハ馬車處カ人力ニモ乘ラナイ (17) 公平ニ云ヘバ彼ニハ取リ所ノ無イ譯デモナイ

CHAPTER XIV.

Participles.

A Participle is a Double Part of Speech — Verb and Adjective combined — and always relates to a Noun.

A Participle, not being a finite verb, can not have a Grammatical Subject. but always has a Sense-Subject in the Noun to which it relates. Point out the Sense-Subject of the Participle in the three following uses : —

(*a*) I saw a man *sitting* at the window.
(*b*) The man was *sitting* at the window.
(*c*) The man, *rising* from his seat, came toward me.

§ 1. Forms of the Participle.

There are two Simple Participles : —

I. **Present Participle** : — **Being, doing, going,** *etc.*
II. **Past Participle** : — **Been, done, gone,** *etc.*

Transitive Verbs have *six* participial forms; Intransitive, *four* : —

	Trans. : **To Do**		Intr. : **To Go**
	Active.	*Passive.*	
Present.	**Doing**	**Being done**†	**Going**
Past.	(*Wanting.*)*	**Done***	**Gone**
Perfect.	**Having done**†	**Having been done**†	**Having gone**†
Prog. Perf.	**Having been doing**†	(*Wanting.*)	**Having been going**†

Note 1 : — The Past Participle of some Transitive Verbs (*) is used in an Active Sense, as — a *learned* man, a *drunken* fellow, etc. [See Pages 509—513.]

Note 2 : — The compound forms with *having* and *being* (†) are only used in the Participial Construction. [See Pages 523— 526.]

§ 2. Uses of the Participle.

The Participle has three uses : —

I. **Participle as Adjective** : — A Participle immediately joined to a Noun as an Adjective is always a Condensed Relative Clause : —

I saw a man (*who was*) *writing* at the desk.
I received a letter (*which was*) *written* in English.

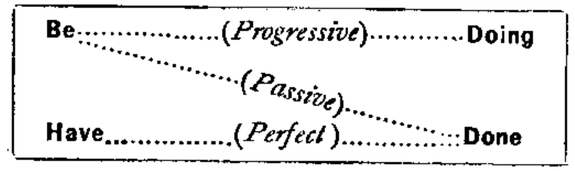
Note : — A Participial Adjective which precedes its Noun, may also be looked upon as a Condensed Relative Clause : —

An *interesting* book = a book *that interests.*
An *interested* adviser = an adviser *who is interested.*

II. **Participle as Complement** : — The Participle, being a sort of adjective, is naturally used as the complement of the verb *be*, and such incomplete verbs as take its place : —

He is *writing.* / He sits *writing.* / You will find him *writing.*
It is *written.* / It stands *written.* / I have seen it *written.*

Note : — A Participle may form part of a Finite Verb as complement of the incomplete verb *be*, and its transitive counterpart *have*. These combinations are typical of all combinations of incomplete verbs and participial complements : —



III. **Participial Construction** : — The Participle is here used t o introduce a sentence in lieu of a Clause : —

Writing something on a piece of paper, he gave it to me.
(= He *wrote* something, on a piece of paper, *and*.....)
Written in an easy style, the book is well adapted for beginners. (*As it is written* in an easy style,.....)

Note : — The Participle in this construction is usually parsed as an adjective qualifying the subject of the sentence, but it really combines the natures of *verb* and *conjunction*. It is only in this construction that the compound forms are used : —

The moon *having risen*, we put out the light.
The book, *being written* in an easy style, is well adapted for beginners.

§ 3. The Participle as Adjective.

The Present and Past Participles are joined to Nouns as Adjectives; the Present Participle representing an Active Verb, and the Past Participle a Passive Verb : —

I. **Present Participle** : — I saw a man *sitting* at the window.
II. **Past Participle** : — I saw a man *seated* at the window.

(1) **Participles and Participial Adjectives** : — *Participles used as Adjectives* must be distinguished from *Participial Adjectives*, which are true adecjtives derived from participles : —

Participles.	Participial Adjectives.
Men *living* in towns.	*Living* men.
Birds *singing* in a tree.	*Singing* birds.
A letter *written* in English.	*Written* examination.

A **Participle** { (*a*) denotes a *Temporary State ;* (*b*) follows its Noun ; (*c*) may take any Verbal Adjunct.

A **Participial Adjective** { (*a*) denotes a *Permanent Quality ;* (*b*) precedes its Noun ; (*c*) some admit of Comparison, as —

{ This is a very *interesting* book.
I never read a *more interesting* book.
This is the *most interesting* book I ever read.

(2) **Participles as Nouns** : — Some Participles, Present or Past, preceded by the Collective *The*, are used as nouns in a collective sense : —

The sleeping and *the dead* are but as pictures.
The plain was covered with *the dead* and *the dying*.

Note 1 : — Participles are occasionally used as SingularNouns :—
The deceased has made a will.
That lady is *his intended* (or *his betrothed*).
The real culprit having confessed, *the accused* was acquitted.

Note 2 : — Some Past Participles are used as the object of the preposition *for :* —
We gave ourselves up *for lost*.
They left him *for dead* on the battle-field.
I took it *for granted* that you would consent.

I. PRESENT PARTICIPLES AS ADJECTIVES.

The Present Participle of any verb may be used as Adjective, and so used represents two verbal forms : —

{ Men *living* (= who *live*) in towns.
Men *living* (= who *are living*) at present.

There are a great number of Present Participles which have become True Adjectives : —

The *knowing* one is the silliest fellow under the sun.
He is a kind, *obliging* man.
They were the *leading* men of the age.

Other examples : — The *coming* examination ; the *preceding* or the *following* examples ; *failing* strength ; a *dying* man ; a *standing* joke ; a *striking* appearance ; a *forbidding* countenance ; a *ruling* passion, the *rising* or the *setting* sun ; *interesting* or *amusing* stories ; *winning* ways ; *engaging* manners ; *charming* scenery; the *wanting* volume ; the *missing* papers, etc., etc.

Note : — The following participles have so far become adjectives as to govern prepositions : —
He is *wanting* (or *lacking*) *in* perseverance.
He is *saving of* his money — *sparing of* praise.
This was the only battle *deserving of* the name.

II. PAST PARTICIPLES AS ADJECTIVES.

Some Verbs have two Past-Participial Forms, Regular and Irregular, of which the latter is used as Attributive Adjective : —

Laded *or* **laden.**	Melted *or* **molten.**	Bound *or* **bounden.**
Shaped *or* **shapen.**	Sheared *or* **shorn.**	Drunk *or* **drunken.**
Graved *or* **graven.**	Rotted *or* **rotten.**	Sunk *or* **sunken.**
Shaved *or* **shaven.**	Got *or* **gotten.**	Shrunk *or* **shrunken.**
Hewed *or* **hewn.**	Cleft *or* **cloven.**	Struck *or* **stricken.**
Mowed *or* **mown.**	Swelled *or* **swollen.**	Worked *or* **wrought.**

Examples : — A *laden* ship ; a mis-*shapen* creature ; a *molten* or a *graven* image ; a close-*shaven* lawn ; ill-*gotten* wealth ; *swollen* legs ; *sunken* eyes ; a *shrunken* stream ; *rotten* eggs ; a *shorn* lamb ; *hewn* or *sawn* timber ; new-*mown* hay ; a *stricken* deer ; *cloven* hoofs ; one's *bounden* duty ; *wrought* iron, *etc., etc.*

(1) **TRANSITIVE VERBS** : — The Past Participle of any Transitive Verb many be used Adjectively in a Passive sense : —

A novel ***written*** (= *which was written*) by Bakin.
A picture ***painted*** (= *which was painted*) by Hokusai.

Past Participles of Transitive Verbs are used as True Adjectives mostly in a Passive Sense, a few in an Active Sense : —

(*a*) **Passive Sense** : — A *distinguished* officer ; a *wounded* soldier ; a *ruined* man ; *educated* women ; a *depraved* character ; the *spoken* and the *written* language ; an *overcast* sky ; *driven* snow ; a *lighted* candle ; *boiled* rice ; a *broken* cup ; *repeated* efforts, *etc., etc.*

(*b*) **Active Sense** : — A *learned* man ; a well-*read* man ; a *drunken* fellow ; a *professed* Christian ; a *sworn* friend or enemy.

Note 1 : — A Compound Transitive Verb forms a compound passive participle : — *Worn-out* shoes ; the long *wished-for* day, *etc., etc.*

Note 2 : — A Transitive Verb in the Negative forms a Passive Participle with the prefix **-un** : — An *unexpected* success ; *unheard-of* conduct ; *unwritten* laws ; *undeserved* praise, *etc., etc.*

(2) **INTRANSITIVE VERBS** : — The Past Participles of Intransitive Verbs are not used adjectively, except a few which are sanctioned by usage. For instance, we never say —

The man *gone* [for — *who has gone*] to America.
The guest *departed* [for — *who departed*] just now.

Those sanctioned by usage are very few, of which the following are common examples : —

A Daniel ***come*** to judgment ! — *Shakespeare.*
Who are you ? — It is your aunt ***come*** to see you.
I have met a gentleman just ***returned*** from abroad.
He is a man ***descended*** from illustrious ancestors.

Past Participles of Intransitive Verbs, however, are many of them used as Participial Adjectives to denote *State* or *Quality* : —

(*a*) **State** : — *Past* or *bygone* times ; a *dead* man ; a *deceased* parent ; a *departed* soul ; *grown-up* children ; a *retired* officer ; a *fallen* angel ; a *returned* convict ; a *travelled* man ; a *passed* candidate ; a *withered* tree ; a *faded* rose ; a *rotten* egg ; a *decayed* tooth ; an *expired* ticket ; *swollen* legs ; a *sunken* rock ; a *shrunken* stream, *etc., etc.*

(*b*) **Quality** : — A well-*behaved* child ; a fair-*spoken* or out-*spoken* man ; a *staid* man ; a man of *retired* manners, *etc., etc.*

Note : — This use of the Past Participle to denote the possession of quality has given rise to a sort of False Participial Adjectives denoting possession, which are formed from nouns by adding **-ed** : — A noble-*minded*, kind-*hearted*, hot-*headed*, good-*natured*, smooth-*tongued* man ; a long-*tailed* or long-*armed* monkey ; a red-*coloured* rose ; a *winged* insect ; a three-*legged* stool ; a double-*edged* or two-*handed* sword ; high-*heeled* or thick-*soled* boots ; a *landed* proprietor, *etc., etc.*

Exercise : — *Change the Relative Clauses into Participial Phrases, if possible.*

(α) A picture *that represented a waterfall.* The comet *which was seen* last year. The language *which is spoken in Switzerland.* Water *which is frozen.* An island *which is not inhabited.* What is the name of the student *who has gone to America ?* Laws *that are not written.* People *who live in towns* do not know the pleasures of the country. Praise *which is not deserved* is satire in disguise.

(β) They perpetrated atrocities *such as had never been heard of.* She mourned for the child *whom she had lost.* A man *who has travelled* has a right to tell lies Who was the man *that called in my absence ?* He brought a lamp *which was broken.* He is so fat that a chair *which is of a common size* can not contain him. A man *who has a hot temper* is liable to failure. A vessel *that is cracked* often lasts the longest. A house *which has two stories.* A man *who has one eye.* Animals *which have warm blood.*

(γ) Time *that is lost* can not be regained. Time *that is once lost* is not to be recovered. Fruit *that is stolen* tastes sweet. History is philosophy *that teaches by examples.* I shall postpone all cases *that require care.* I postponed all cases *that required care.* The day *that we have long wished for* has come. People *who neglect to study in their youth*, repent it in after years. A stone *that rolls* gathers no moss.

§ 4. The Participle as Complement.

The Participles, Present and Past, are used as the Complement of the Incomplete Verb *Be* and its Intransitive and Transitive Equivalents : —

.....	He	**is**	**doing**	it.
We	**have**	him	**doing**	it.
.....	It	**is**	**done**	it.
I	**have**	it	**done.**	
I	**have**	....	**done**	it.

I. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE AS COMPLEMENT.

The Incomplete Verbs that take the Present Participle as Complement are *Be* and its *Neuter* and *Factitive* Equivalents : —

I *was thinking.*
I *sat thinking.*
The stranger *was looking* at the old man.
The stranger *stood looking* at the old man.
A carriage *is waiting* for us.
We *have* a carriage *waiting* for us.
When I went home, my family *were crying.*
On going home, I *found* my family *crying.*

Note : — Of the several kinds of verbs of Neuter and Factitive Construction, those taking the Present Participle as Complement are *Be* and its Neuter and Factitive Equivalents [*have, keep, find, leave,* etc.]. Since the Present Participle denotes

the actual continuance of an action, it does not naturally coalesce with the ideas of *becoming* or *making*, but with the ideas of *beginning* or *causing to begin*. These latter are expressed by the verbs *fall* and *set* respectively, followed by the Gerund with the prefix **a-** : —

They *fell a-laughing* at the joke.
The joke *set* them *a-laughing*.

(1) **NEUTER VERBS** taking the Present Participle as Complement have their type in the Progressive Form (**be doing**), and include Verbs denoting *Position*, *Motion*, *Continuance*, *Existence*, *Change*, etc.

(*a*) **To Sit** : — We *sat telling* stories in the dark.
To Stand : — I *stood gazing* at the scene.
To Lie : — A soldier *lay dying* on the battle-field.

(*b*) **To Go** : — The boy *went crying* to his mamma.
To Come : — A bee *came flying* into the palace.

(*c*) **To Keep** : — I *kept standing* all the time.
To Remain : — One man alone *remained sitting*.
To Go on : — The debt *went on increasing*.
To Continue : — He *continued talking* in spite of my hints.

(*d*) **To Be born** : — Man *is born crying*,....
To Live : .....*lives complaining*,....
To Die : .....and *dies groaning*.

Note 1 : — Other Verbs of *Motion* than *go* and *come* may be followed by the Present Participle as Complement : —

The boy *ran* off *shouting*.
The prince *walked* about *talking* quite freely to the people present.
They *strolled* about the town, *looking* at the quaint old buildings.
They *crossed* the bridge, *leading* the horses by the bridle.
Stoutly the two swimmers *strove*, *knowing* nothing of the danger from the shark.

Note 2 : The verbs *keep* or *go on* followed by the Present Participle gives a more emphatic notion of continuance than *Be*. *To keep doing anything* is *not to leave off*, while *to go on doing anything* is *not to cease*.

The baby *kept crying* and the dog *kept barking* all night.
She *kept calling* mamma *in*, and how they laughed over each new fairy that appeared!
If it *goes on raining*, I shall not start to-morrow.
It is hard that we must *go on eating* this barley rice.

Note 3 : — The verbs *write*, *accost*, *address*, *reply*, *promise*, *command*, etc., are frequently followed by the present participle *saying* as Complement : —

I *wrote* to him, *requesting* his attendance.
He *replied saying* that he was engaged.
A stranger *accosted* me, *saying*....

(2) **FACTITIVE VERBS** taking the Present Participle as Complement are those which correspond to the Neuter Verbs *Be*, *Keep*, *Remain*, etc. Compare :—

(*a*) **To Have** : — *Is* there a foreigner *stopping* in the house?
Have you a foreigner *stopping* in the house?

(*b*) **To Keep** : — I have *kept waiting* for you all day.
I am sorry I have *kept* you *waiting*.

(*c*) **To Find** : — He *was* dying.
I *found* him *dying*.

(*d*) **To Leave** : — The house still *remains standing*.
They have *left* the house *standing*.

(*e*) **To Send** : — The ball *went flying*.
Who *sent* it *flying*?

The Verbs of Perception take the place of the verb *find*, and take the Present Participle as Complement : —

(*f*) **To See** : — Black clouds *were covering* the sky.
We *saw* black clouds *covering* the sky.

(*g*) **To Hear** : — The thunder *was roaring*.
We *heard* the thunder *roaring*.

(*h*) **To Feel** : — The pain *is getting* less.
I *feel* the pain *getting* less.

Note 1 : — Compare the Infinitive and the Participial Complement of the words *have*, *see*, *hear*, *feel*, etc. : —

He *comes* often. ——— We *have* him *come* often.
He *is staying* with us. — We *have* him *staying* with us.
He *said* so. ——— I *heard* him *say* so.
He *was calling* some one. — I *heard* him *calling* some one.

Note 2 : — The Passive of Verbs of Perception may be followed by either the Ordinary Infinitive or the Present Participle : —

He was *seen* { *to enter* the house. / *sitting* at the window.
He was *heard* { *to say* so. / *calling* some one.

The following verbs also take the place of the verb *find* : —

(*i*) **To Meet** : — He *was walking* in the park.
I *met* him *walking* in the park.

(*j*) **To Catch** : — He *was napping*.
I *caught* him *napping*.

Idioms : —

(α) ***To keep*** anything ***going*** = *to keep it up.*
(β) ***To send*** one ***packing*** = *to dismiss without ceremony.*
(γ) ***To catch*** one ***tripping*** = *to discover in falsehood or wrong-doing.*

His wife *kept* the clothes club *going.—Hughes.*

On the death of the king, his favorite was *sent packing* out of the kingdom.

The captain after many endeavours to *catch* me *tripping* in some part of my story, at last began to have a better opinion of my veracity.—*Swift.*

EXERCISE : — *Substitute Factitive Verbs for the Neuter.*

When the doctor came, the man *was dying*. Some visitors *are staying* with us. His elbows *were resting* on his knees. I threw a stone, which *went rolling* down the hill. When I saw him, he *was writing* at the desk. Your father *was calling* you just now. My dog *was barking* at some one. The house *was shaking*. When I looked up, the wounded animal *was springing* upon me. The boys teased the girl, who *went crying* to her mamma. The Royal troops instantly fired such a volley that the rebel horse *went flying* in all directions. Others may *be starving*, but he can see it unconcernedly.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1)塾ハル席ガ無カツタノデ始終立チヅメニシテ居ツタ (2)私ハ車チ待タシテ置イタ (3)君ハ何時來テ見テモ勉强シテ居ル (4)古イ家ハ未ダ其儘ニシテアル (5)人々ガ評判チ聞イテ遠方カラ來タ (6)アナタ其樣ニ傍見チシテ歩クナラ人ニ突當ルノハ當然ダ (7)近所ノ犬ガ終夜吠エテ居テ喧シクテ眠ラレナカツタ (8)本氣ガ付イテ見ルト皆ガ蒲團ノ廻リニ塾ハツテ居ツタ (9)御待チ遠デシタ (10)餘程御待チニ成リマシタカ (11)アノ人ガ子供チ連レテ散歩シテ居ルノチ能ク見受ケマス

II. THE PAST PARTICIPLE AS CCMPLEMENT.

The Incomplete Verbs that take the Past Participle as Complement, are *Be*, *Become*, and their Neuter and Factitive Equivalents : —

A man *was concealed* under the bed.
They *found* a man *concealed* under the bed.

We *became acquainted* by chance.
Chance *made* us *acquainted.*

(1) **NEUTER VERBS** taking the Past Participle as Complement have their type in the Passive Form (**be done**), and include those of *being* and *becoming*. Verbs of Neuter Construction here taking the place of *Be* are those denoting *Position, Motion, Existence, Change*, etc. : —

(a) **To Sit** : — The old man *sat surrounded* by his children.
To Stand : — We *stood prepared* to repel any attack.
To Lie : — One of Japan's heroes *lies buried* here.

(b) **To Come** : — He *came in unobserved.*
To Go : — He *went out unperceived.*

(c) **To Live** : — He *lived beloved* of all.
To Die : — He *died lamented* by everybody.

(d) **To Become** : — How did the fact first *become known ?*
To Grow : — I soon *grew tired* of the work.
To Get : — You will soon *get used* to the work.

(2) **FACTITIVE VERBS** taking the Past Participle as Complement are —

(a) **To Make** : — His rectitude *made* him *respected.*
(b) **To Have** : — I *had* my watch *stolen.*
(c) **To Get** : — I must *get* a pair of shoes *made.*
(d) **To Keep** : — I will *keep* you *informed* of whatever may happen.
(e) **To Find** : — We *found* the work *unfinished.*
(f) **To Leave** : — We *left* the plan *untried.*
(g) **To See** : — I should like to *see* paper *made.*
(h) **To Hear** : — I never *heard* Italian *spoken.*
(i) **To Feel** : — I *felt* myself *pulled* by the sleeve.

Note 1 : — The Past Participle used as Complement of Factitive Verbs may be considered in three ways : —

(a) **Past Participle as Adjective Complement** : — The combination has here a *passive* meaning : —

(α) **To Have** : — My school *was burnt down.* / I *had* my school *burnt down.*

(β) **To Get** : — My arm *was broken.* / I *got* my arm *broken.*

(γ) **To Keep** : — You shall *be advised* of the state of the market. / I will *keep* you *advised* of the state of the market.

(δ) **To Find** : — { The work *was completed.* / We *found* the work *completed.*

(ε) **To Leave** : — { It *is not decided* whether..... / We have *left* it *undecided* whether.....

The Past-Participial Complement of the verbs *find* and *leave* frequently take the prefix **un-** or **half-** : —

Flashman *left* no slander *unspoken,* which could in any way hurt his victims. — *Hughes.*
They *left no stones unturned* (= *left no means untried*) in order to attain their object.
We *found* (or *left*) the work *half-done.*

(b) **Past Participle as Passive Infinitive** : — The Past Participle is a Passive Infinitive with *To Be* understood, when the Factitive Verb possesses or acquires a *causative* signification : —

(α) **To Make** : — { His power *makes* them *fear* him. / His power *makes* him *feared.*

(β) **To Get** : — { I must *get* them *to make* a new suit. / I must *get* a new suit *made.*

(γ) **To Have** : — { I will *have* them *build* a new house. / I will *have* a new house *built.*

Compare : —

{ His rectitude *makes* him.....*respected.* / His rectitude *causes* him *to be respected.*
{ I *got* or *had* a new house.....*built.* / I *caused* a new house *to be built.*

(c) **Past Participle as Passive Participle** : — The Past Participle is a Passive Participle with *Being* understood, after Verbs of Perception : —

(α) **To See** : — { I *saw* him *do* or *doing* it / I *saw* it (*being*) *done.*

(β) **To Hear** : — { I *heard* him *say* or *saying* that..... / I *heard* it (*being*) *said* that.....

(γ) **To Feel** : — { I felt some one *push* or *pushing* me. / I felt myself (*being*) *pushed.*

Thus we see that the Verbs of Perception admits of all three kinds of verbal complement being placed after the object.

EXERCISE (a) : — *Substitute Factitive or Causative Verbs for the Neuter.*

My new house must *be* built of brick. Your hair must *be* cut. Your wound must *be* dressed. He *was* beloved on account of his goodness. My purse *was* stolen. His arm *was* broken. Let me *be* informed of whatever may happen in my absence. The work *was* half-done. Every means *was* tried. My house

was burnt down in the late fire. It *is* not yet decided whether you shall be sent to America or England. This suit *was* made in San Francisco. We *became* acquainted by chance. The fact must *be* impressed on your mind. Your bad teeth must *be* extracted. Your throats will *be* cut. Our innocent sports will *be* forbidden. He *is* hated because of his haughtiness.

EXERCISE (b) : — *Change the words marked into the passive.*

Can you get some one *to translate* the letter for you? I will have some one *translate* it for me. Sanyo once engaged an artist to get him *to paint* his portrait. Please have some one *carry* my luggage to the station. You could not understand the process, unless you saw them *make* it. I have heard some one *say* that French is easier than English. I felt some one *touch* me on my arm. I should like to see them *fire* this big gun. I have heard them *speak of* him as a good teacher. I never heard any one *speak* Russian. I will have them *clean* my garden.

Note 2 : — Of the Factitive Verbs taking the Past Participle as Complement, those requiring special attention are *Make, Have, Get,* and *See* :—

(a) His cruelty **makes** him **feared.**
(b) He **makes himself feared** by his cruelty.

We have seen that the Causative Verb *Make,* followed by the Root-Infinitive, may be used either with a Personal or a Neuter Subject : —

(a) **"Make" with Neuter Subject** : — We have seen that *Make,* when used with a Neuter Subject, denotes *Simple Causative.* Compare : —

{ He *is beloved* because of his goodness. / His goodness *causes* him *to be beloved.* / He goodness *makes* him.....*beloved.*

(b) **"Make" with Personal Subject** : — We have also seen that *Make,* when used with a Personal Subject, denotes *Compulsion* or *Effort* : —

(α) When *Make* denotes *Compulsion,* it does not take a Past Participial Complement, but verb *cause* is used instead:—

{ I *made* them *pay* the money. / I *caused* the money *to be paid.*

(β) When *Make* denotes *Effort,* it may be used reflexively followed by the Past Participle : —

{ I could not *make* them *understand* me. / I could not *make* myself *understood.*

Compare : —

{ His rectitude *made* him *respected.* [*Involuntary.*]
{ He *made* himself *respected* by his rectitude. [*Voluntary.*]

EXERCISE : — *Change the words marked into the passive.*

Can you make them *understand* you? He knows enough Japanese to make them *understand* him. I could not make them *hear* me on account of the noise. His cruelty makes people *fear* him. His honesty makes people *respect* him. His haughtiness makes people *hate* him. What made people *honour* Washington? He made us *learn* the rules. He made them *fear* him by his cruelty. I could not make them *believe* me. You must try to make others *respect* you. Your honesty will make others *respect* you. His goodness makes them *love* him. He makes them *love* him by his goodness.

(*a*) I shall **have** (*or* **get**) my house **burnt down.**
(*b*) I will **get** (*or* **have**) a new house **built.**
(*c*) I must **have** (*or* **get**) my work **finished** at once.

We have seen that *Have* followed by the Root-Infinitive has originally a *Passive* meaning ; and that, when volition is implied, it acquires a *Causative* meaning, thus taking the place of the Causative *Get.* The same is the case, when *Have* is followed by the Past Participle : —

{ I shall *have* my watch *stolen.* = My watch will *be stolen.*
{ I will *have* my watch *mended.* = I will *cause* it *to be mended.*

The verb *Get* followed by the Infinitive Complement has always a *Causative* meaning ; but when followed by a Past Participle, may also be used with a *Passive* meaning, in place of the Passive *Have* :—

{ I *got* a new house *built.* = I *caused* one *to be built.*
{ I *got* my old house *burnt down.* = It *was burnt down.*

The forms "**have something done**" and "**get something done**" are nearly identical in meaning and use, excepting the fact that the former is more used with a passive meaning, while the latter is more used with a causative meaning : —

{ To *have* (or *get*) one's watch *stolen.*
{ To *have* (or *get*) one's head *cut off.*
{ To *have* (or *get*) one's hands *tied up.*
{ To *have* (or *get*) one's arm *broken.*
{ To *have* (or *get*) one's house *burnt down, broken into,* etc.
{ To *get* (or *have*) a house *built* or *repaired.*
{ To *get* (or *have*) a watch *mended.*
{ To *get* (or *have*) one's hair *cut.*
{ To *get* (or *have*) one's photograph *taken.*
{ To *get* (or *have*) a pair of shoes, *made,* etc.

Note : — "**Have** *or* **get something done**" when used in a passive sense may be called an *Indirect Passive* Form, since the Personal Subject of *have* or *get* is the Indirect Recipient of the action [See Page 595 : Part V : Passive Construction]. Compare : —

{ *Direct Passive :* — My watch *was stolen.*
{ *Indirect Passive :* — I *had* or *got* my watch *stolen.*

The combination "**have** *or* **get something done,**" besides the *passive* or *causative* meaning, has another use to express the idea of *completion.* This is the original meaning of the combination, and the original form of the perfect tense. Sometimes either form may be used : —

{ In a few days, I *had finished* my task.
{ In a few days, I *had* my task all *finished.*

When we wish to express a Future Perfect meaning with the Potential Auxiliaries, we must make use of the original form. Why? Compare : —

{ He *may have finished* the work abready.
{ He *may have* (or *get*) the work *finished* by that time.
{ He *can not have finished* it so soon.
{ He *can not have* (or *get*) it *finished* so soon.
{ He *must have finished* it by this time.
{ He *must have* (or *get*) it *finished* by the appointed time.
{ I *shall have finished* my task by noon.
{ I *must have* (or *get*) my task *finished* by noon.

(*a*) I hope I shall **see** you **avenged.**
(*b*) .....I will **see** you **avenged.**

(*a*) The verb *See* originally denotes *involuntary perception :* —

I *shall see* you *avenged.* = You will be avenged by some one.

(*b*) The verb *See,* when volition is implied, denotes *voluntary attention;* and means *to take care :* —

I *will see* you *avenged.* = I will take care that you shall be avenged.

Note 1 : — The verb *See,* used in the secondary sense, has three constructions : —

(α) Followed by the preposition *to :* —

Please look to the matter. { Yes, I will *see to* it.
{ Yes, I will *have* it *seen to.*

(β) Followed by a Noun Clause : —

I will *see that he gets the money.*
Please *see that the boys do no mischief.*

(γ) Followed by an Object and a Past Participle.

I will *see* (*that*) *it* (*is*) *done.*
I will *see* (*that*) *you* (*are*) *avenged.*

Note 2 : — The verb *see* in the last construction approaches the causative *have* in meaning. Compare : —

{ I will *see* you *hanged* first.
{ I will *have* you *hanged* first.

EXERCISE : — *Use "See" and Past Participle.*

I will *take care that you are paid.* Please *take care that she is properly cared for.* I will take care *that your orders are executed.* I like *a rogue to be hanged.* It is his duty to *superintend the proper performance of everything.* I will *undertake that your wrongs shall be righted.*

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 何事ニテモ御不在中ノ出來事ハ始終御報知致シマス (2) 私ハ仕事ヲ中途ニスルコトヲ好マナイ (3) 目的ヲ達スル爲メニハ悉ク手段ヲ盡シタ (4) 其ハ言ハヌが花ダ (5) 其ハ却テ言ハズニ置ク方が宜カツタニ (6) アノ人ハ正直ナ爲メ人カラ愛セラレル (7) 今年校舍ヲ新築シマシタ (8) 此ノ着物モ切レタカラ新調シナケレバナラヌ (9) 此大砲ヲ打ツ處が見タイ (10) 西洋ノ歌ヲ謠フノヲ聞キタイ (11) 本式ニ詩ヲ讀ムノが聞キタイ (12) 此ノ洋服ハ桑港デ作ツタ (13) 昨日ハ寫眞ヲ取リニ行ツテ來タ (14) 時計が狂ツタカラ直ホサセナケレバナラヌ (15) 何本私ノ荷物ヲステーションへ持タシテ下サイ (16) 彼ハ自分ニハ讀メナイカラ毎日毎日新聞ヲ人ニ讀マセテ聞キマス (17) 髮ヲ刈ツテ貰ヒタイ (18) 顔ヲ剃ツテ貰ヒタイ (19) 私ハ佛蘭西語ヲ話ス處ヲ聞イタコトガナイ (20) 私ハ後ロカラ髮ノ毛ヲ引カレタ樣ナ心持がシタ (21) アナタハ餘ヲ取ル處ヲ見タコトがアルカ (22) 軍艦ノ進水式が見タイモノダ (23) 御着キニ成ル前ニ家ヲ悉皆リ掃除サセマシタ (24) アノ人ハ傲慢ナ爲メ人ニ憎マレル (25) アナタハ日本語デ日用ノ事が分リマスカ (26) 人カラ尊敬サルヽ樣ニシナケレバナラヌ (27) 時計ヲコンナ處ヘ置クト盜マレルヨ (28) 時計ヲ直ホサセタカ (29) 明日迄ニ仕事ヲ遣ツテ仕舞ハナケレバナラヌ (30) 明日迄ニハ遣ツテ仕舞ヒマス (31) アナタハ何所デ靴ヲ作リマスカ (32) 彼ハ近頃ノ火事デ家ヲ燒イテ今普請ヲシテ居ル (33) 此度君ノ讐ヲ打タセル (34) 怪我人ノ手當ヲサセテ呉レ (35) 貴命ノ通リ遵奉サセマス

§ 5. Participial Construction.

The ruffians **saw** the officer, **and** took to their heels.
The ruffians, **seeing** the officer, ... took to their heels.

The Participle *seeing* in the last example is grammatically parsed as an Adjective qualifying its Noun *ruffians*, but is really equivalent to a verb and conjunction. It is said to be used in Participial Construtions.

The Participial Construction is a brief and elegant way of joining an introductory statement to the principal statement.

Note 1 : — We have seen that a Participle always has a Sense-Subject : —

(*a*) A Participle used as Adjective has its Sense-Subject in the Noun which it qualifies, as — I saw a *man writing* at the desk.

(*b*) A Participle used as Complement has its Sense-Subject in the Subject of a Neuter Verb, as — "*He* was *writing*" — or the Object of a Factitive Verb, as — "I found *him writing.*"

(*c*) A Participle in the Participial Construction has its Sense-Subject in the Subject of the Principal Statement, as — "*Writing* something on a piece of paper, *he* gave it to me" — or else has an Independent Sense-Subject in the Nominative Absolute, as — "I went by myself, *he remaining* behind."

Note 2 : — The Participle in this construction may be placed either before or after a Noun Subject, but usually after a Pronoun Subject, except in Absolute Construction.

EXERCISE : — *Correct mistakes.*

We going on deck saw a curious sight. Having answered the first objection, the second must now be answered. Being Sunday, there was no school. Defeated on all sides, his heart began to fail him. Having rained during the night, the roads were bad.

All the six forms of the Participle, simple and compound, are used in the participial construction ; —

(a) **Writing** something on a piece of paper, he gave it to me.
(b) **Having written** my exercises, I have nothing more to do
(c) **Having been writing** letters all day, I have had no time to attend to other matters.

(a) The book, **being written** in an easy style, is very popular.
(a) (*Being*) **written** in an easy style, the book is very popular.
(b) The book, **having been written** in haste, has many faults.
(b) (*Having been*) **written** in haste, the book has many faults.

The **Present Participle** here represents the three Primary Tenses of the Finite Verb; the **Perfect Participle**, the three Perfect Tenses. Paraphrase the Participles into the Finite Verb: —

(a) **Living** so remote from cities, I rarely have visitors.
(b) **Living** so remote from cities, I rarely had visitors.
(c) **Living** so remote from cities, I shall rarely have visitors.
(d) **Having lived** abroad, he is proficient in English.
(e) **Having lived** abroad, he was proficient in English.
(f) **Having lived** abroad, he will be proficient in English.

Note 1: — The Perfect Participle is sometimes used to represent the Past Tense, when past time is not shown by the context: —

As he *was* idle in his youth, he has to work hard in his old age.
Having been idle in his youth, he has to work hard in his old age.

Note 2: — The Past Participle [*written*], here being an abrreviation of the Present or Perfect Passive Form [*being written, having been written*], may represent any one of the six tenses. Change the Participles into Finite Verbs: —

Pleased with the article, I gave the price named.
Educated abroad, he was versed in all the arts and sciences of the West.
Born in a land of liberty, and *having* early *learned* its value, my sympathetic feelings are irresistibly attracted, whensoever in any country I see an oppressed nation unfurl the banner of freedom.—*Wash.*

Note 3: — The participle *being* or *having been* being thus omitted, a sentence frequently comes to begin with an adjective or a noun. Supply ellipses: —

Angry at his question, I made no reply.
The son of wealthy parents, he had never learned the value of money.

(*a*) **Meanings Implied**: — The Participial Construction frequently implies some other meaning besides that of *time-relation*: —

(*a*) **Reason**: — The ships, *being biult* of steel, are strong and light.
(*b*) **Condition**: — *Turning* to the right, you will find the house you want.
(*c*) **Concession**: — *Granting* that to be true, how does it answer my argument?

Note 1: — *Time-Relation* is frequently denoted by such conjunctions as *when, while*, and also by the Gerund with the prepositions *on, after, before*, etc.

While staying (=*While I was staying*) at Kyôto, I made the acquaintance of an Englishman.
Before leaving (= *Before I leave*) this place, I mean to visit all the places worth seeing.
After leaving (=*After he left*) school, he engaged in business.

Compare: —

When going (=*When I was going*) to Kyôto, I had my watch stolen.
On arriving (=*When I arrived*) at Kyôto, I communicated with the police.

Note 2: — The *Conditional* and *Concessive* meanings are frequently denoted by the conjunctions *if, unless, though, whether*, etc., placed before the Participle: —

A tiger can be tame, ***if*** (*it is*) ***caught young***.
A tiger can not be tamed, ***unless*** (*it is*) ***caught young***.
Though (*he is*) ***living***, he is as good as dead.
Whether (*he be*) ***living or not***, I will find him out.

Note 3: — Participles implying *Cause* or *Reason* are sometimes followed by a parenthetical clause introduced by *as*: —

Living, as I do (= *as I live*), so remote from towns, I rarely have visitors.
Used, as they were (= *as they were used*), to all sorts of danger, nothing could daunt them.

Note 4: — A Participle preceded by the conjunction *as* is an elliptical construction, and relates in meaning to the Noun or Pronoun that precedes it: —

He is represented ***as*** (*one that is*) ***kneeling*** before a crucifix.
The Japanese, ***as*** (*they are*) ***compared*** with the Chinese, are smaller in stature, but more active.

(*b*) **Absolute Participial Construction** : — When the Participle in this construction has an independent subject of its own, it is said to be in the Absolute Construction, the Sense-Subject being called the Nominative Absolute : —

When night came on, ... } we started for home.
Night coming on, ... }

As the moon had risen, } we put out the light.
The moon having risen,... }

Idioms : — ***Weather permitting; all told; school over; during the night; notwithstanding the rain; past twelve;*** etc., etc.

(*c*) **Impersonal Absolute Participles** : — The Participle in this construction is sometimes used without any noun or pronoun to which it relates, that is, without any sense-subject. In such cases, the subject *I, we,* or *you* is understood; and the Participles are used as a sort of *Adverb, Preposition,* or *Conjunction.* Supply the Sense-Subject : —

Properly *speaking,* the subject does not belong to ordinary grammar. He is very strong, *considering* his age. He has no right to vote, *seeing* that he is a minor. *Judging* from reports, he must be an able man. *Granting* that to be true, how does it answer my argument? *Talking* of accidents, have you heard of the one that has happened to Mr. Ito?

(α) **ABSOLUTE PARTICIPLES AS ADVERBS** : —

Properly speaking, you have no right to interfere in the matter.

Strictly speaking, there is no history before that period.

General speaking, Japanese students are more intelligent than American students.

(β) **ABSOLUTE PARTICIPLES AS PREPOSITIONS** : —

During the vacation ..... = the vacation *during.*
Notwithstanding the rain = the rain *not withstanding.*
Considering his age..... = *if we consider* his age.
Granting its truth..... = *if we grant* its truth.
Setting apart that ..... = *aside from* it.
Failing that..... = *in default of* that.
Excepting one..... = *except* or *but* one.
Judging from reports..... = *if we judge from* reports.
According to his tatements = *as accords to* it.

Regarding the matter. ..... = *as regards* it.
Past twelve..... = twelve *being past.*
Etc. *etc.*

(γ) **ABSOLUTE PARTICIPLES AS CONJUNCTIONS** : —

Supposing (= *if*) : — *Supposing* you fall sick, the doctor lives near by.

Provided that (= *if*) : — I will pardon him, *provided* he confess his fault.

Seeing that (= *since*) : — We make allowances, *seeing* that he is a foreigner.

Note : — An Impersonal Absolute Participle may sometimes be replaced by an Absolute Infinitive : —

Properly speaking, } the subject belongs to rhetoric.
To speak properly, }

Exercise : — *Put in the Participial Construction.*

(α) The officer *drew his sword,* and sprang on board. *As the case has been decided,* further defence is useless. *As the case had been decided,* further defence was useless. *As I have learned by experience what it is to be in debt,* I am resolved never to borrow money, if I can help it. *When China had been defeated in every battle,* she applied to Russia for mediation. *As I felt the house shake,* I ran out into the garden. *When I had rushed out of the house,* I heard it fall with a crash.

(β) *As it was fine weather,* I kept the windows open. *If we judge from reports,* he seems to be a man of parts. *Even if I grant that he was drunk,* that is no excuse for his conduct. *I was much frightened,* but not much hurt. *When school was over,* I went to see him. *When the examination was over,* I started for home. We *turned to the left,* and struck into the woods. *As the water is cold,* it makes the glass cold. Why did you go to his house, *if you knew that he had left?*

(γ) *When my departure had been resolved upon,* I was eager to go away as soon as possible. I start to-morrow, *if weather permits.* One can not accomplish anything, *if one tires of everything as he does.* She leaned upon him, *as if she wished for further protection.* The ship *had lost her rudder,* and was drifting about helplessly. They *were determined to make a last attempt,* and took refuge in a fortress. *If we are united,* we stand; *if we are divided,* we fall. *Now that you talk of singing,* have you heard Miss A. Sing?

(δ) She handed the rifle to me, *as one who was a better marksman than herself. Unless it is driven by hunger,* a lion will not willingly attack man. This is a picture of Mt. Fuji, *as it is seen from Hakone. When he was defeated on all sides,* he began to lose heart. *I was pleased with the information,* and went to

ascertain the truth. *I was convinced of my error*, and resolved on amendment. *I was not satisfied with the explanation*, and resolved to inquire into the cause. *He was faithful to his trust*, and would not leave his post. *As he was an impatient, impulsive man*, he failed in all his undertakings.

(ε) *Though he was poor*, he was yet of an independent spirit. *As you were absent*, I had no one to take my place. I went by myself, *and he remained behind. I was happy in the consciousness that I had done right*, and slept the sleep of peace. *He was angry at my remark*, and left the room. Experience, *when it is dearly bought*, is seldom thrown away. *If I am to judge from his emaciated face*, he must have suffered a good deal of hardship. We shall not arrive before dark, *if we go at this rate. As I speak form experience*, you may depend upon the truth of what I say.

CHAPTER XV.

Gerunds.

§ 1. General Characteristics.

(1) **Gerunds and Participles Compared** : — A Noun or Pronoun preceding a Participle (in the Participial Construction) is in the Nominative Case, and is qualified by the Participle. A Noun or Pronoun preceding a Gerund is (or ought to be) in the Possessive Case, and qualifies the Gerund. Compare : —

(*a*) *You being* absent, I had no one to assist me.
(*b*) *Your being* absent caused me much trouble.

(2) **Gerunds and Infinitives Compared** : — The Gerund may generally be used interchangeably with the Infinitive, when it is the Subject, Object, or Complement of a Verb : —

To teach / *Teaching* } is not easy. I like { *to teach.* / *teaching.*

To give you gold is { *to give* / *giving* } fuel to fire.

Prepositions (except *but*) can not govern the Infinitive, and must therefore be followed by the Gerund. This is one of the chief uses of the Gerund : —

He gets his living — [*how?*] — *by writing.*
He was punished — [*what for?*] — *for stealing.*
I insisted *on knowing* the truth.
He is too fond *of spending* money to become rich.

(3) **Gerunds and Verbal Nouns Compared** : — The Gerund (or Infinitive in **-ing**) must be distinguished from the True Verbal Noun in **-ing.** The Gerund being a double part of speech [Verb and Noun] may take any of the Verbal Adjuncts [*Object, Complement,* or *Adverb*], but can not take any of the Noun Adjuncts. The Verbal Noun, which is a true noun derived from a verb, may take any of the Noun Adjuncts [*Article, Adjective,* or *Plural Form*], but can not take any of the Verbal Adjuncts. Compare : —

I spent the morning in *writing* letters.
He devoted his life to *the writing of* books.
He formed his style by *constantly reading* good writers.
He formed his style by *the constant reading* of good writers.

Note : — Among Verbal Nouns in **-ing** are —

(*a*) Abstract Nouns : — *Learning ; reading, writing, drawing ;* the faculties of *feeling, understanding,* etc.
(*b*) Concrete Nouns : — *A writing, writings ; a drawing, drawings ; a painting, paintings ; a building, buildings,* etc.

(4) **Gerunds with Noun Adjuncts** : — In the two following cases, the Gerund takes Noun Adjuncts : —

(*a*) **Gerund with Possessive** : — When a Noun Clause is Condensed into a Gerund, as is frequently the case, the Sense-Subject takes the Possessive Form qualifying the Gerund : —

That we shall succeed, is certain.
Our succeeding.....is certain.
I do not doubt *that you are* able to do it.
I do not doubt *your being* able to do it.

Compare : —

I am glad of (*my*) *having passed.*
I am glad of *your having passed.*

(*b*) **Gerund with Article** : — When a Gerund used as Subject stands at the head of a sentence, it is frequently preceded by *the*, to prevent its being mistaken for a participle : —

The hearing herself described as a lovely woman highly flattered her. — *Dickens.*
The seeing his favourite tree robbed made him angry. — *Edgeworth.*

Note 1 : — *The* or *that* before the Gerund may be regarded as an abbreviation of "*the act, fact, or circumstance of* : " —

It may be had *for the* (*mere act of*) *asking*.
That (*act of*) *changing* the hour was a mistake.

Note 2 : — The use of either *the* or *of* alone with the Gerund is now obsolete : —

It was Tom who put *the poisoning* the dog into my head.
He prepared the way of thy son our Saviour by *preaching of* repentance.

EXERCISE : — *Classify the words in "-ing."*

We spent the winter in *trapping* and *killing* wild animals. During the summer and winter, we had several adventures in the *trapping* and *killing* of wild animals. In my days, *making* maple sugar used to be something like picnicking. There is no part of farming that a boy enjoys more than the *making* of maple-sugar. There is an *amusing* poem in my *reading* book. *Being admired* by all, she became vain. She was fond of *being admired*. The *sleeping* apartment is inside the *sitting* room. There is a *sleeping* child in the next room. Many were attacked with dysentry from the *drinking* of muddy water. Easy *writing* is hard *reading*. A petition was presented against the licence *being granted*. They began *firing*. They kept *firing*. They ceased *firing*. The *receiving* this news gave us much pleasure. The *having succeeded* in such an undertaking, proves that he has perseverance. Nothing worth *having* can be had without trouble. *Yawning* is *catching*. The man was found in a *dying* state. One's *dying* words. It is *thinking* that makes what we read ours.

§ 2. Forms of the Gerund.

The Gerund of Transitive Verbs has *five* forms ; that of Intransitive Verbs has *three* : —

	Trans. : **To Do**		Intr. : **To Go**
	Active.	*Passive.*	
Simple.	**Doing**	**Being done**	**Going**
Perfect.	**Having done** / **Having been doing**	**Having been done** (*wanting.*)	**Having gone** / **Having been going**

In contraction of clauses, the **Simple Forms** represent the three Primary Tenses of the Finite Verb ; the **Perfect Forms**, the three Perfect Tenses. Change the Gerunds into Finite Verbs : —

(*a*) I have no doubt of your **being** able to do it.
(*b*) I had no doubt of your **being** able to do it.
(*c*) I have no doubt of your **succeeding.**
(*d*) I am sure of his **having succeeded.**
(*e*) I was sure of his **having succeeded.**
(*f*) I am sure of his **having succeeded** by that time.

Note 1 : — The Perfect Form is used to represent the Past Tense, when Past Time is not denoted by the context : —

He repents that *was* idle in his youth.
He repents of ***having been*** idle in his youth.

Note 2 : — The Simple Form, on the other hand, frequently takes the place of the Perfect Form, when the notion of past time is implied in the context. The Gerund here makes a nearer approach to the Abstract Noun proper. Change the Gerunds into Finite Verbs : —

The man's *making* money is no proof of merit. I remember *stopping* at this place before. The boy was rewarded for *saving* a drowning girl. He was accused of *stealing* a watch. He blamed me for *neglecting* to write.

§ 3. Uses of the Gerund.

(1) GERUND AS SUBJECT OR COMPLEMENT.

The Gerund, being nearer the Abstract Noun in its nature than the Infinitive, is used in making *General Statements ;* while the Infinitive is used in making *Particular Statements*. Compare : —

Seeing is *believing*. / *To see* her is *to love* her.
Lying is a disgraceful vice. / *To tell a lie* would be wrong.

The Gerund is more frequently used in the predicate as Complement : —

That is *going* too far — *carrying* the matter too far.

Compare : —

Not to reply would be *acting* contemptuously.
To understand one thing thoroughly is better than *understanding* many things by halves.

(2) GERUND AS OBJECT OF VERBS.

Some verbs take the Infinitive as Object, others take the Gerund as Object, and a few may take either. The use of the Gerund and the Infinitive after the following verbs should be noted : —

(*a*) **To Like** : — I *like to read* (or *reading*) romances.
To Enjoy : — I have *enjoyed reading* this book.

(*b*) **To Choose** : — Take any one who *chooses to go*.
To Prefer : — I would *prefer going* by myself.

(*c*) **To Care** : — I don't *care to run* the risk.
To Mind : — I do not *mind running* a little risk.

(*d*) **To Refuse** : — He *refuses to join* the enterprise.
To Decline : — He *declines having* anything to do with it.

(*e*) **To Intend** : — I *intend to go* (or *going*) abroad shortly.
To Purpose : — I *purpose visiting* (or *to visit*) Italy.

(*f*) **To Remember** : — I *remember meeting* him somewhere.
To Forget : — I *forgot to mention* the fact.

(*g*) **To Begin** : — When did you *begin to learn* (or *learning*) English?
To Commence : — I *commenced studying* English five years ago.
To Continue : — I *continued to study* (or *studying*) it.
To Cease : — We shall never *cease wondering* (or *to wonder*).

Note : — Other verbs of *cessation* are always followed by the Gerund : —

They *stopped* (or *left off*) *talking* at my approach.
I have *done* (or *finished*) *speaking*.

(3) GERUND AS OBJECT OF PREPOSITIONS.

A Preposition governing a Gerund may be used either with an independent meaning of its own, or be governed by a Noun, a Verb, or an Adjective : —

(*a*) You can get your living — [*how?*] — *by teaching*.
(*b*) I have an objection — [*to what?*] — *to teaching*.

I. **Prepositions and Gerunds** : —

(*a*) **In** : — I committed a folly *in trusting* such a man.
We must be careful *in choosing* our companions.

(*b*) **On** : — *On leaving* school, he went into business.

(*c*) **By** : — He put an end to his miseries *by destroying* himself.

(*d*) **For** : — The ostrich can be used *for riding*.
The man was punished *for stealing*.
He was *for starting* at once.

(*e*) **From** : — Many fell sick *from drinking* muddy water.

(*f*) **Through** : — I got into trouble *through helping* him.

(*g*) **Above** : — They are *above selling* their country.

(*h*) **Against** : — There is no regulation *against smoking*.

(*i*) **Besides** : — *Besides giving* me advice, he helped me liberally.

(*j*) **Beyond** : — *Beyond writing* a few books, he has done nothing worth mentioning.

(*k*) **Near** : — I *came near being drowned* in the attempt to swim across.

(*l*) **Without** : — You can not succeed *without working* hard.
They *never* meet *without* quarrelling.

(*m*) **Instead of** : — *Instead of punishing* the man, he rewarded him.

(*n*) **Far from** : — *Far from praising* him, I must positively censure him.

(*o*) **What by** : — *What by coaxing*, and *what by threatening*, he finally accomplished his design.

(*p*) **What with** : — *What with teaching*, and *what with writing*, my time is wholly taken up.

(*q*) **Between** : — *Between teaching and writing*, my time is wholly taken up.

Note 1 : — Adverbial Clauses of Time are condensed in various ways : —

When (+ *Clause*)	**On** (+ *Gerund*).
Before (+ *Clause*)	**Before** (+ *Gerund*).
After (+ *Clause*)	**After** (+ *Gerund*).
Since (+ *Clause*)	**Since** (+ *Gerund*).
As soon as (+ *Clause*)	**Immediately after** (+ *Gerund*). / **Just upon** (+ *Gerund*).

Note 2 : — The Gerund with the prepositions *on*, *before*, *after*, *since*, etc., being a sort of participial construction, must have its sense-subject in the Subject of the Principal Clause or its Possessive Qualifier : —

When I went to his room, he was at work.
On my going to his room, he was at work.
On (my) going to his room, *I* found him at work.

EXERCISE : — *Change into Preposition and Gerund.*

When I arrived at Shimbashi Station, my friend was waiting for me. *After we made* a great effort, the summit was gained. I paid him, *after he finished* his work. *Before you read* the text, the vocabulary should be thoroughly learned. *Before you sign* the receipt, the money can not be paid. *Since I left* college, I have been engaged in business. *As soon as I left* college, I engaged in business. *As soon as I left* college, my father retired from business. *He suddenly became rich*, and thus fell under suspicion. One boy *told the truth*, and was rewarded. The other boy *told a lie*, and was punished. You can not succeed

in anything *unless you persevere*. I *did not go myself*, but sent a messenger. *He is not a help to me, but on the contrary* he is an encumbrance. *When I see you, I am always reminded of my brother.*

II. **Preposition and Gerund after Nouns** : — Many Nouns may be followed by either a Preposition and Gerund, or an Infinitive : —

What is the best way *of learning* (or *to learn*) a language?
This is a suitable time *for introducing* (or *to introduce*) the new method.
I have the satisfaction *of seeing* (or *to see*) my method adopted everywhere.
A man who has no power *to benefit* you as a friend, may have the power *of injuring* you as an enemy.
I had a good opportunity *of seeing* (or *to see*) the world.

The Infinitive is rarely, if ever, used after the following Nouns, but a Preposition and Gerund : —

Method : — His method *of teaching* is novel.
Object : — What is your object *in studying* English?
Hope : — He did it *in hopes of obtaining* a reward.
Fear : — We went on cautiously *for fear of being discovered.*
Habit : — He is *in the habit of boasting* of his skill.
Objection : — Have you any objection *to going?*
Aversion : — He seems to have an aversion *to working.*
Purpose : — I study English *for the purpose of becoming* a teacher. / He does such things *on purpose to annoy* me.
View : — I did it *with the view* (or *intention*) *of saving* you trouble. / He works hard *with a view to gain* or *gaining* scholarship.

III. **Preposition and Gerund after Verbs** : — The Preposition and Gerund after some verbs may be contracted into an Infinitive, while the same can not be done after other verbs : —

(*a*) **To Think** : — I even thought *of dying.*
To Speak : — He speaks *of starting* a new school.
To Talk : — He talks *of going* to Formosa.

(*b*) **To Decide** : — I decided *on starting* (or *to start*) the first fine day.
To Determine : — I determined *on taking* (or *to take*) another course.
To Resolve : — I resolved *on having* (or *to have*) my revenge.

(*c*) **To Insist** : — I insist *on knowing* the reason.
To Persist : — He persists *in refusing* to answer.

(*d*) **To Regret** : — I *regret having undertaken* the work.
To Repent : — You will *repent of having been* idle.

(*e*) **To Refrain** : — I refrain *from expressing* my opinion.
To Abstain : — Abstain *from speaking* ill of others.
Compare : —
I can not *help* (or *avoid, forbear*) *expressing* my disapproval.
I can not *keep* (or *refrain, abstain*) *from expessing....*

(*f*) **To Prevent** : — The rain prevented me *from coming* (or *my coming*).
To Hinder : — Nothing shall hinder me *from doing* my duty.
To Keep : — This pillar keeps the house *from falling.*

The following verbs of like or opposite meaning have different governments : —

(*g*) **To Succeed** : — I succeeded *in solving* my problem.
To Fail : — Many failed *to solve* (or *in solving*) it.

(*h*) **To Assist** : — He assists me *in managing* the school.
To Help : — Help me (*to*) *put* the room to rights.

(*i*) **To Hope** : — I once hoped *to succeed.*
To Despair : — I begin to despair *of attaining* my object.

(*j*) **To Forbid** : — My father has forbidden me *to smoke.*
To Prohibit : — The law prohibits minors *from smoking.*

(*k*) **To Persuade** : — I persuaded him *to undertake* the work.
To Dissuade : — I dissuaded him *from making* the attempt.

(*l*) **To Advise** : — My doctor advises me *to travel.*
To Recommend : — My doctor recommends me *travelling.*

IV. **Preposition and Gerund after Adjectives** : — The following Adjectives govern a Preposition and Gerund : —

Fond : — She is fond *of being admired.*
Afraid : — Do not be afraid *of making* mistakes.
Skilful : — He is skilful *in teaching.*
Good : — He is good *at translating* from Japanese into English.
Quick : — He is quick *at picking up* languages.
Bent : — I was bent *on effecting* my purpose at any cost.
Intent : — They are intent *on mastering* English.
Tired : — I am tired *of* (or *with*) *teaching.*
Given : — He is given *to boasting* of his skill.
Hopeful : — He is hopeful *of attaining* his object.
Confident : — We are confident *of succeeding.*
Etc. *etc.*

The following Adjectives originally govern *Of* and the Gerund, which may be contracted into the Infinitive : —

Worthy : — He is worthy *of filling* (or *to fill*) the post.
Unworthy : — She is unworthy *of being* (or *to be*) his partner.
Desirous : — He is desirous *of securing* (or *to secure*) the position.
Proud : — I shall be proud *of teaching* (or *to teach*) him.
Ashamed : — Are you not ashamed *of doing* (or *to do*) such a thing?
Etc. *etc.*

Adjectives of Emotion governing *At* of Cause and the Gerund may have them contracted into the Infinitive : —

Glad : — I was glad *at hearing* (or *to hear*) of your success.
Sorry : — I was sorry *at hearing* (or *to hear*) of your failure.
Delighted : — I was delighted *at seeing* (or *to see*) him.
Rejoiced : — I was rejoiced *at learning* (or *to learn*) of your success.
Surprised : — I was surprised *at hearing* (or *to hear*) him say so.
Etc. *etc.*

The following Adjectives of Similar Meaning have different governments : —

Able : — He is quite able *to teach.*
Capable : — This animal is capable *of being taught.*
Worth : — Nothing worth *mentioning* occurred.
Worthy : — There occurred nothing worthy *of being mentioned.*

Compare the personal and impersonal constructions of —

Right : — It was right of you *to ask* your father. / You did right *in asking* your father.
Wrong : — It was wrong of you *to deceive* him. / You did wrong *in deceiving* him.

State the difference in meaning of the two constructions with —

Sure : — He is sure *to succeed.* / He is sure *of succeeding.*
Certain : — He is certain *to succeed.* / He is certain *of succeeding.*

(4) GERUND AS ADJECTIVE.

A Gerund used as Adjective denotes *purpose*, and is allied to the adjective use of nouns. It forms a sort of compound word with the noun, and must not be confounded with a Participial Adjective : —

(*a*) A ***smoking*** dish = a dish *that smokes.*
(*b*) A ***smoking***-room = a room *set apart for smoking.*

Other Exampies : — A *reading*-room ; a *sleeping*-room ; a *dining*-room ; a *sitting*-room ; a *dwelling*-house ; an *eating*-house ; a *bathing*-place ; a *writing*-desk ; *writing*-paper ; *blotting*-paper ; *stepping*-stones, *etc.*, *etc.*

(5) IDIOMATIC USES OF THE GERUND.

(*a*) **There is no saying** what may happen.

There is no saying. = There is no possibility of saying. / We can not say ; it is impossible to say.

(*b*) A chance and hope **of my procuring.** —*Dickens.*

A chance *of my procuring* = which I have procured for you.

(*c*) I give it up. **It is no use trying.**

It is no use trying. = It is (*of*) *no use* (= *useless*) *to try.*

(*d*) I was so lonely. **I felt like crying.**

I felt like crying. = I felt inclined to cry.

(*e*) Be quiet. **No talking** in class.

No talking in class. = There must be no taking in class. / You must not talk in class.

(*f*) On fine days we often **go a-fishing.**

The Gerund with the Prefix **a-** (= *on*, *to*, etc.) is used after the verbs *go*, *fall*, *set*, etc. When the Prefix is omitted, the Gerund becomes a Participial Complement : —

To *go* (*a*-)*shooting*, (*a*-)*fishing*, (*a*-)*hunting*, etc.
I *fell a-beating* the coffin.— *Steele.*
They *fell to eating* with great vigour.
This set me (*a*-)*thinking.*

EXERCISE ; — *Change into Idiomatic Forms with Gerunds.*

The fact can not be denied. It is impossible to trust him. The fact can not be mistaken. It is impossible to account for tastes.' I can not bear his insolence. We can not say how the speculation will turn out. I beg you will accept of some birds which I have shot. This is a work done by him. This is a profession which I have myself chosen. It is useless to cry over spilt milk. Do you feel inclined to make a trial? The wind causes the mill to turn round. It is not allowed to scribble on the walls. We can not say what may happen.

CHAPTER XVI.

Condensation of Clauses.

INTRODUCTION.

(1) **PERFECT FORM**: — We have seen that the Perfect From of Infinitives, Participles, and Gerunds, represents, not only the Perfect Tenses of Finite Verbs, but also the Past Tense when past time is not denoted by the context: —

It is said that he *was* wild in his youth.
He is said *to have been* wild in his youth.

As he *was* idle in his youth, he has to work hard in his old age.
Having been idle in his youth, he has to work hard in his old age.

He repents that he *was* idle in his youth.
He repents of *having been* idle in his youth.

(2) **SENSE-SUBJECT**: — When a Clause is condensed into an Infinitive, a Participle, or a Gerund, the Original Subject remains as Sense-Subject when it is not the same as the Subject of the Principal Statement: —

I think *he will succeed.*
I expect *him to succeed.*

As *he has succeeded, I* am in hopes of succeeding.
He having succeeded, I am in hopes of succeeding.

I am sure *he will succeed.*
I am sure *of his succeeding.*

(3) **SENSE-SUBJECT OF INFINITIVES**: — The Objective Sense-Subject of the Infinitive may or may not be preceded by the Preposition *For*: —

(*a*) **Sense-Subject without "For"**: — The Objective Sense-Subject of an Infinitive is not preceded by *for* after *Transitive Verbs*: —

I wish *him to try.* I intend *him to be* a merchant. I expect *him to be* diligent. We supposed *him to be* a good man. We found *him to be* a knave. I know *him to be* a knave. I can prove *him to be* a knave. He compelled (*or* permitted, forbade, requested, ordered, etc.) *me to leave* the house.

(*b*) **Sense-Subject with "For"**: — The Objective Sense-Subject of the Infinitive is preceded by For in the following cases: —

(α) *After Intr. Verbs*: — How I long *for that time to come!*
(β) *After Nouns*: — There is no need *for him to work.*
(γ) *After Adjectives*: — It will be easy *for me to do so.*
(δ) *After Adverbs*: — The book is easy enough *for you to understand.*
(ε) *Before Subj. Inf.*: — *For me to do so* is impossible.
(ζ) *Before Compl. Inf.*: — The rice is *for us to live on.*
(η) *Before Cond. Inf.*: — It would be wrong *for me to do so.*

(4) **SENSE-SUBJECT OF GERUNDS**: — Pronouns preceding Gerunds are always in the Possessive Form; but Nouns, especially names of inanimate objects, are frequently without the possessive sign. A Noun thus used, though not in the Possessive *Form*, is in the Possessive *Relation* to the Gerund. Compare: —

I was not aware of *the man('s) being* so rich.
I was not aware of *his being* so rich.

What was there wonderful about *the apple falling?*
What was there wonderful about *its falling?*

§ 1. Noun Clauses.

Subjective Noun Clauses may be condensed into Infinitive or Gerundive Phrases: —

That I should do so, is impossible.
For me to do so.....is impossible.

Whether I shall do so, is uncertain.
My doing so .....is uncertain.

Objective Noun Clauses may be condensed into Infinitive or Gerundive Phrases, or into either: —

I think *that I am able to do it.*
I think *myself to be able to do it.*

I do not doubt *that you are able to do it.*
I do not doubt *your being able to do it.*

I admit *that he is honest.*
I admit *him to be honest* (or *his being honest*).

Appositive Noun Clauses may be condensed into Infinitive or Gerundive Phrases, or into either: —

I have made a promise *that I would not tell.*
I have made a promise *not to tell.*

The trouble arose from the fact *that there were two heads.*
The trouble arose from the fact *of there being two heads.*

I am sure *that you will succeed.*
You are sure *to succeed.*
I am sure *of your succeeding.*

EXERCISE : — *Condense the Noun Clauses into Infinitive or Gerundive Phrases.*

(α) *That he should succeed,* was quite unexpected. *That the man made money,* is no proof of his merit. *That we should submit to such treatment,* is hard. *That he went away without leaving his address,* is a clear proof of his dishonesty. He says *that the man is innocent.* I can prove *that he is innocent.* The fact shows *that he is honest.* I imagined *that I was safe.* He fancies *that he is an important person.* He spoke English so well that I thought *that he must be a foreigner.* My father intended *that I should be a physician.*

(β) He says *that the statement is true.* He says *that the accusation is not just.* The doctor said *that the wound was a slight one.* I believe *that he was innocent.* I know *that he was innocent.* The fact shows *that he was innocent.* I am glad to hear *that he was innocent.* They say *that he was a great man.* But they say *that he was not a good man.* I have heard *that the boy is doing very well at school.* I know *that he has won many prizes.*

(γ) You will never repent *that you have followed my advice.* He not only made, but fulfilled his promise, *that he would be a second father to the child.* There is no danger *that the ceiling will fall.* There was danger *that the boat would be swamped.* The signal *that they should return,* was immediately made. The idea *that my watch might be wrong,* did not occur to me. There is no hope *that he will pass.* I do not hope *that he will pass.*

(δ) I have no doubt *that he got secret help from some one.* I am not aware *that I ever did wrong.* He is proud *that his father is a rich man.* Are you not ashamed *that you have done such a thing?* I am sure *that he will succeed.* I am certain *that I shall give you satisfaction.* I am very glad *that my brother has passed.* I am glad *that I have met you.* I am surprised *that you should say so.* He is pleased *that he has won a prize.*

§ 2. Adjective Clauses.

Adjective Clauses may be condensed into Infinitive, Participial, or Gerundive Phrases : —

{ Egypt was the first country *that became civilized.*
{ Egypt was the first country *to become civilized.*

{ People *who neglect to study in their youth,* repent it in after years.
{ People *neglecting to study in their youth,* repent it in after years.

{ There is no reason *why he should refuse.*
{ There is no reason *for his refusing.*

EXERCISE : — *Condense the Adjective Clauses into Infinitive, Participial, or Gerundive Phrases.*

The captain was the last man *that left the sinking ship.* He was the only man *that remained on board to the last.* I see no danger *that ought to alarm us.* Are there any places *that we can visit here?* He has no income *on which he can live.* I have no time *that I can spare.* I have postponed all cases *that require care.* Things *that he says* regularly appear in print. The time *when we should depart* is close at hand. The day *that we have long wished for* is come at last. There is no reason *why I should fear him.* What shall I do in case *he does not come?* This is a profession *which I have myself chosen*

§ 3. Adverbial Clauses.

Adverbial Clauses may be condensed into Infinitive, Participial, or Gerundive Phrases : —

{ I was surprised *when I heard* the news.
{ I was surprised *to hear*..... the news.

{ *When we had finished our dinner,* we went for a stroll.
{ *Having* ..... *finished our dinner,* we went for a stroll.

{ *When I arrived in town,* I repaired to my patron's.
{ *On arriving in town,* .... I repaired to my patron's.

EXERCISE : — *Condense the Adverbial Phrases into Infinitive, Participial, or Gerundive Phrases.*

I could not but laugh *when I saw such a curious sight. When I felt the house shake,* I rushed out into the garden. *After he left school,* he engaged in business. *When school was over,* I went to see him. *After I finished my task,* I went out for a walk. *When the ships had been destroyed,* the forts were bombarded. *When he left school,* he went into business. He engaged in business *as soon as he left school.* I was sorry *when I found out my mistake. If I were to make no reply,* it would be acting contemptuously. It would have been better, *if you had left it unsaid. If we judge from reports,* he seems to be a man of parts *If good work is neglected,* devotion is useless. I set out to-morrow, *if weather permits.* You can not succeed *unless you work hard.* I can not sleep comfortably *unless I take a bath. Though I did my utmost,* I could not satisfy him. I persevered, *though everything went against me.* I thought he must be sick *because he looked so sallow. As it was fine weather,* I went out for a stroll about the town. *As I did not know where to go,* I wandered about the streets.

PART FIFTH: VERBAL CONSTRUCTION.

It is the construction of verbs that mainly characterizes the structures of sentences. It is also found that a great number of verbs of the commonest uses, when used in different constructions, have different meanings; and it is to these verbs that especial attention is called. For instance, verbs frequently undergo a change of meaning when used with neuter subjects: —

{ He has *promised* to come.
{ The weather *promises* to be fine.

{ I must *remind* you of your promise.
{ You *remind* me of my brother.

CHAPTER XVII.

Transitive and Intransitive.

We have seen that Transitive Verbs are used in English with Neuter as well as Personal Subjects. Hence arise many English idioms, which consist in the use of Transitive Verbs where Intransitive Verbs are used in Japanese.

We have also seen that it is impossible to draw a sharp line of demarcation between Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, many verbs being indifferently used as transitive or intransitive: —

One *turns* a wheel. A wheel *turns*.
They *stopped* the train. The train *stopped*.
The wind *moves* the ship. The ship *moves*.
Have you *begun* English? Has school *begun*?
When do they *open* the door? The door *opens* at six.

But there are verbs of a decidedly transitive meaning which are occasionally used as intransitive, and *vice versa*; and such verbs generally undergo some change of meaning.

§ 1. Transitive with Neuter Subject.

There are several pairs of corresponding Intransitive and Transitive Verbs, the latter of which may be used with neuter subjects to express the same ideas as the former: —

[*Intransitive.*]	[*Transitive.*]
To become	*to make.*
To come	*to bring.*
To go	*to take, send.*
To be able (*can*)	*to enable.*
To be unable (*can not*)	*to prevent.*
To think of (*remember*)	*to remind* (*one*) *of.*
Why is.....?	*What makes.....?*

Compare: —

{ He has *become* rich by diligence.
{ Diligence has *made* him rich.

{ What have you *come* here for?
{ What has *brought* you here?

{ If a man is rich, he *can* be generous.
{ Wealth *enables* a man to be generous.

{ I *could not* come on account of business.
{ Business *prevented* me from coming.

EXERCISE: — *Change into Idiomatic Transitives with Neuter Subjects.*

(*α*) Let us have a run, and we shall *get* warm. Why did he *get* angry? He *was* angry at what I said. With your assistance, my success will *be* certain. How did he *become* rich? He *became* rich by industry. As you know English, it will *be* easy for you to learn French or German. Why *is* he so unpopular? He *is* unpopular because of his haughtiness. If you follow this road, you will *get* to the station. We *could not* start on account of the badness of the weather.

(*β*) *Why do* you think so? When I see him, I *think of* a pig. When I see you, I *think of* my dead brother. *Why is* it difficult for us to master English? I *could not* go abroad on account of illness. We *can* predict the weather by means of the barometer. He *can* be generous, because he is rich. The child *awoke* at the noise. One may *become* a scholar by reading. But one can not *become* a linguist by reading alone.

(*γ*) *Why is* it necessary for you to leave school? When will the school *be* open? After an hour's walk, we *got* to the station. After half-an-hour's ride, the traveller *arrives* at the town of Shiogama. Light *comes in* at the window. The next day we *were* on the way. We *could not* see clearly owing to the fog. If I have a thousand yen, I shall *be* a rich man in the country. If you drink too much wine, you will *die*.

§ 2. Transitive as Intransitive.

A Transitive Verb may be used as Intransitive in three ways :—

I. In a **General Sense** : —

Those people can neither *read* nor *write*.
Can one live without *eating* or *drinking?*
It is more blessed to *give* than to *receive*. — *Bible*.

II. In a **Passive Sense** : —

The book *sells* (= *is sold*) very well.
It *says* (= *is said*) in the papers that.....
The house is *building* (= *being built*).

III. In a **Reflexive Sense** : —

He *dresses* (*himself*) well.
Horses *feed* (*themselves*) on grass.
The hunters *hide* (*themselves*) behind the bushes.

I. TRANSITIVE AS INTRANSITIVE IN GENERAL SENSE.

Nearly every Transitive Verb may be used Intransitively without the object specified, the action being spoken of as relating to things in general. But those requiring attention are those which are used intransitively in a special sense : —

(*a*) **To Do** : — How do you *do?* How is he *doing* at school? How is the school *doing?* You will *do well* to keep the matter a secret. But you have *done well* in letting me know about it. He is *doing very well* at the University. My wife has been delivered of a child, and both mother and child are *doing as well as can be expected*. His father is a *well-to-do* merchant in Osaka. I can not part with the man ; I can not *do without* him. *That will do* for the present. *Have done!* Please return the book, if you *have done with* it.

(*b*) **To Make** : — On hearing the cry of "Shark! Shark!" the swimmers *made for* the shore The servant *made off* with his master's money. The tiger, on seeing the woman, dropped the child, and *made at* her.

(*c*) **To Take** : — The stratagem *took*, and the man made a fortune. The style *takes ;* the style pays ; what more would you have? — *Kingsley*. You will soon

find out what sort of topic *takes* with your students. He *takes* more *after* his mother than after his father. The peculiarity of diction rather adds to, than *takes from*, the charm of his style.

(*d*) **To Gain on** : — The day *gains on* the night. The cruiser *gained on* the chase, till she was within gunshot.

(*e*) **To Gain in, Lose in** : — If anything *gains in* quantity, it must *lose in* quality.

(*f*) **To Win, Lose** : — You can feel no real interest in a game, unless you have a personal interest in the competitors ; for it does not matter to you which side may *win* or *lose*.

(*g*) **To Tell** : — Every shot *told*. I find I am getting old ; hard work begins to *tell on* my constitution.

(*h*) **To Say** : — He may return very soon, but I *can not say* for certain.

(*i*) **To Write** : — Please *write* and let me know. Instead of going, I will *write* to him.

(*j*) **To Send** : — I have *sent* for the man, and expect him every moment. If you are desirous to examine the book, I will *send to* my publisher's for a copy.

(*k*) **To Leave** : — When are you *leaving* (*town*) *?*

(*l*) **To Lay** : — Hens do not *lay* at this time of the year.

(*m*) **To Bear** : — These trees will begin to *bear* next year. The floor will not *bear*. If you will *bear with* me a little longer, I shall be able to pay all.

(*n*) **To Pay** : — I will undertake the work if it *pays*. Journalism. is not a *paying* concern in Japan.

Etc. *etc.*

II. TRANSITIVE AS INTRANSITIVE IN PASSIVE SENSE.

Many Transitive Verbs are used Intransitively in a Passive Sense. Such verbs originally denote *actions* which belong to Personal Agents, and are used to predicate them of Neuter Subjects as *properties* : —

Be careful not to *break the rope*. *It breaks* easily.
They *sell the book* very dear. But *it sells* very well.
I will *carry the bundle* for you. *It carries* quite easily.
We *cook meat*. *Meat cooks* quickly.

We *heat water*. *Water heats* slowly
Have you *eaten this cake?* How *does it eat?*
I *drink this wine*. *It drinks* very well.
Do you *smoke these cigars?* How *do they smoke?*
Keep the fish in a cool place. *It will not keep* long.
We *wear this cloth* in summer. *It wears* very well.
Can you *wash this stuff?* *It washes* well.
I *read this paper*. *It reads* very well.
I have *compared the book* with several others. — How *do they compare?* — *This one compares* favourably with any of its kind.
Etc. *etc.*

(1) **The INCOMPLETE VERBS** relating to the five senses [*look, feel, taste, smell, sound*] are really transitive verbs used in a passive sense. The action which originally belongs to the personal subject, is predicated of the object as a property : —

(*a*) **To Look** : — { I *look* at the flower. / It *looks* very pretty.
(*b*) **To Taste** : — { I *taste* the fruit. / It *tastes* sour.
(*c*) **To Smell** : — { I *smell* the flower. / It *smells* sweet.
(*d*) **To Feel** : — { We *feel* things with our fingers. / Things *feel* smooth or rough.
(*e*) **To Sound** : — { I *sound* an expression. / It *sounds* familiar or strange.

Note : — Many Verbs used in a Passive Sense may be followed by *like* : — How does he *look like?* He *looks like* an actor. I *felt like* crying. Sake *tastes* (*drinks*) *like* sherry. The statement *reads like* a fiction. Japanese tobacco *smokes like* Turkish.

(2) **The VERBS OF MEASURE** [*measure, count, number, weigh*], when used as incomplete verbs followed by the adverbial objective of measure as complement, are really transitive verbs used in a passive sense : —

(*a*) **To Measure** : — { We *measured* the length of the ship. / It *measured* 300 ft. in length.
(*b*) **To Count** : — { *Count* the mistakes. / Each mistake *counts* for one.
(*c*) **To Number** : — { The captain *numbered* his men. / They *numbered* 500 in all.
(*d*) **To Weigh** : — { I *weighed* the fish. / It *weighed* six pounds.

(3) **The ACTIVE PARTICIPLE** is often used in a Passive Sense : —

{ They were *firing* guns. / Guns were *firing* (= being fired).
{ They were *beating* drums. / Drums were *beating* (= being beaten).

This apparently passive use of active participles is to be traced to a gerundive use of the form in **-ing** : —

The house is *building* (= *a-building, in building*).
(Compare : — The temple was forty years *in building*.)

The meanings of the following participial adjectives are to be traced to the passive use : —

(*a*) **Wanting** : — { We still *want* many things. / Many things are still *wanting*.
(*b*) **Missing** : — { When I woke up, I *missed* my watch. / My purse was also *missing*.
(*c*) **Owing** : — { He *owes* his success to good luck. / His success is *owing* to good luck.

III. TRANSITIVE AS INTRANSITIVE IN REFLEXIVE SENSE.

Such verbs as *feed, dress, hide*, etc., which are originally transitive, are used intransitively, with the reflexive object understood : —

A man *dresses* (*himself*) well or ill.
A horse *feeds* (*itself*) on grass.
The lions *hide* (*themselves*) among the rocks.
He *indulges* (*himself*) too freely in wine.

Such verbs as *engage, delight, rejoice, grieve, tire*, etc., are originally transitive, and are used either in the Passive, or in the Active with the Reflexive Object omitted. Compare : —

{ He *is engaged* in business. / On leaving school he *engaged* (*himself*) in business.
{ I *am delighted* with this novel. / I *delight* (*myself*) in novels.
{ I *am rejoiced* to hear of your success. / I *rejoice* (*myself*) to hear of your success.
{ I *am grieved* to hear of your conduct. / I *grieve* (*myself*) to fear of your conduct.
{ I never *get tired* of reading Shakespeare. / I never *tire* (*myself*) of reading Shakespeare.

The following verbs are originally Transitive, and, when used as Intransitive, have always the Reflexive Object understood : —

(*a*) **To Get :** — I have *got* into a scrape. I can not *get* out of my difficulties. I could not *get* near the fire on account of the crowd. The train had started before I *got* to the station. I could not *get in* at the door. The poor people could not *get out*, and were burnt to death. I felt so dizzy that I could not *get up*. The ladder having been taking away, we could not *get down*. How are you *getting along* with your studies? I fear he will never *get on* in the world. I was glad to *get off* so easily. I can not *get over* the difficulty. I will go with you as soon as I *get through* with my task. Why did you *get angry?* You must not *get wet*. I hope you will soon *get well*. You will soon *get used* to your work. You must not *get drunk*. I want to *get shaved*.

(*b*) **To Keep :** — You must *keep to* the terms of the contract. I could not *keep from* laughter. He always *keeps* [*to*] *his word*. I have a severe cold, and must *keep* [*to*] *my bed*. *Keep still*, and the bees will not sting you. How does he manage to *keep alive?* You must *keep awake*. There being no seat left, I *kept standing* all the time. The baby *kept crying* and the dog *kept barking* all night. The sun is hot, so you must *keep in the shade*. You have a fever, so you must *keep indoors*. I wonder how you manage to *keep out of debt*.

(*c*) **To Hold :** — One of the ropes broke; the other *held*. *Hold on* for your lives! The besieged *held out* for a month. If the bank *holds out* three months longer, it will escape failure. Few men can *hold up* under such misfortunes.

(*d*) **To Bear :** — It is hard to *bear up* under such affliction. The misfortune will *bear hard on* him. The gun did not *bear on* the fort. The fort was situated so high up that they could not bring their gun to *bear upon* it. How does your remark *bear on* the matter in question?

(*e*) **To Wear :** — This cloth will *wear thin*. His stock of money began to *wear low*. Rubber boots do not *wear out*. The follies of youth will *wear off* with age. The difference of age will *wear away*. The rope is *wearing through*. As time *wore on*, they began to show signs of impatience.

(*f*) **To Set :** — The sun has *set*. I bade adieu to my paternal roof, and *set out* for Tokyo. The northern navigation is over, now the cold weather has *set in*. He *set up* in business some time ago. He kept a carriage, and *set up for* a gentleman. I will *set about* it at once. I *set to work* to solve the problem.

(*g*) **To Put :** — We *put up* at an inn. As we live so remote from towns, you will have to *put up with* poor fare. The ship is not in a condition to *put to sea*. A boat was seen to *put off* from the shore. The ship was forced by stress of weather to *put in* at Hakodate.

(*h*) **To Make :** — I will go and see for myself, to *make sure* of the fact. May I *make* so *bold* as to ask the favour? The soldiers entered the houses of the people, and *made free* with the wine and eatables. They ate and drank, and *made merry*. I was angry with them, for they *made merry* over my mishap.

(*i*) **To Take :** — Having no other resource, I *took to* teaching. The ship was so badly injured that all who could, *took to* the boats. People of weak constitution seem to *take to* study naturally. The English people *take kindly to* the sea.

(α) ***To take to the road*** = *become a highwayman.*
(β) ***To take to the stage*** = *to become an actor.*
(γ) ***To take to one's heels*** = *to take (to) flight.*

(*j*) **To Show :** — Oil paintings *show* best at a distance. A faint light began to *show* in the east. It is the anxiety to *show off* that makes young speakers so unnatural.

EXERCISE : — *Paraphrase the verbs marked, and state in what sense they are used intransitively.*

(α) I have known stranger things *brought to bear*. He *brought* all his extensive learning *to bear* on the subject. I saw him *making* for his cabin. The servant *made off* with his master's money. How does the new novel *take?* I feel myself getting old; hard work begins to *tell* on me. The peculiarity of diction rather *adds* to, than *takes* from, the charm of his style. The day begins to *gain* on the night. These apples will not *keep* long. These nails will not *hold*. The floor will not *bear*.

(β) While this ballad was *reading*, Sophia seemed to mix an air of tenderness with her approbation. — *Goldsmith*. If the cakes at tea *ate* short and crisp, they were made by Olivia. — *Goldsmith*. I can well spare him; he really *counts for nothing* in the establishment. The book *reads* like a novel. Some papers are *missing*. There can be no friendship where mutual respect is *wanting*. Long coats are *wearing* now. This cloth will *wear* thin. Dinner is *getting* ready.

(γ) Salted fish *keeps* longer than fresh. I could not *keep* awake during the sermon. You must *keep* to the terms of the contract. The boy *takes kindly to* his books. I *delight* in romances. When I leave school, I mean to *engage* in business. The Sumida *empties* into the Bay of Tokyo. Great preparations are *making* for the festivities.

(δ) When shall I be able *to do without* a dictionary? He may *do* for a scholar, but he will never *do* for a soldier. Such work may *do* with others, but it won't *do* with me. The master *made at* them, scattering forms and boys in his career. — *Hughes.* Go farther and *do* worse. The book is *printing.* The letter *read* as follows. The states of the union at first *numbered* thirteen in all. While these measures were *taking,* we were not idle on our part. Do come and taste how the burnt pig *eats* — *Lamb.* The door *shuts* hard. How is he *getting along* at school? He is the sort of man to *get on* in the world.

(ε) I will attend to the business as soon as I *get through* with my task. Always *keep to* the right. One must *keep from* the company of such men. The rule *holds true* in every case. Gold *shows* well on blue. He *takes to* his learning hugely. — *Addison.*

(ζ) Lest you should be led to waste your time upon these pages, I *make* so *bold* as at once to tell you the sort of folk you will meet and have to *put up with.* — *Hughes.* I knew that he would *hold to* the agreement, but I made him sign the paper, *to make sure.* There is nothing more absurd than for a man to *set up for* a critic without a full insight into all the parts of learning.—*Addison.* I chose my wife as she did her wedding-gown, not for a fine glossy surface, but such qualities as would *wear well.* — *Goldsmith.*

Translation Exercise.

(1) 金ガ幾ラ入ルノカ。十圓モアツタラ宜イカ (2) 十圓デハ足ラナイ二十圓無ケレバナラナイ (3) 今日ハ是デ宜シイ (4) 明日ハ用事ガアツテ來ラレナイガ明後日デ宜シイカ (5) 急ギハシナイカラ何時デモ宜シイ (6) 此本ハ參考書ニハ宜イガ教科書ニハナラヌ (7) 君ハ近視眼ダカラ船乘ニハナレヌ (8) 割ニ合フ事ナラ仕事ヲ引受ケヨウ (9) 愚妻事昨夜男子出產母子共健全ニ御座候 (10) アノ人ハ大學ヘ行ツテ如何デスカ (11) 大層好ク遣ツテ居ルソウデス (12) 演舌ヲ習フニハ初メカラ草稿無シニ遣ル樣ニ慣スル方ガ宜イ (13) ペンガ御明キニナリマシタカ (14) ペンガ無ケレバ鉛筆デモ宜イ (15) 火事ト聞イテ人ガ皆出

日ノ方ヘ行ツタ (16) 百發百中 (17) 私モ老イタ少シ働クト身體ニ堪エテ來タ (18) 行クヨリモ使ヲ遣ル方ガ宜イ (19) 使ヨリ手紙ヲ遣ロウ (20) 此ノ鷄ハモウ玉子ヲ產ムカ (21) 此樹ハ來年ハ生リマス (22) 今度ノ本ハ未ダ出マセヌ今印刷中デス (23) 此本ハ賣レマスカ (24) 直段ガ高イニシテハ能ク賣レル (25) 此羅紗ハ見榮エハ無イケレドモ保チガ宜イ (26) 日本出來ノ靴ハ麤イ (27) 西洋造ハ日本造ヨリ能ク保ツ (28) 皆デ十册アルノダカラ未ダ一册足ラヌ (29) 足ラヌノハ何卷目カ (30) 五卷ガ見ニナイ (31) 見エナイ本ヲ探シテ置キマス (32) 死骸ガ十五出タケレドモ未ダ五名丈ハ行衛不明デアル (33) 朝起キテ見ルト時計ガ見エナカツタ (34) 鯨ハ何見タ樣ナモノカ (35) 日本ノ軍艦ハ何處ノ軍艦ニ比較シテモ劣ラナイ (36) 此魚ハ明日迄保タナイ (37) 君ハ立派ナ體格ダ丈ハ幾ラアルカ (38) 何貫目アルカ (39) 此酒ハ偶ニシテハ中々飲メル (40) 落チタ林檎ハ腐リ安イ (41) アノ人ハ殿樣見タ樣ダ (42) アノ人ハ見掛ケヨリ若イノダ (43) アナタハ年ヨリ若ク見エル (44) 獨逸人ハ麥酒デハ如何シテモ醉ハナイ (45) 私ハ轉ンデ怪我ヲシタ (46) 始メハ少シ變ダガ直キニ慣レル (47) 君ト銃獵ニ行クノハ宜イガ間違ツテ擊タレルノハイヤダ (48) 御刈リニナリマスカ (49) 顏丈ダ (50) 眼ツテハイケナイ (51) 私ハ借金ヲシナイ樣ニシテ居ルノガ事ダ (52) アナタハ契約通リニシナケレバナリマセン (53) アナタハ餘リ速イカラ私ニハ附イテ行ケナイ (54) 風ヲ引イタナラ出テハイケナイ (55) 入梅ハ六月中旬ニ始マル (56) 彼ハ東京ニ來ルト大概帝國ホテルニ泊ル (57) 今日ハ海ガ荒クテ船ガ出セナイ (58) 大抵間違ハ無イ積リダガ念ノ爲メ今一度調ベテ見ヨウ (59) 私ハ卒業シテカラ實業ニ就ク (60) 隅田川ハ東京市内ヲ流レテ東京灣ニ入ル (61) 田舍デハ古風ヲ守ツテ居ル (62) 私ハ近頃朝起ヲ始メタ (63) 人ハ無事ニ困ムト飲酒ヤ博奕ヲ始メルモノダ (64) アナタハ此待遇デ我慢スル氣ナラ何時來テモ宜シイ (65) 相談ガ纏ツタ上ハ早速仕事ニ取掛リマセウ

§ 3. Intransitive as Transitive.

An Intransitive Verb may become Transitive in four ways: —

I. With a **Cognate Object**: —
He *lived* a happy *life*.
He *died* a calm *death*.

II. In a **Causative Sense**: —
The farmer *grows* corn.
The teacher *stood* the boy in a corner.

III. In **Combination with a Preposition**: —
What are you *looking at*?
Have you *looked for* the missing papers?

IV. In **Combination with a Complement**: —
We *talked* the night *away*.
I at last *talked* him *into compliance*.

I. INTRANSITIVE AS TRANSITIVE WITH COGNATE OBJECT.

Such intransitive verbs as *live*, *die*, *sleep*, *dream*, *laugh*, *smile*, etc., may become transitive by taking the cognate object, which is either a noun directly derived from the verb itself, or a word of some meaning akin to that of the verb: —

I *dreamed* a strange *dream*. He *slept* the *sleep* that knows no waking. I have *fought* a good *fight*.—*Bible*. He *sighed* a *sigh* and *prayed* a *prayer*.—*Scott*. Death *grinned* a ghastly *smile*.—*Milton*.

(1) The Cognate Object with a Qualifying Adjective generally takes the place of an Adverb of Manner: —

To live a *long* life..... = to live *long*.
To live a *happy* life..... = to live *happily*.
To die a *natural* death. = to die *naturally*.
To die a *violent* death.. = to die *by violence*.
To sleep a *deep* sleep..... = to sleep *deeply*.
To laugh a *hearty* laugh... = to laugh *heartily*.
To smile a *grim* smile..... = to smile *grimly*.
To sigh a *deep* sigh..... = to sigh *deeply*.
Etc. *etc.*

Note: — Not only Intransitive Verbs, but also some Transitive Verbs may take the Cognate Object, as — *to tell a tale*, *sing a song*, *see a sight*, etc.

(2) Some cognate objects are words of different origin, but of kindred meaning, as — *to run a race*, *a course*, *a career*, etc.

Races were *run*. The fever must *run* its *course*. His *career* is nearly *run*. When was the *Battle* of Waterloo *fought!* It was *blowing* a *gale*. He *struck* me a hard *blow* on the head. The bells were *ringing* a merry *peal*. They dare not *wreak* their *vengeance* on me in my situation.—*Thackeray*.

(3) In certain idiomatic expressions, the Indefinite *It* is a sort of Cognate Object.

I am determined to *fight it out* (=fight the fight to the end). Lord Angelo *dukes it* (=plays the part of duke) well.—*Shakespeare*.

(*a*) ***To fight it out***: — If you do fight, *fight it out*.—*Hughes*.
(*b*) ***To rough it***: — He was one of a large family of children, and had to *rough it* accordingly.
(*c*) ***To lord it***: — The whites *lord it over* the natives.
(*d*) ***To slave it***: — We are born to *slave it* for our lord. —*Thackeray*.
(*e*) ***To star it***: — The actor is *starring it* in the provinces.
(*f*) ***To walk it***: — No kuruma was to be had, and we had to *walk it* in the rain.
(*g*) ***To swim it***: — Can't you *swim it?*

(4) In some idiomatic expressions, the Cognate Object is understood: —

(*a*) ***To look thanks*** (=*to look a look of thanks*): — Unable to make himself understood, he *looked the thanks* he could not express.
(*b*) ***To look daggers*** (=*to look a fierce look*): — She left the room, *looking daggers* at me.
(*c*) ***To shout applause*** (=*to shout a shout of applanse*): — The audience *shouted applause*.
(*d*) ***To nod assent*** (=*to nod a nod of assent*): — I asked if he was satisfied, and he *nodded assent*.
(*e*) ***To write a hand***: — Does the man *write a good hand?*

(5) The omission of the Cognate Object is most frequently the case with adjectives in the superlative form used as object: —

The lady was *looking her best* (*look*).
She *sang her sweetest* (*song*) to please him.

Idioms: —

(*a*) ***To do one's best*** (or ***utmost***) = *to do as well as one can*.
(*b*) ***To see the last of anything*** = *to see it no more*.
(*c*) ***To hear the last of anything*** = *to hear of it no more*.
(*d*) ***To breathe one's last*** = *to expire*.

EXERCISE : — *Improve the following sentences by making use of the cognate object.*

The man *laughed heartily*. The woman *sighed deeply*. He *slept calmly and peacefully*. Bachelors *live in a jolly manner*. Most of them *lived long*. He has retired from active life, and *lives in ease and comfort*. The man who was struck by lightning *died happily* after all. Few of the Stuarts *died naturally*. Most of them *died by violence*. I *struck* him *hard* on the head. I am determined to *fight to the end*. He is not popular, because he *domineers* over his inferiors. The man *expired* last night. I will try to *do as well as I can* I *tried as hard as I could* to please him. I shouted *as loudly as I could*. I am very glad to be rid of the troublesome fellow ; I hope I *shall never see him any more*. The man *nodded in token of assent*. He *lived busily all his life*. He early lost his parents, and had to *endure hardship* in his youth.

II. INTRANSITIVE AS TRANSITIVE IN CAUSATIVE SENSE.

Such Intransitive Verbs of Position and Motion as have no corresponding transitives, are used as Transitive in a causative sense. For instance, the verbs *sit* and *lie* have their causative forms, while *stand* having none is used without any change of form in a causative sense : —

Intransitive.	*Transitive (Causative.).*
(*a*) **To Sit** / **To Lie**	**To Set** (or **Seat**) = *to cause to sit.* / **To Lay** anything = *to cause to lie.*
(*b*) **To Stand**	**To Stand** anything = *to cause to stand.*
(*a*) **To Go** / **To Come**	**To Send** (or **Take**) = *to cause to go.* / **To Bring** anyone = *to cause to come.*
(*b*) **To Walk** / **To Run** / **To Fly** / **To Swim**	**To Walk** anyone = *to cause to walk.* / **To Run** anything = *to cause to run.* / **To Fly** anything = *to cause to fly.* / **To Swim** anything = *to cause to swim.*
(*a*) **To Rise** / **To Fall**	**To Raise** anything = *to cause to rise.* / **To Fell** (or **Drop**) = *to cause to fall.*
(*b*) **To Float** / **To Sink**	**To Float** a ship = *to cause to float.* / **To Sink** a ship = *to cause to sink.*

(*a*) **To Stand** : — She *stood* the candle on the floor. — *Dickens.*
(*b*) **To Walk** : — I *walked* my horse up the hill.
(*c*) **To Run** : — They *ran* the ship aground.
(*d*) **To Swim** : — They *swam* their horses across the river.
(*e*) **To Fly** : — The ship was *flying* the flag of truce.
(*f*) **To Float** : — The next tide will *float* the ship.
(*g*) **To Sink** : — The "Naniwa" *sank* the "Kowshing."
(*h*) **To Work** : — They *work* the horses too hard.
(*i*) **To Rest** : — I laid myself down to *rest* my wearied limbs.

Compare : —

We *rest* from work on Sunday.
We *rest ourselves* on Sunday.

§ 3. Intransitive as Transitive with Prepositions.

There are several verbs which are Intransitive in English, but Transitive in Japanese, as — *look, laugh, wonder, seek, search, wish, hope*, etc. Such verbs do not admit of having an object placed immediately after them ; but as they are transitive in sense, there must be some means of connecting them with the object. It is here that the aid of the preposition is called in, which forms a sort of connecting link between the verb and its object. Such Intransitive Verbs form, together with the Prepositions that follow, a sort of *Compound Transitive Verb*. Note that the Latin synonyms of such verbs are mostly transitive : —

To *look at* (= *view*) anything in a certain light.
To *look on* (= *regard*) anything with favour or disfavour.
To *laugh at* (= *deride*) anything.
To *wonder at* (= *admire*) a person's attainments.
To *speak of* (= *mention*) anything well or ill.
To *think of* (= *remember*) a past occurrence. / (= *devise*) a plan or stratagem. / (= *judge*) anything highly or lightly.

The compounds, being real transitives, can be put in the passive ; which, in fact, is the best test for determining whether the preposition belongs to the verb or the object : —

Everybody *looked at* me — I was *looked at* by everybody.
They will *laugh at* you — You will only get *laughed at.*
People *wonder at* his learning — His learning *is wondered at.*

(1) **Compounds with "About"** : —
- (*a*) **To bring about** = *to cause, effect.*
- (*b*) **To go about** = *to perform.*
- (*c*) **To set about** = *to commence.*

(2) **Compounds with "After"** : — This preposition denotes *pursuit*, and forms the following compination : —
- (*a*) **To run after** = *to pursue, court the society of.*
- (*b*) **To be run after** = *to be much sought after.*

[See "Compounds with *For.*"]

(3) **Compounds with "At"** : — This preposition denotes *aim* or *attempt*, and is used when the action is indirect or mediate. Compare : —

{ She affected to *speak to* my friend.
{ But she was really *speaking at* me.

- (*a*) **To aim at, fire at,** etc.
- (*b*) **To look at, gaze at, stare at, glare at, glance at,** etc.
  Compare : — **To look, gaze, stare — in one's face.**
- (*c*) **To laugh at, sneer at, jeer at, smile at, frown at,** etc.

Note : — When the verbs *look, gaze, smile, frown,* etc., are followed by *on* instead of *at*, they imply the notion of *favour* or *disfavour*. Compare : —

{ To *look at* (= *view*) anything.
{ To *look on* (= *regard*) anything *as*..... or *with*.....
{ He *gazed at* her (long and earnestly).
{ He *gazed on* her (with rapture or admiration).
{ She *smiled at* him (with contempt).
{ She *smiled on* him (with favour).

- (*d*) **To bark at, growl at, snarl at,** etc.
- (*e*) **To wink at, connive at,** etc.
- (*f*) **To hint at, point at,** etc. Compare : —

{ He did not *allude to* his business.
{ He did not even *hint at* his business.
{ I *pointed to* the door.
{ People *point at* him.

(4) **Compounds with "For"** : —
- (*a*) **To wish for, hope for, long for.**
- (*b*) **To wait for, watch for.**
- (*c*) **To seek for, search for, look for, look out for.**
- (*d*) **To ask for, inquire for.**

Note 1 : — When a verb of *search* or *quest* is followed by *after* instead of *for*, it implies the notion of pursuit, and is more emphatic, Compare : —

{ He is *seeking for* employment.
{ Teachers of English are much *sought after.*

Hence *after* is used with the following verbs : —

To hunger or **thirst after** knowledge.
To hanker after riches, etc.

Note 2 : — *For* and *after* express different meanings with the following verbs : —

{ To *look for* anything missing.
{ To *look after* anything requiring care.
{ To *ask* or *inquire for* a person or thing one wants.
{ To *ask* or *inquire after* a person's health, welfare, *etc.*

- (*e*) **To pay for, atone for, compensate for, make up for,** *etc.*
- (*f*) **To answer for, account for,** *etc.*
- (*g*) **To send for, call for,** *etc.*

(5) **Compounds with "In"** :—
- (*a*) **To persevere in, persist in.**
- (*b*) **To engage in, deal in, trade in,** interfere in, *etc.*
- (*c*) **To believe in, trust in, confide in.**

(6) **Compounds with "Of"** :—
- (*a*) **To know of, hear of, learn of,** *etc.* (アルヲ知ル。聞ク)

Idioms : —

(*α*) The only one (the best, none) ***that I know of.***
(*β*) ***I never heard of such a man.***
(*γ*) ***He has not been heard of since.***
(*δ*) He is always ***to be heard of*** at the office.
(*ε*) ***Unheard-of*** = *unprecedented.*
(*ζ*) ***I will not hear of it.***

Note : — *Of* after Verbs of Knowledge refers to the mere existence of the person or thing mentioned, while *About* refers to some circumstance or particulars connected with the person or thing mentioned. Compare : —

{ Do you *know of* such a person ?
{ Do you *know* (anything) *about* him ?

- (*b*) **To think of, speak of, talk of.**

Idioms :—

(*α*) The only one (the best, all) ***I can think of.***
(*β*) ***Not to be thought of*** = *out of the question.*
(*γ*) Nothing ***to speak of*** = *worth mentioning.*
(*δ*) ***To think, speak,*** or ***talk of doing*** something.
(*ε*) ***To think*** or ***speak*** (*well, ill, highly, lightly*) ***of*** anything.

Note : — Compare the uses of *Of* and *About* : —

{ He did not *speak of* me.
But he *spoke about* you.
I did not *think of* that.
I have not *thought about* that.

(*c*) **To treat of, boast of, brag of, complain of, repent of, judge of, despair of, partake of, dispose of,** *etc.*

(*d*) **To accept (of), approve (of), disapprove (of).**

(7) **Compounds with "On" : —**

(*a*) **To speak on, lecture on, touch on, dwell on, expatiate on, debate on,** *etc.*

(*b*) **To think on, meditate on, reflect on, ponder on, muse on, speculate on, deliberate on,** *etc.*

(*c*) **To decide on, determine on, resolve on, agree on, fix upon, hit upon,** *etc.*

(*d*) **To depend on, rely on, count on, turn on, hinge on,** *etc.*

(*e*) **To prevail on, insist upon,** *etc.*

(*f*) **To eperiment on, impose upon, practise upon,** *etc.*

(8) **Compounds with "Over" : —**

(*a*) **To go over, run over, look over,** *etc.*

(*b*) **To think over, talk over, ponder over,** *etc.*

(*c*) **To watch over.**

(9) **Compounds with "To" : —**

(*a*) **To speak to, listen to, point to, refer to, allude to,** *etc.*

(*b*) **To agree to, consent to, assent to, accede to,** *etc.*

(*c*) **To attend to, look to, see to.**

(*d*) **To object to.** (*e*) **To adhere to,** (*f*) **To resort to.**

(10) **Componnds with "With" : —**

(*a*) **To comply with.**

(*b*) **To deal with, interfere with, meddle with, trifle with, tamper with,** *etc.*

(*c*) **To dispense with, do away with, make away with.**

Note : — The verb *look* forms the following compounds with prepositions : — *To look at, look upon, look for, look out for, look to, look into, look after, look over,* etc.

IV. INTRANSITIVE AS TRANSITIVE WITH COMPLEMENTS.

Some Intransitive Verbs [*look, laugh, smile, frown, talk, reason, sleep, dream,* etc.] become Transitive in combination with Complements [*Adverbs* or *Phrases*]. Such combinations generally correspond to the double form of verbs in Japanese : —

To dream one's life *away*. 夢ミ暮ス
To talk a night *away*. 語リ明ス
To reason one *into compliance*. 諷キ服ス

The Adverbs and Phrases most commonly used as complement are as follows : —

(*a*) **Away : —**
To *talk* the night *away*.
To *play away* a year at school.
To *gamble away* one's fortune.
To *sleep, dream,* or *sigh* one's life *away*.
To *laugh away* one's cares, fears, tears, etc.

(*b*) **Off : —**
To *sleep off* one's fatigue.
To *walk off* a headache.
To *work off* one's debt, etc.

(*c*) **Out : —**
To *sit out* the other guests.
To *stand out* a crisis.
To *ride out* a storm.
To *sleep out* the night.
To *work out* a plan.
To *look out* a position.

Note : — The adverb *out* is prefixed to, instead of being placed after, certain Intransitive Verbs, which then become Transitive : —

The child has *outgrown* his clothes. The sun *outshines* the moon. He *outlived* health and happiness. A ship *outsails* another. A man *outwalks* or *outruns* another. The bidders *outbid* one another. The question of expense *outweighs* all other considerations.

(*d*) **Over : —**
To *go, run,* or *look over* accounts.
To *talk* or *think* a matter *over*.
To *talk* a person *over* to one's view, etc.

Note : — The adverb *over* is likewise prefixed to certain Intransitive Verbs, which then become Transitive : —

I shall *overlook* his fault. It is impossible to *overcome* this difficulty. Weeds *overgrow* the garden. A river *overflows* its banks. To *overwork, overeat,* or *oversleep* oneself.

(*e*) **Up : —**
To *cry* or *write* one another *up*.
To *run up* bills.
To *look up* a passage, etc.

(*f*) **Down**: —
- To *ride* a horse *down*.
- To *dance* each other *down*.
- To *shout down* an orator.
- To *preach down* error.
- To *live down* calumny.
- To *look*, *laugh*, or *frown down* anything.
- To *run*, *cry*, or *write down* anything, etc.

(*g*) **Phrases with "To"**: —
- To *sing* or *read* one *to sleep*.
- To *stare* or *talk* one *to death*.
- To *laugh* one *to scorn*, etc.

(*h*) **Phrases with "Into"**: —
- To *talk* one *into doing* anything.
- To *reason* one *into compliance*.
- To *frown* one *into silence*, etc.

(*i*) **Phrases with "Out of"**: —
- To *talk* one *out of his resolution*.
- To *reason* one *out of his fears*.
- To *laugh* one *out of his belief*.

EXERCISE: — *Change the Verbs into Transitive with Complements.*

(*α*) He has squandered his fortune by *gambling*. *Talk* as you may, you can not persuade him to marry. They *shouted* so loudly that the speaker could not go on. *Talk* as you may, I will not forego my resolution. You may *laugh* at me, but I will not give up my resolution. We ought to silence such clamourers by *frowning* at them. I *reasoned* with her, but I could not make her shake off her fears. We have *talked* with him, and brought him over to our way of thinking. You may *laugh* at me, but I will not forget my duty. They *stared* at her, and put her out of countenance.

(*β*) If you can not make a man give up his error by *reasoning* with him, you can make him give it up by *laughing* at him. We must put down calumny by our way of *living*. The child has *grown* too large for its clothes. The gem surpasses all others in *brightiness* (*shine*). Did he *work* too hard? No, he *ate* too much. *Look* for the word in your dictionary. They banished my fears by *laughing* at them. At first he would not listen to me, but I finally made them comply by dint of *talking*.

EXERCISE (*a*): — *Paraphrase the verbs marked, and state how each is used transitively.*

(*α*) The groom is *walking* the horse. The principal *walked* the visitor over the school grounds. Who is *running* the school at present? The fever has *run* its course. East *marched* Tom off, and began showing him the schools. — *Hughes*. The ship ran aground, but the next tide *floated* her. The steamer ran into a schooner and *sank* her. He had *worked* a gun at the bombard-

ment of Vera Cruz. — *Aldrich*. He has *breathed* his last. Unable to make himself understood, he *looked* the thanks he could not express.

(*β*) There he sits, *looking* daggers at us. — *Reade*. She *laughed* him to scorn. The broken soldier, kindly bade to stay, Sat by his fire and *talked* the night away. — *Goldsmith*. He has *run* up bills at all the shops in the neighbourhood. The steamer has *run* down a schooner. I could not bear to hear them *run* our country down. His name headed the list, though his rival *ran* him hard. Beggars mounted *run* their horses to death. — *Shakespeare*. The fleet *rode* out the storm in safety.

(*γ*) The nurse *sings* the child to sleep. The cunning merchant *talked* the young man into the belief that the blade was a genuine Masamune. You can not *talk* me out of my resolution. We *laughed* him out of his scruples. I *reasoned* him out of his fears. Baby lips will *laugh* me down. — *Tennyson*. You will *sleep* off your fatigue. The only way to disprove a calumny is to *live* it down. I will *stand* a bottle of champagne. I can not *stand* such extravagance. I *stand* no chance against him. Peasants and burghers, however brave, are unable to *stand* their ground against veteran soldiers. — *Macaulay*.

(*δ*) They saved the ship by *running* it ashore. I walked barefoot, and *ran* a nail into my foot. It is all up with him; his race is *run*. She was fond of society, and was much *run* after in her youth. — *Hughes*. They *work* their horses too hard. She *smiled* her welcome on our entrance. The man *bowed* assent, and led the way. Many people *sleep* their lives away. This room can *sleep* thirty persons. We must all *fight* our way in the world. It *rained* cats and dogs.

EXERCISE (*b*): — *Change into the Passive.*

(*α*) I must attend to business. We must look to the matter. I have looked for the missing papers. Everybody laughs at him. They wonder at his learning. Who looks after the children? They look upon him as quite a rich man. They look up to him as a sort of leader. They look down upon him as something little better than a servant. People stare at foreigners. The authorities connive at the offence. They speak of him as a good scholar. Do not speak ill of the dead and the absent. They wait for you.

(*β*) You must always act upon this rule. They have imposed upon me. We must adhere to our original plan. We must not depart from it. All present partook of the repast. I must dispose of my house. You can rely on his word. We have not seen or heard of him since. We sent for the doctor. We have added to the building. A carriage ran over

the child. They listen to him with attention. The guide-book does not allude to the place. It does not even hint at the place.

(γ) The book does not treat of the subject. They despair of his recovery. I will only touch on the chief points. I will not dwell on the subject at any length. We must persevere in our course. You ought not to persist in your course. Deal with me as you think fit. Somebody has tampered with the seal? I must dispense with your services. Have you paid for these goods? All agreed to my plan.

(δ) They shouted the speaker down. You can not talk me into doing such a thing. You can not talk me out of my resolution. You can not laugh him out of his belief. I can not reason him out of his fears. I could not bear to hear them run my country down. If you can not reason a man out of his error, you may laugh him out of it. We ought to frown such clamourers into silence. They stared her out of countenance.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 馬ヲ靜カニ歩マシテ坂ヲ上ツタ (2)校長ガ校内ヲ案内シタ (3) 何レ程宜イ船ガアツテモ之ヲ使用スルコトヲ知ラナケレバ無用ノ長物ニ過ギヌ (4) 獨身ノ方ガ呑氣ニ暮セル (5) 死人ニ口ナシ (6) 熱ハ上ル丈ケ上ラナレケバ下ラナイ (7) 黃海ノ海戰ハ何時アツタカ(Sept. 17th, 1894) (8)アレガアノ人ノ見納メデアツタ (9)其人ハ手ヲ能ク書クカ (10)磁石ハ北ヲ指ス (11)人ニ指ザサレヌ樣ニセヨ (12) 私ノ犬ハ人ニ吠エル計リデ咬付ク樣ナコトハナイ (13) 私ハ彼ヲ愚人ト思フテ居ル (14)彼ハ月給ヲ上ゲナケレバ辭職スル抔ト云ツテ居ル (15)英語ノ先生ヲ御存知ナイカ (16) 誰モ思ヒツカナイガ若シアツタラ御知ラセ申シマセウ (17)私ハソンナ人ノ名モ聞イタコトガナイ (18) 私ノ知ツテ居ル所デハ其樣ナ人ハ無イ (19) 彼ハ三年前家ヲ出タギリ其後ノ消息ハ知レヌ (20)苟且ニモ死ヌ抔ト云モフノデハナイ (21)トント愚ヒツカナカツタ (22) 人ノ事ヲ惡ク云フモノデハナイ (23) 皆ガ今度ノ先生ヲ賞メテ居ル (24) 世間デハ彼ノ事ヲ如何云フテ居ルカ (25) 善ク云フテ居ル (26) 私ハアノ人ノ藝ヲ感服シテ居ル (27) 御氣ノ毒デスガ御依頼ニ應ズルコトガ出來ナイ (28) 彼ハ容易スク私ノ依頼ニ應ジテ呉レタ (29)父ガ私ノ洋行ヲ承諾シタ (30) 出發ノ期日ハ未ダ極メナイ (31)アノ人

ヲ傭フコトニハ暑ガ極メタケレモ給料ノ相談ハ未ダ極マラナイ (32) 或吝嗇家ヲ一日殿屋ノ店先ヲ通リ一趣向ヲ案ジタ (33)一旦爲サント決定シタコトハ其ヲ遂ゲル迄ハ死ストモ止ムナ (35)是ハ何ヲ論ジタ本ダ (36) 眞ノ勇士ハ功名話ヲセヌ (37) 私ハ何モ苦情ヲ云ブコトハナイ (38)彼ハ頭痛ガスルト云フテ居ル (39)其樣ナ馬鹿ナコトヲスルト屹度後悔スル (40)人ハ見掛ケニ依ラヌモノダ (41) 中々ノ重症ニテ生命覺束ナシ (42) 何カ賣ルモノハ無イカ (43) 此品物ハ如何ナサル積リカ (44) 輕少ナガラ御受納アランコトヲ乞フ (45) 此問題ハ長クハ論ジマセン (46) 要點丈ヲ簡短ニ述ベテ置キマス (47) 總ベテ成功ハ勉强次第ノモノダ (48)勉强セズニ成功スルモノモアルガ其ハ時ト場合ニ依ル (49) アノ人ノ云フコトハ當テニハ成ラヌ (50) 君ハ屹度來ルカ當テニシテ宜イカ (51) 人ハ皆幸福ヲ求ムル (52) 幸福ハ境遇ヨリモ氣ノ持ヲ樣次第ノモノダ (53) 私ノ云フ事ハ大丈夫ダ (54) 仕事ヲ引受ケサセヨウトシテ幾ラ勸メテモ彼ハ承知シナイ (55) 彼ハ私ニ直ゲ金ヲ返セト云フテ聞カヌ (56) 私ハ是非其譯ヲ聞カナケレバ承知セヌ (57)アノ樣ナ人間ハ世ヲ騙着スルノデアル (58)無智文盲ノ者ハ往々アノ手デ誑サレル (59)彼ハ何處迄モ知ラヌ知ラヌト云ヒ張ツテ居ル (60)アノ商人ハ萬屋ダ (61)教師タル者ハ政治抔ニ關係スルモノデハナイ (62)日本ノ巡査位薄給ニモ係ハラズ職務ニ勉勵ナモノハナイ (63)學生ハ學問ヲ怠ラヌノガ第一ノ務ダ (64) 此事件ハ打捨テヽ置イテハナラヌ (65) 如何カ爲テ置キマセウ (66) 此樣ナ手荒イ事ヲスルトハ一體此人がお前ニ何ヲシダノダ (67) 早ク其時ニナレバヨイ (68) 早ク行カナイカ皆待ツテ居ル (69) 何ヲ探シテ居ルノカ小刀ナラ此處ニアル (70)アノ人ハ位置ヲ探シテ居ル (71) 私ハ又丁度人ヲ探シテ居ル處ダ (72) 英語ノ教師ハ今需用が多イ (73) アノ人ハ金バカリ欲シガル (74) 日本ノ學生ハ餓エ渴スルが如ク智識ヲ求メル (75)先刻誰カアナタヲ尋子テ來タ (76)彼ハアナタノ事ヲ色々尋子マシタ (77)此本ハ未ダ代が拂ツテナイ (78)幾ラ金が澤カツテモ信用ヲ失ツテハ償イニナラヌ (79)御身ニ危險ノ無イ事ハ私ノ生命ヲ以テ引受ケマス (80) 彼ハ學力が無イカラ勉强ヲ以テ補ツテ居ル

(81) 道理デ (82) 遊ビガ動メノ妨ゲニナル様デハナラヌ (83) 英語ヲ學ンデモ英語ガ使ヘナイノハ遣リ方ガ悪イカラダ (84) 悪フ御座リマシタ謝リマス貴意ノ儘ニ御處分下サイ (85) 此字ヲ字書デ引テ置ケ (86) 君等ハ幾ラ笑ツテモ私ハ決心ヲ換ヘナイ (87) 私ハ彼ト語リ明カスコトガ往々アル (88) 漸ク彼ヲ説キ付ケテ承諾サセタ (89) 幾ラ道理ヲ説イテモ彼ニ間違ヒヲ覺ラセルコトガ出來ナイ (90) 一晩寢ルト勞レガ抜ケマス (91) 私ハ病氣ノ爲メニ三年遊ンデ暮シタ (92) 子供ガ馬車ニ撓カレタ (93) 人ガ悪口ヲ云フナラ行ヲ以テ證明スルノガ一番ダ

CHAPTER XVIII.

Neuter Construction.

The chief Neuter (or Incomplete Intransitive) Verbs are *Be* and *Become*. These two are mere copula-verbs, having no meaning in themselves; and other verbs of neuter construction take their place with some additional meaning.

Verbs of Neuter Construction may be classed, according to their meaning, as those of *Being*, *Becoming*, *Keeping*, and *Proving*.

§ 1. Neuter Verbs of "Being."

Verbs taking the place of the verb *Be* in the Neuter Construction, do so either in a *Subjective* or an *Objective* sense. Those of Subjective Meaning are mostly transitive verbs used in a passive sense: —

(1) **Verbs of Sensation**: —

(*a*) **To Feel**: — { *Feel* it with your fingers. / The thing *feels soft* or *hard*.

(*b*) **To Look**: — { One *looks at* anything. / The thing *looks pretty* or *ugly*.

(*c*) **To Sound**: — { One *sounds* an expression. / It *sounds familiar* or *strange*.

(*d*) **To Taste**: — { One *tastes* anything. / The thing *tastes sweet* or *bitter*.

(*e*) **To Smell**: — { One *smells* a rose. / The rose *smells sweet*.

(2) **Verbs of Judgement**: —

(*a*) **To Seem**: — { It *seems* that he is honest. / He *seems*.....(*to be*) honest.

(*b*) **To Appear**: — { It *appears* that he is ignorant of it. / He *appears*.....(*to be*) ignorant of it.

(3) **Verbs of Measure**: —

(*a*) **To Measure**: — { One *measures* anything. / The thing *measures* so many *feet*.

(*b*) **To Number**: — { He *numbered* (or *counted*) his men. / The men *numbered one thousand*.

(*c*) **To Weigh**: — { One *weighs* anything. / The thing *weighs* so many *pounds*.

Neuter Verbs of Objective Meaning are mostly verbs of *position* or *motion*: —

(4) **Verbs of Position**: —

(*a*) **To Sit**: — He *sat* silent.
(*b*) **To Stand**: — I was *standing idle*.
(*c*) **To Lie**: — A book *lies open* on the table.
Etc. *etc.*

(5) **Verbs of Motion**: —

(*a*) **To Go**: — The peasants *go barefoot*.
(*b*) **To Come**: — The boat *came safe* to land.
(*c*) **To Return**: — He *returned* a sadder and a wiser *man*.
(*d*) **To Arrive**: — We have *arrived safe and sound*.
(*e*) **To Run**: — The road *runs parallel* to the river.
(*f*) **To Rise**: — The bodice-maker of Bristol *rose up a knight*.
(*g*) **To Fall**: — Her strength failed her, and she *fell powerless* on the ground.
Etc. *etc.*

(6) **Verbs of Existence and Change**: —

(*a*) **To Live**: — He *lived a saint*.
(*b*) **To Be Born**: — Some men *are born great*.
(*c*) **To Die**: — He *died a martyr*.

§ 2. Incomplete Verbs of "Becoming."

The following are used as Neuter Verbs to denote different modes of *Becoming*: —

(*a*) **To Become**: — He has *become a soldier.*
(*b*) **To Grow**: — The man has *grown old.*
(*c*) **To Wax**: —First he *waxed red*, and then he *waxed pale.*
(*d*) **To Get**: — I hope you will soon *get well.*
(*e*) **To Turn**: — He grew alarmed, and *turned pale.*
(*f*) **To Make**: — A good daughter will *make* a good *wife.*
(*g*) **To Be**: — *What* are you going to *be?*
(*h*) **To Come**: — My prediction has *come true.*
(*i*) **To Go**: — He *went mad* with vexation.
(*j*) **To Run**: — The dog *ran mad* and bit his master.
(*k*) **To Fall**: — He *fell a prey* to the plague.
(*l*) **To Be Taken**: — Some one *was* suddenly *taken ill.*

Note: — These verbs mostly denote modes of *becoming*: —

(1) **To Grow** denotes *gradual change*, as — *to grow strong, tall, old, wise, dark, ripe, tame, uneasy*, etc.
(2) **To Get** is used as a Substitate for *Become* or *Grow*, as — *to get warmer, dark, well, better, wet, used, drunk*, etc.
(3) **To Turn** denotes *sudden* or *violent change*, as — *to turn pale, yellow, sour, turn traitor*, etc.
(4) **To Make** is used as a Neuter Verb of *becoming* in the sense of *being capable of being made*, as — He *will make* a good soldier.
(5) **To Be** is used as a Neuter Verb of *Becoming* when futurity is implied, as — I *will be* a hero.
(6) **To Come** is used as a Neuter Verb of *Becoming* with an Infinitive Complement, as — How *came* you *to know* him? Hence *come to be* = *become.*
(7) **To Fall**: — *To fall a prey* or *victim, fall lame, sick, asleep, calm*, etc.

§ 3. Incomplete Verbs of "Keeping."

Neuter Verbs of *Keeping* or Continuance are —

(*a*) **To Keep**: — I felt so sleepy that I could hardly *keep awake.*
(*b*) **To Hold**: — The rule *holds good* (or *true*) in every case.
(*c*) **To Remain**: — She married, but he *remained a bachelor.*
(*d*) **To Continue**: — If it *continues fine*, I shall start the day after to-morrow.

Note: — *To keep* in a certain state = *to keep oneself* (= *continue* or *remain*) in that state.

To keep still = *not to move.*
To keep standing = *not to sit down.*

Paraphrase the expressions marked: —

You must *keep quiet*, for the child is asleep. You must *keep awake.* You'd best *keep alive.* He *kept at a distance.* You must *keep indoors.* You must *keep in the shade.* We must *keep within bounds.* How do you manage to *keep out of debt?* It is not easy to *keep on terms* with him.

§ 4. Neuter Verbs of "Proving."

Neuter Verbs of *Proving* (= *being found to be*) are —

(*a*) **To Prove**: — On inquiry the report *proved* (*to be*) *true.*
(*b*) **To Turn out**: — The man *turned out* (*to be*) *an impostor.*
(*c*) **To Come**: — My dream has *come* (*to be*) *true.*
(*d*) **To Come out**: — Next morning, the story *came out true.*
(*e*) **To Come off**: — Japan *came off victorious.*

Note: — The verb *prove* or *turn out* denotes result of trial or inquiry, as — *to prove true, false, easy, difficult, successful, fruitless, useful, useless*, etc. The verb *come off* is used to denote a result of contest, as — *to come off victorious, a loser*, etc.

§ 5. Idiomatic Combinations of Neuter Verbs and Complements.

(*a*) **To look sharp** (or **alive**) = *to be quick.*
(*b*) **To look blue** = *to look vexed.*
(*c*) **To stand first** (**second**, etc.) on the list = *to be first, second*, etc.
(*d*) **To stand high** in one's estimation = *to be highly esteemed.*
(*e*) **To stand one's friend** = *to stand by one in case of need.*
(*f*) **To stand surety** (or **go security**) = *to make oneself responsible.*
(*g*) **To lie waste** = *to be uncultivated.*
(*h*) **To lie fallow** = *to be left uncultivated.*
(*i*) **To lie loose** = *to be lying about.*
(*j*) **To go mad** (**lame, blind**) = *to become mad, lame, or blind.*
(*k*) **To go wrong** (**amiss, awry**) = *not to be all right.*
(*l*) **To come wrong** (*or* **amiss**) = *to be unwelcome.*
(*m*) **To come of age** = *to attain one's majority.*
(*n*) **To come** (*or* **fall**) **short of** = *not to come up to.*

(*o*) **To run short (of)** = *to be or become deficient.*
(*p*) **To run mad** = *to become mad.*
(*q*) **To run high** = *to be high or violent.*
(*r*) **To run low** = *to become deficient.*
(*s*) **To run wild** = *to be left without care.*
(*t*) **To grow wild** = *to be found in nature.*
(*u*) **To fall due** = *to become due or payable.*
(*v*) **To get rid of** = *to shake off.*
To stand (*or* steer) clear of = *to avoid.*
To fight shy of = *to avoid.*
(*w*) **To hold true** = *to apply.*
To hold good = *to remain valid.*
(*x*) **To get (*or* break) loose** = *to break from restraint.*
(*y*) **To pass current** = *to be current or credited.*
(*z*) **To bid fair** = *to be likely.*

EXERCISE: — *Paraphrase the expressions marked.*

(*α*) I *went* an enemy and *returned* a friend. The edifice *stands* a monument of his genius. The city *lay* a ruin. He *stands high* in my estimation. The contract *holds good* for another year. Let me know *how the case stands*. *As matters now stand*, a reform is not to be thought of. I like to *lie fallow* and prepare myself for another bout. Whom the gods love *die young*. Do you *feel like* making a trial? I *felt bound* to say something.

(*β*) "Tell young gent to *look alive*," says guard opening the hind boot. —*Hughes*. And well might he be proud, as, but for his skill, poor Harry would no doubt have *fallen a prey* to the fierce wolves. Squire Brown *looks* rather *blue* at having to pay two-pound ten shillings for the posting expenses from Oxford. — *Hughes*.

(*γ*) Though I was perfectly honest, yet no one would trust me; and I was obliged to *turn sharper* in my own defence. — *Goldsmith*. East will *make* a capital officer. — *Hughes*. It was but last week he *went security* for a fellow whose name he scarce knew. — *Goldsmith*. They can not let anything alone which they think *going wrong*. — *Hughes*. Nothing here ever *goes amiss* of nights. Nothing *comes wrong* to a hungry man. The result *comes short of* my expectation.

(*δ*) Polities *ran high* at Oxford. The quality of the goods *fall short of* the required standard. The rule *holds good* with respect to any profession. The man *proved* an easy victim to the schemes of the artful knave. I often thought what a treasure she would *prove* to any one who should have the good fortune to win her affection.— *Marryat*.

(*ε*) Jem and his whole family *turn out bad*, and cheat them one week, and the next they are doing the same thing for Jack.— *Hughes*. The dreams which nations dream *come true*.— *Lowell*. The speculation has *turned out well*. It requires a great skill to *steer clear of* Scylla and Charybdis. — *Bacon*. If a man is base metal, he may *pass current* with the old counterfeits like himself; children will not touch him. Words *ran high*.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 寒暖計ハ日蔭デ九十度ニ上ツテ居ル (2) 君ハ背ガ幾尺アルカ (3) 六尺アル (4) 何貫目アルカ (5) 二十貫目アル (6) 机ノ上ニ本ガ開イテアツタ (7) 北海道ハ未ダ過半ハ荒レ地デアル (8) 彼ハ三番デ及第シタ (9) 子供等ガ皆早死シタ (10) 老人ハ金ヲ殖シテ死ンダ (11) 私ハ心細クツテ泣キタイ様ナ心地シタ (12) アノ人ハ何時モ酒臭イ (13) 此ノ着物ハ麝香ノ香ガスル (14) 此本ハ耶蘇教臭イ (15) 此ハ佛教臭イ語ダ (16) 虎ノ舌ハ猫ノ舌ノ様ニざらざらスル (17) 此羅紗ハ手障リガ柔カダ (18) 此菓物ハ味ハ真イガ香ガ悪イ (19) 日本人ハ洋服ヨリ羽織袴ノ方ガ宜イ (20) モウ一人ノ方ハ見掛ケヨリ年ガ行ツテ居ル (22) 三笠艦ハ長サ四百尺アル (23) 大キイ鰻ハ二三百目モ掛カルノガアル (24) 鴕鳥ハ高サ一丈乃至二間位アル (25) 此子ハ學問ガ好キラシイ (26) アナタガ其様ナ事ヲ云フテハ可笑聞コエル (27) 手ヲ濡サズシテ魚ハ取レヌ (28) 最初ハ骨ガ折レタガ直キニ慣レタ (29) 酔フ程飲ンデハイケナイ (30) 雷ガ鳴ルト牛乳ガ腐ル (31) 其男ハ驚イテ青ク成ツタ (32) 秋ハ楓ガ紅葉スル (33) 西洋ニハ紅葉スル樹ガアルカ. (34) 彼ハ自分ノ黨派ニ叛謀チシタ (35) アナタハ幾度真イ教師ニナレル (36) アレヲ相撲ニシタナラ立派ナ相撲ガ出來ル (37) 私ハ何事デモ不都合ガアルト悪フト打捨テヽ置ケヌ (38) 讒言ガ當ツタ (39) 空腹イ時ニハ不味イ物ナシ (40) 存外ダツタ (41) 金ガ十圓丈足ラヌ (42) 船ガ食料ト水ニ缺乏シタ (43) 印度デハ今ニ虎ノ餌食ト成ル者ガ年々アル (44) 私ハ悪漢ノ謀計ニ掛ヽツタ (45) 風ノ風ルノヲ待ツヨリ外ハ仕様ガナイ (46) 野獣ノ内ニハ如何シテモ馴レヌモノガアル (47) 未ダ全快スルニハ少シ間ガアル (48) 落第ダト聞イタナラ發狂デモ

シナケリヤ宜イ (49) 今月ノ収入ハ平均額ヨリ下ル (50) 彼ハ刺客ノ手ニ掛ゝツタ (51) 喧シイノデ一晩寝ムラレナカツタ (52) 風チ引イテ居ルカラ外出ガ出來ナイ (53) 私ハ如何カ斯様カシテ借金丈ハセヌ様ニシテ居ル (54) 此規則ハ應用ノ出來ヌ場合ガアル (55) アナタハ結婚スル氣カ其レ𪜈又獨身デ居ル積リカ (56) 女房悦ベ悴ガ御役ニ立ツタゾヤ (57) 此ノ男ヲ使ツテ御覽ナサイ屹度間ニ合ヒマス (58) 遣ツテ見タナラ諤ガ無カツタ (59) 金ガ間ニ合ハナカツタ (60) 此書面ハ保存シテ置クガ宜イ後ニ用ニ立ツコトアロウカラ (61) 最後ニ受ケタ疵ガ致命傷デアツタ (62) 投機ガ當ツタ (63) 私ハ政黨ニハ決シテ關係シナイ (64) 彼ニ愚圖愚圖シズニ來イト云ヘ (65) アノ様ナ人間ハ敬シテ遠ザケテ置クガ宜イ (66) 日本ニ茶ガ野生ニアルカ (67) 西洋デハ七年目七年目ニ田地ヲ休マセル (68) 此證文ハ來月ガ期限ダ (69) 馬ガ放レテ怪我人ガ出來タ (70) 今度ノ百合ノ花ハ餘程成功ノ見込ミガアル (71) 歩ク姿ハ百合ノ花

CHAPTER XIX.

Factitive Construction.

To Make is the chief Factitive Verb, but there are several verbs of Factitive Meaning or Construction. The chief verbs used in Factitive Construction are *Have*, *Keep*, *Find*, *Leave*, *Think*, *Call*, *Show*, *Prove*, etc.

Note : — The Factitive Construction with *Find*, *Think*, *Call*, *Show*, *Prove*, etc., is a contraction of the Infinitive Construction.

I *supposed* him (*to be*) dead.
I *found* him (*to be*) alive.
He *affirms* the statement (*to be*) correct.
You must *show* yourself (*to be*) a gentleman.
He has *proved* himself (*to be*) worthy of confidence

§ 1. The Factitive Verb "Make."

The verb *make* is the type of verbs of factitive construction : —

He *made* .... her .... his wife.
He *made* .... her .... happy.

The Factitive *Make* frequently corresponds to the Intransitive *Become*, occasionally to *Be* : —

{ He has *become* rich by diligence.
{ Diligence has *made* him rich.
{ Why *is* he so useful to you?
{ What *makes* him so useful to you?

Exercise : — *Use the factitive "make."*

Can't you let it *be* cheaper? Let it *be* 50 yen. Well, it shall *be* 50 yen. You shall *be* the companion of my travels. Why *are* you always so late? He *became* a favourite with his master by his honesty. If you aid me, my success will *be* certain. The reinforcement arrived, and success *was* certain. Why *is* it so difficult to master English? I *am* anxious at the long delay. It is all owing to him that I have *become* what I am.

Idiomatic Factitive Construction : — The factitive *make* has an idiomatic construction, in which the positions of the object and the complement are inverted : —

The mind is its own place, and in itself.
Can *make a heaven of hell, a hell of heaven.* — *Milton.*

The idiomatic construction with *of* (= *out of*) corresponds to the construction of make with *into*, and generally implies some sort of effort : —

{ She *made* it *into* a workbox.
{ She *made* a workbox (*out*) *of* it.

Compare : —

{ I will *make* him my companion.
{ I will *make* a man (*out*) *of* him.

Sometimes the construction is purely idiomatic : —

{ I *make it a rule to side* with the weaker party.
{ I *make a point of siding* with the weaker party.

Exercise : — *Paraphrase the expressions marked.*

(α) The rain always *made a point of* setting in just as he had some outdoor work to do. — *Irving.* I will *make an example of* the first offender I catch. He has *made a study of* Shakespeare. He *makes no secret of* the matter. On the contrary, he *makes a boast of* it. It is bad taste *to make a display* of one's learning. She resolved to *make a clean breast of* the matter before she died. I *make no doubt of* your succeeding.

(β) If you want the book, I will *make* you *a present of* a copy. He has *made ducks and drakes of* his fortune. If you trust him, he will *make a fool of* you. He *makes fun of* everything I say. The royal troops *made short work of* the insurgents. I have only a little time left, and I must *make the most of* it. If this be treason, *make the most of* it.

(*γ*) If you have to do anything you do not like, *make a virtue of necessity*, and do it cheerfully. He always *makes a mountain of a molehill*. Let us *make a night of it*. He *makes little* (*account*) *of* difficulties. The people *made much of* the returned heroes. She *makes nothing of* boxing people's ears. He *makes no bones of* telling lies. I think my illness was only a severe cold, and *made light of* it. I can *make nothing of* the boy. I can't *make head or tail of* what he says. I *know not what to make of him*.

§ 2. Other Factitive Verbs of "Making."

(*a*) **To Render :** — *Render* me worthy of this noble wife !
(*b*) **To Build :** — Warships are *built* very strong.
(*c*) **To Paint :** — I have *painted* the house white.
(*d*) **To Dye :** — His blood *dyed* the grass crimson.
(*e*) **To Appoint :** — Whom will they *appoint* principal ?
(*f*) **To Elect :** — They *elected* Washington president.
(*g*) **To Crown :** — The people *crowned* him king.
(*h*) **To Create :** — The king *created* Anne Boleyn Marchioness of Pembroke.
(*i*) **To Bind :** — The boy was *bound apprentice* to a blacksmith.

§ 3. Verbs of Factitive Construction.

(*a*) **To Have :** — The Factitive *Have* is the Transitive Counterpart of the Neuter *Be :* —

{ ..... The new school *will be* open in September.
{ *We shall have* the new school ..... open in September.

{ I wish ..... him *to be* my companion.
{ I with *to have* him *for* my companion.

EXERCISE : — *Use the factitive "have."*

When will the library *be* open ? It will *be* open next month. His master liked him *to be* about him. A work *is* ready. My kuruma *is* waiting for me. The watch must *be* mended. The man's head *was* down. There *was* something in the animal's mouth. Shakespeare *is* at his fingers' ends. Let everything *be* ready against his arrival. My hands *are* full. I can not allow you *to be* idle. A visitor *is* staying with us. I am determined that it shall *be* so. We like our relations *to be* near us when we are sick. I like everything *to be* in good order. I should like him *to be* my friend.

Note : — The factitive *have*, when joined as a participle to a principal statement, usually gives way to the preposition *with :* —

He stood { (He back *was* against the wall.)
{ (He *had* his back against the wall.)
{ *with* (= *having*) his back against the wall.

EXERCISE : — *Make use of the preposition "with."*

She followed her guide ; her head *was* down. She stood ; she *had* her eyes fixed on the ground. She looked in his face : tears *were* streaming down her face. The wolf slunk away ; its tail *was* between its legs. He was sitting ; he *had* his elbows resting on his knees. The servant found Sir Isaac standing before the fire ; the egg *was* in his hand ; his watch *was* boiling in the saucepan. We were rushing across a plain ; Mt. Fuji *was* seen to the west. He was standing ; his hands *were* in his pockets. A man came along ; a gun *was* on his shoulder. Another man came along ; a heavy burden *was* on his back. A third man came along ; a book *was* under his arm.

(*b*) **To Keep :** — The factitive *Keep* means *to cause to continue in some state :* —

Keep the window opon.= { Let it continue open.
{ Do not shut it.

Keep the door shut.= { Let it continue shut.
{ Do not open it.

EXERCISE : —*Use the factitive "keep."*

Do not let the dinner become cold. Do not let the matter become known. Do not shut your eyes. Do not open your mouth. We wear clothes in order that we may not be cold. This fur coat will not let me become cold. You must not have your teeth dirty. Do not unlock the door.

(*c*) **To Find :** — The factitive *find* corresponds to the neuter *be* or *prove :* —

{ ..... The report *proved* (*to be*) true.
{ We *found* the report ..... (*to be*) true.

{ ..... It will *be* easy for you to learn French.
{ You will *find* it ..... easy ..... to learn French.

Note : — The verbs *see* and *know* are sometimes used factitively in place of *find :* —

I am glad to *see* you happy.
I have *known* the book very popular once.

EXERCISE : — *Use the factitive "find," "see," or "know."*

I have engaged the man, and he *is* very useful. I examined the purse, and it *was* empty. I read the book, and it *was*

interesting. Try the medicine; it *is* efficacious. When I went to her room, the door *was* fastened. When I opened the door, she *was* crying. When I went home, the house *was* on fire. When I went home, my family *were* in tears. When I go to see him, he *is* always at his books. He lived till his son *was* a great man. An idle man *was* never good for anything (to my knowledge).

(*d*) **To Leave:** — The factitive *leave* corresponds to the neuter *be* or *remain*: —

{ ..... The house *remains* standing.
{ We have *left* the house ..... standing.
{ My parents dying, ... I *was* a helpless orphan.
{ My parents dying *left* me ..... a helpless orphan.

Explain the difference in meaning:—

{ *Keep* the door open.
{ *Leave* the door open.
{ How did you *find* your father?
{ How did you *leave* your father?

EXERCISE: — *Use the factitive "leave."*

I *was* an orphan at twelve, and had to shift for myself. My father is dead, and we *are* very poor indeed. He entered the room, and I *remained* standing outside. You have *not done* what you ought to have done. I *have tried* every means. I do not like *to do things by halves.*

§ 4. Factitive Verbs of Judgement.

We have seen that the Factitive Construction with Verbs of *Thinking* is generally a contraction of the Infinitive Construction: —

(*a*) **To Think:** — { I *thought* it (*to be*) strange. / I *thought of* it *as* possible.
(*b*) **To Suppose:** — We all *supposed* him (*to be*) dead.
(*c*) **To Believe:** — *Believe* me (*to be*) yours truly, ...
(*d*) **To Imagine:** — He *imagines* himself (*to be*) young.
(*e*) **To Fancy:** — She *fancies* herself (*to be*) beautiful.
(*f*) **To Feel:** — I *felt* myself (*to be*) bound to say something.
(*g*) **To Deem:** — I *deemed* it (*to be*) prudent to keep it a secret.
(*h*) **To Consider:** — I *consider* it (*to be*) my duty to tell you that.
(*i*) **To Account:** — They *accounted* him (*to be*) a great scholar.
(*j*) **To Esteem:** — I shall *esteem* it (*to be*) an honour to do so.
(*k*) **To Judge:** — I *judged* this course (*to be*) the best.
(*l*) **To Conclude:** — I *concluded* it the only one practicable.

(*m*) **To Regard:** — I *look upon* him *as* my benefactor.
(*n*) **To Hold:** — We all *hold* life dear.
(*o*) **To Take:** — I *took* his story *for* truth.
(*p*) **To Make:** — What do you *make* the sum?

EXERCISE: — *Change into the Factitive Construction, and improve, if possible, by substituting some other verb.*

People *thought* that he was a scholar. I *thought* that he was a fool or a madman. You may tell him, if you *think* that it is necessary. I was perfectly unconscious of the danger; I *imagined* that I was quite safe. She is vain of her charms; she *fancies* that she is still young. He *fancies* that he is an important personage. Every man *thinks* that his geese are swans. He always *fancies* he is ill. His simple neighbours *think* that he is quite a rich man. He spoke English so well that I *thought* he was a foreigner. What do you *think* I am? Do you *think* I am a fool? How old do you *think* I am? I should have *thought* you were above fifteen. What time do you *think* it is? I *think* that the matter is of no consequence.

§ 5. Factitive Verbs of Designation and Declaration.

(1) **Factitive Verbs of Designation**: —

(*a*) **To Call:** — What do you *call* the flower?
(*b*) **To Name:** — We have *named* the child Ichiro.
(*c*) **To Term:** — A transitive verb which takes a complement is *termed* factitive.
(*d*) **To Denominate:** — Adversity has been wisely *denominated* the ordeal of true greatness. — *Irving.*
(*e*) **To Style:** — The kings of England were *styled* kings of Jerusalem.
(*f*) **To Entitle:** — The new work is *entitled* "The Systematic Study of English."
(*g*) **To Clepe:** — In heaven *ycleped* Euphrosyne. — *Milton.*
(*h*) **To Christen:** — The boy was *christened* George.
(*i*) **To Nickname:** — We *nicknamed* him Pepper.
(*j*) **To Dub:** — A man of wealth is *dubbed* a man of worth.

(2) **Factitive Verbs of Declaration**: — The factitive verb *call* has another use in condensing clauses after the verb *say*, which latter does not admit of the factitive construction: —

{ He *said*, "You are my benefactor."
{ He *said* that I was his benefactor.
{ He *called* .... me ..... his benefactor.

{ He *said,* "I am a German baron."
He *said* that he was a German baron.
He *called*..... himself a German baron.

Other Verbs of Factitive Construction taking the place of the verb *say* are mostly those of Infinitive Construction : —

(*a*) **To Call** : — { Everybody *says* that honey is sweet.
Everybody *calls*.....honey.....sweet.

(*b*) **To Declare** : — { He *said* that the statement was false.
He *declared* the statement (*to be*) false.

(*c*) **To Pronounce** : — { The jeweller *said* that the diamond was genuine.
The jeweller *pronounced* the diamond (*to be*) genuine.

(*d*) **To Express** : — { He *said* that he was satisfied with the arrangement.
He *expressed* himself satisfied with the arrangement.

(*e*) **To Own** : — { I must *say* that I am unequal to the task.
I must *own* myself (*to be*) unequal to the task.

(*f*) **To Confess** : — { He *says* that he is guilty.
He has *confessed* himself (*to be*) guilty.

(*g*) **To Profess** : — { He *says* that he is a Christian.
He *professes* himself (*to be*) a Christian.

(*h*) **To Acknowledge** : — { He *says* I am his superior.
He *acknowledges* me { *to be* / *as* } his superior.

(*i*) **To Recognize** : — { They *say* that he is their lawful master.
They *recognize* him *as* their lawful master.

(*j*) **To Speak of** : — { They *say* that he is a good teacher.
They *speak of* him *as* a good teacher.

(*k*) **To Describe** : — { They *say* that she *is* a beautiful woman.
They *describe* her *as* a beautiful woman.

(*l*) **To Represent** : — { He *says* that the state of the country is deplorable.
He *represents* the state of the country *as* deplorable.

Exercise : — *Condense into the Factitive Construction.*

He is *said* to be the best English scholar in Japan. He *said* that I was his benefactor for doing such a trifling service. The judge *declared* that the prisoner was guilty. The teacher *said* that the boy was a dunce. He *said* that he was willing to undertake any work. He *says* he is beaten. He *said* that he

was a physician (by profession). He *says* that his new acquaintance, is a well-educated man. He *says* that the goods are most excellent. They *say* that his circumstances are hopeless. Public opinion *said* that he was a fool. He *says* that he is satisfied with the explanation. They *say* that he is an authority on educational matters. The man *says* that the girl is his child. I have heard it *said* that he is a fine-looking man. I have heard it *said* that he is a fine scholar. He tasted the punch, and *said* that it was excellent. He may he *said* to be a great man. But he can not be *said* to be a good man.

§ 6. Idiomatic Combinations of Factitive Verbs and Complements.

(1) **To make good** = { (*a*) *to perform.* (*b*) *to prove.* (*c*) *to supply or compensate for.* (*d*) *to effect.*
(2) **To make fast** = *to fasten.*
(3) **To make square** (*or* **even**) = *to leave nothing owing.*
(4) **To make oneself easy** (*or* **uneasy**) = *to feel easy or uneasy.*
(5) **To make oneself at home** = *to behave without constraint.*
(6) **To make oneself master** (**of**) = *to master; to become master.*
(7) **To keep in view** = *not to lose sight of.*
(8) **To keep in mind** = *to bear in mind, remember.*
(9) **To leave** (*or* **let**) **alone** = *not to molest.*
(10) **To leave out in the cold** = *to slight, neglect.*
(11) **To leave in the lurch** = *to leave in a helpless state.*
(12) **To leave nothing to be desired** = *to be perfect.*
(13) **To leave much to be desired** = *to be very imperfect.*
(14) **To think fit** (**deem proper, see good**) = *to consider as proper, and act accordingly.*
(15) **To hold responsible** = *to consider as responsible.*
(16) **To hold in esteem** (**contempt**, etc.) = *to regard with esteem, contempt*, etc.

Note : — As the intransitive verbs of position and motion [*sit, stand, lie, go, fall, etc.*] take the place of the neuter verb *be* or *become;* so some transitive verbs of position or motion [*set, put, lay, drive, throw, etc.*] take the place of the factitive *make,* and form idiomatic combinations with adjective or phrase complements : —

(17) **To set free** (*or* **at liberty**) = *to release from confinement.*
(18) **To set at ease** = *to make easy.*

(19) **To set on fire** = *to set burning.*
(20) **To set on foot** (*or* **afoot**) = *to start.*
(21) **To set** (*or* **put**) **in motion** = *to set moving.*
(22) **To set** (*or* **put**) **right** (*or* **straight**) = *to correct.*
(23) **To set** (*or* **put**) **in order** (*or* **to rights**) = *to adjust.*
(24) **To put in practice** = *to carry into practice.*
(25) **To put in force** = *to enforce.*
(26) **To lay open** (*or* **bare**) = *to expose.*
(27) **To lay waste** = *to devastate.*
(28) **To drive mad** = *to make mad.*
(29) **To strike dumb** = *to make speechless.*
(30) **To turn sour** = *to make sour*
(31) **To turn adrift** = *to set drifting, throw upon the world.*
(32) **To turn** (*or* **let**) **loose** = *to set free*
(33) **To take alive** = *to capture.*
(34) **To take prisoner** = *to make a prisoner.*
(35) **To shut tight** = *to make tight by shutting.*

Note : — There are some adjectives which form idiomatic combinations with Incomplete Verbs : —

(*a*) **Alive** : — *To keep alive, take alive,* etc.
(*b*) **Dead** : — *To shoot dead, strike dead,* etc.
(*c*) **Good** : — *To hold good, make good, think good,* etc.
(*d*) **Fair** : — *To bid fair, copy fair,* etc.
(*e*) **Short** : — *To fall* or *come short, run short, stop short, cut short,* etc.
(*f*) **Loose** : — *To lie loose, break* or *get loose, turn* or *let loose.*
(*g*) **Open** : — *To lie open, lay open, push* or *force* or *break open,* etc.
(*h*) **Clean** : — *To wipe clean, lick clean,* etc.
(*i*) **Dry** : — *To pump dry, suck dry, boil dry, wring dry,* etc.
(*j*) **Safe** : — *To come safe, arrive safe, bring safe* to land, etc.
(*k*) **Wild** : — *To grow wild, run wild, be found wild,* etc.
(*l*) **Raw** : — I *like* (to *eat*) it *raw.*
(*m*) **Young** : — *To die young, be caught young,* etc.
Etc. etc.

EXERCISE : — *Paraphrase the expressions marked.*

(*α*) It is said of Angustus that he *found* Rome *brick,* and *left* it *marble.* I'll see that he *makes* his promise *good.* If you suffer any loss, I will *make* it *good* to you. The prisoner *made good* his escape. I owe you ten yen ; so this will *make* all *square.* You may *make yourself easy* (*set your mind at ease*) respecting that matter. You need not *make yourself uneasy* about it. I have ever *kept* my object *in view.* You must *keep* the fact *in mind.* I do not like to *leave* you *in the dark* respecting my intentions.

(*β*) When the next administration was formed, the count was *left out in the cold.* If there is no one to take your place, I beg you will not *leave* us *in the lurch.* The infantry *leaves nothing to be desired* in point of drill or equipment. The cavalry *leaves much to be desired.* I *thought fit* to refuse his request. Deal with me *as you think proper.* Learning has always been *held in high esteem* in our country. I was desirous to be gone, but they said my host would *take it ill,* if I would not stay and dine with him. My brother was passionate, and had often beaten me, which I *took* extremsly *amiss.—Franklin.*

(*γ*) I was afraid of breaking the news to her ; I had no idea that she would *take* it so *easy.* I will *take* you *at your word.* The prisoners were *set at liberty.* The troops entered the village, and *set* the houses *on fire.* A project has been *set afoot* for starting a Spanish school. The slightest impulse *sets* the whole mass *in motion.* I *set* the machine *in order.* He was mistaken, so I *set* him *right.* Help me *put* the room *to rights.* Many preach temperance, but few *put* it *in practice.* I *laid open* the designs of my enemy. Vexation *drove* him *mad.* I was *struck dumb* with astonishment. *Let well alone !*

§ 7. Neuter and Factitive Counterparts.

The Neuter Verbs have each its Transitive Counterpart in one of the Factitive Verbs : —

(1) **To Be** : — The school *is* open.
To Have : — We *have* the school open.
(2) **To Be** : — She shall *be* your bride.
To Make : — I will *make* her your bride.
(3) **To Be** : — I opened the box, and it *was* empty.
To Find : — I opened the box, and *found* it empty.
(4) **To Be** : — How *was* your father ?
To Leave : — How did you *leave* your father ?
(5) **To Become** : — He has *become* rich by diligence.
To Make : — Diligence has *made* him rich.
(6) **To Keep** : — I am so anxious that I *keep* awake of nights.
To Keep : — My anxiety often *keeps* me awake of nights.
(7) **To Prove** : — The report *proved* true.
To Find : — We *found* the report true.
(8) **To Remain** : — My parents dying, I *remained* a helpless orphan.
To Leave : — My parents dying *left* me a helpless orphan.

(9) { **To Seem :** — He *seemed* quite well.
To Think : — I *thought* him quite well.

(10) { **To Go mad :** — He nearly *went mad* with pain.
To Drive mad : — The pain nearly *drove* him *mad*.

Note 1 : — There are some other corresponding intransitive and transitive expressions among the idiomatic combinations : —

[*Intransitive.*]	[*Transitive.*]
To turn sour	**to turn sour.**
To get loose	**to let loose.**
To lie open	**to lay open.**
To lie waste	**to lay waste.**
Etc.	*etc.*

Note 2 : — The Factitive Construction is prefered to the Neuter Construction (*a*) for the sake of brevity ; (*b*) in order to avoid changing the subject. Compare : —

As you know English, it will *be* easy for you to learn French.

(*a*) Your knowledge of English will *make* it easy for you to learn French.

(*b*) As you know English, you will *find* it easy to learn French.

EXERCISE : — *Substitute Factitive for Neuter Verbs.*

(α) In the Twentieth Century, Japan *is* one of the great powers. My father died, and we *were* very poor. When I had paid my debts, I *was* penniless. I *grew* uneasy at his long absence. The school *was* open at that time. When I came here, the school *was* already open. If you take a good night's rest, you will *be* all right. I am trying this book in my class, and it *is* very useful. When I went to her room, she *was* in tears. When the doctor came, the man *was* dead.

(β) The matter *seemed* of no consequence. When he came, I *was* sad, and when he left I *was* happy. They opened the box, and it *was* full of gold and silver. I should like him *to be* my friend. Blue becomes my complexion best, and blue it shall *be*. He was so honest and upright that he soon *became* a favourite with his master. Let everything *be* ready against his arrival. However rich a man may be, he ought not to allow his son *to be* idle.

(γ) The pain was so severe that I nearly *went mad*. Why *is* it impossible to attain perfection in a foreign language? I am reading this book ; it *is* very interesting. It *is* my rule never to promise what I am not sure of being able to perform. If you employ him, he will *prove* useful. If one possesses wealth,

one *becomes* desirous of more. The matter shall *be* a secret. When I go to see him, he *is* always at his study. I have looked over the accounts, and they *are* correct. He nearly *went* mad with vexation.

§ 8. Neuter and Factitive Equivalents.

The Neuter Verbs have each its Equivalent in the Passive or Reflexive Form of the Corresponding Factitive : —

(1) { **To be :** — The woman *was* with child.
To be found : — The woman *was found* with child.

(2) { **To be :** — I *was* rolling in the snow.
To find oneself : — I *found myself* rolling in the snow.

(3) { **To become :** — He *became* king.
To be made : — He *was made* king.

(4) { **To become :** — He *became* master of the kingdom.
To make oneself : — He *made himself* master of the ....

(5) { **To remain :** — The house *remains* standing.
To be left : — The house *is left* standing.

(6) { **To prove :** — The report *proved* true.
To be found : — The report *was found* true.

EXERCISE : — *Substitute the Passive or Reflexive of the Factitive for the Neuter.*

If you overwork yourself, you will *become* sick. When I awoke one morning, I *was* famous. When I had paid all my debts, I *was* penniless. When I woke up, I *was* lying on the floor. When he came to himself, he *was* lying in a ditch. He *became* proficient in English by close application. How *are* you this morning? I *feel* a little better. Next morning, the man *was* dead in his bed. He often *becomes* sick by overeating himself. He *became* an orphan at the age of twelve. She *became* a mother and a widow at the age of fifteen. You need not *be* uneasy about the matter. He says he *is* a doctor of philology. I *was* saying over and over, "Four times twelve is twenty-four."

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 天下ヲ取ル (2) 人ニ馬鹿ニセラルヽナ (3) 御心配ニハ及バヌ (4) 御安心ナサイ (5) 彼ハ人ガ善イモノダカラ人ニ嘲弄サレル (6) 彼ハ一日ニ七八時間ノ授業ヲ何トモ思ハナイ (7) 彼ハ出京スルト聖シク私ヲ訪ヲマス (8) お前ヲ一人前ニ為テ遣ロウ (9) アノ人ハ英語ヲ専門ニ研究シタノダ (10) 犯罪者ヲ

發見シタナラ他ノ見セシメニスルガ宜イ (11)學問ヲ見セ開ラカスノハ見ツトモナイ (12)彼ノ言フ事ハ何ダカ少シモ譯ガ分ラナイ (13)此本ガ御入用ナラ一部進呈シヨウ (14)私ハ些細ノ事ト思フテ輕卒ニシテ置イタ (15)御損ヲ掛ケル樣ナ事ガアツタラ私ガ補ヒマス (16)戰時ニ軍艦ハ皆灰色ニ塗ル (17)此外套ヲ着テ行ケバ寒イヿハナイ (18)私ハ車ヲ待タセテ置イタ (19)幾ラ金持デモ子供ヲ遊バセテ置クモノデハナイ (20)私ノ所ニ西洋人ガ泊ツテ居ル (21)隱シニ手ヲ入レテ居ル (22)鐵砲ヲ擔イデ居ル (23)子供ヲ抱イテ居ル (24)荷物ヲ背負ツテ居ル (25)何カ啣イテ居ル (26)窓ヲ明ケテ置ケ (27)開放無用 (28)此事ヲ常ニ忘レヌ樣ニ心掛ク可シ (29)湯ヲ冷メヌ樣ニセヨ (30)身體ヲ清潔ニス可シ (31)此本ヲ讀ンデ御覽中々面白イカラ (32)讀ンデ見タガ餘程六ツカシイ (33)英語ヲ知ツテ居レバ獨逸語ヲ學ブノハ譯ハナイ (34)財布ヲ改メテ見タラ何モ這入ツテ居ナカツタ (35)私ガ行ツタ𪜈ハ病人ハ既ニ死ンダ後デアツタ (36)彼ハ私ガ行クト何時モ勉强シテ居ル (37)此人ヲ使ツテ御覽中々間ニ合ヒマス (38)御國デハ御變リガアリマセンカ (39)物事ヲ半途ニ爲ル位ナラ一層爲ナイデ置ク方ガ宜イ (40)招カレナイ者ハ仲間外レニセラレタ樣ナ氣ガスルダロウ (41)御手際實ニ申シ分ガナイ (42)借金ヲ拂ツテ見タラ一文無シニ成ツタ (43)アノ樹ヲ英語ニテ何ト云フカ (44)皆ガ今度來タ先生ヲ能ク出來ルト云ツテ居ル (45)彼ハ自身デハ耶蘇教信者ト稱シテ居ルケレ𪜈誰モ左樣思フ人ハナイ (46)アノ人ハ學者トハ云ヘルガ眞教師トハ云ヘヌ (47)彼ハ博言博士ト自稱シテ居ル (48)皆私ヲ死ンダモノト思フテ居ツタ故生キテ居ツタノヲ見テ驚イタ (49)アノ人ハ自分計リ殺イ積リデ居ル (50)幾ラナリト宜イト思召ス丈ケ下サイ (51)私ハアナタヲ恩人ト思フテ居ル (52)日本ハ古ヨリ學問ヲ重ンジタ國デアル (53)私ハ榮譽ト思ヒマス (54)己ヲ何ト思フカ (58)アナタハ勿論承諾スル事ト思フタ (55)私ハ君ノ爲メヲ思フテ云フノダカラ惡ク思フテ下サルナ (56)アナタソンナ事ヲ云フト私ハ本當ニ其ノ氣ニナリマス (57)一晩寢レバ癒ホル (58)薄暗ガリデ讀書ヲスルト盲目ニ成ル (59)雷ガ鳴ルト牛乳ガ腐ル

(64)白髮ガ生エル (60)座敷ヲ片付ロ (61)是ハ草稿ダカラ清書シナケレバナラン (62)此動物ハ生捕ツタヿガナイ (63)此ノ動物ハ生カシテ置クヿハ難イ (64)此魚ハ煮タノガ好イカ燒イタノガ好イカ (65)私ハ生ガ好キダ (66)手拭ヒヲ堅ク絞ツテ掛ケテ置ケ (67)水夫ハ子飼ヒニ限ル (68)皆デ幾ラニ成リマスカ

CHAPTER XX.

Dative Construction.

The relation of meaning in which the Indirect Object (or the Dative Case) stands to the verb, serves at the same time as a further classification of Dative Verbs. The Dative Case denotes —

I. The Person **to whom** something is **given,** etc. :—
Give *me* the book. (= Give the book *to me.*)
Lend *me* your knife. (= Lend you knife *to me.*)
He sent *me* a present. (= He sent a present *to me.*)

II. The Person **to whom** something is **told,** etc. : —
Tell *us* a story. (= Tell a story *to us.*)
I'll show *you* the way. (= I'll show the way *to you.*)
He teaches *us* English. (= He teaches English *to us.*)

III. The Person **to whom** some service is **rendered** : —
Do *me* the favour. (= Do the favour *to me.*)
He rendered *me* a service. (= He rendered a service *to me.*)
I paid *him* my respects. (= I paid my respects *to him.*)

IV. The Person **for whom** something is **performed** : —
I'll make *you* a kite. (= I'll make a kite *for you.*)
I'll buy *you* a bycicle. (= I'll buy a bycicle *for you.*)
Get *me* a glass of water. (= Get a glass of water *for me.*)

Note 1 : — Only a few verbs are now used with the Dative of *For.* In Older English, the Dative of Favour could be used with any verb : —

Give *me* the present to one Master Bassanio. — *Shak.*
Heat *me* these irons hot. — *Shak.*
Knock *me* here soundly. Knock *me* at this gate.

Compare : —
{ Open *me* the door. [O. E.]
{ Open the door *for me.* [M. E.]

Note 2 : — The Dative Case also represents *of* and *on* : —
May I ask *you* a question ? (= *of you.*)
He has played *me* a trick. (= *on me.*)

Note 3 : — The same verb may have different constructions when used in different senses : —

I want to *ask you* a question.
I want to *ask* a favour *of you.*

I *wrote him* a letter.
I *wrote* a letter *for him.*

I'll *read you* a story.
I'll *read* the letter *for you.*

He has *left me* something.
He has *left* something *for me.*
He has *left* the matter *to me.*

Note 4 : — Synonymous words frequently have different constructions : —

We *gave* him a watch.
We *presented* him *with* a watch.

A title was *given* him.
A title was *conferred* on him.

He *teaches* us English.
He *instructs* us *in* English.

He *asked* me a question.
He *put* a question *to* me.

§ 1. Dative Verbs of "Giving."

(1) **To Give :** — This is the type of Dative Verbs. It forms several idiomatic phrases : —

(*a*) **To give one notice :** — I have *given him notice* that I shall leave his service next month.
(*b*) **To give one warning :** — I have *given him* a month's *warning.*
(*c*) **To give one credit :** — I did not *give you credit* for such skill.
(*d*) **To give one the lie :** — I *gave him the lie* in his throat.
(*e*) **To give one the ship :** — He has *given* his creditors *the slip.*
(*f*) **To give one the sack** = *to dismiss one summarily.*
(*g*) **To give oneself airs** = *to be affected.*
(*h*) **To give the devil his due** = *to do justice to one of presumed bad character.*
Etc. *etc.*

(2) **Specific Terms of "Giving" : —**

(*a*) **To Afford :** — Your letter has *afforded* me much pleasure.
(*b*) **To Cause :** — You have *caused* me much anxiety.
(*c*) **To Occasion :** — I am sorry to have *occasioned* you such trouble.
(*d*) **To Allow :** — He *allows* his son fifty yen a month.
(*e*) **To Grant :** — If you would *grant* me the request, I should esteem it a particular favour.
(*f*) **To Award :** — A prize was *awarded* him for excellence in English.
(*g*) **To Assign :** — They have *assigned* me a hard task.
(*h*) **To Allot :** — Each has his share *allotted* him.
(*i*) **To Yield :** — This article *yields* us great profit.
(*j*) **To Bring in :** — His place *brings* him *in* three thousand a year.
Etc. *etc.*

(3) **Verbs denoting Different Manners of "Giving" : —**

(*a*) **To Reach :** — Will you please *reach* me that book ?
(*b*) **To Throw :** — I *threw* the dog a bone.
(*c*) **To Pass :** — *Pass* me the bottle.
(*d*) **To Hand :** — *Hand* me a chair.
(*e*) **To Deal :** — He *dealt* his antagonist a severe blow.
(*f*) **To Strike :** — I *struck* him a hard blow on the head.
(*g*) **To Deliver :** — He *delivered* me this note.
Etc. *etc.*

(4) **Verbs allied to 'Give" : —**

(*a*) **To Lend :** — I'll *lend* you all the assistance in my power.
(*b*) **To Bring :** — The man has *brought us word* that his master is coming.
(*c*) **To Fetch :** — Go and *fetch* me my Bible.
(*d*) **To Get :** — Will you *get* me a glass of water ?
(*e*) **To Take :** — I'll *take* him some.
(*f*) **To Send :** — He has *sent us word* that he is coming.
(*g*) **To Despatch :** — You had better *despatch* him a telegram.
(*h*) **To Forward :** — Please *forward* me any letter that may arrive in my absence.
(*i*) **To Write :** — I have *written him word,* informing him of my arrival.
(*j*) **To Remit :** — I *remit* you the balance.
(*k*) **To Return :** — Please *return* him my best thanks.
(*l*) **To Pay :** — I have *paid* him all I owe him.
(*m*) **To Sell :** — I have *sold* him a horse.
(*n*) **To Leave :** — He *left* his son a large fortune.

(*o*) **To Offer** : — I beg to *offer* you my services.
(*p*) **To promise** : — He has *promised* me assistance.
(*q*) **To Set** : — My teacher has *set* me a hard task.
Etc. *etc.*

Note 1 : — The verb *leave* is used in the dative construction only in the sense of *bequeathing*.

Note 2 : — The verbs *offer* and *promise* are used in dative construction as the indirect form of the verb *say* of volition : —

He *said*, "*I will assist you.*"
He *offered* (or *promised*) *to assist me.*
He *offered* (or *promised*) *me assistance.*

EXERCISE : — *Put in the Dative Construction.*

I said, "I will give you ten *yen* for the article." He said to me, "I will get you a berth in my office." I said that I would give him twice the price. He says he will get me an appointment in some middle school. My principal says that I shall have an increase of salary next year. I told the boy that I would bring him a toy.

Note 3 : — The dative verb *set* forms an idiomatic expression — *to set one an example*. Compare ; —

You must *set him an example.*
You must *make an example of him.*

Note 4 : — Verbs of *Supplying*, *Entrusting*, *Presenting*, etc., have two constructions, neither of which is dative : —

(*a*) To *supply* a man *with* money.
(*b*) To *supply* money *to* a man.
(*a*) To *entrust* some one *with* something.
(*b*) To *entrust* something *to* some one.
(*a*) To *present* a person *with* anything.
(*b*) To *present* anything *to* a person.

(*a*) **To Supply** : — To *supply* one *with* any means.
(*b*) **To Furnish** : — To *furnish* one *with* materials.
(*c*) **To Provide** : To *provide* one *with* anything.
(*d*) **To Equip** : — To *equip* one *with* arms and accoutrements.
(*e*) **To Arm** : — To *arm* one *with* any weapon.
(*f*) **To Endow** : — To be *endowed with* gifts or talents.
(*g*) **To Gift** : — To be *gifted with* some rare talent.
(*h*) **To Invest** : — To *invest* a man *with* some office or authority.
(*i*) **To Bless** : — To be *blessed with* plenty.
(*j*) **To Curse** : — To be *cursed with* bad temper.
(*k*) **To Honour** : — To *honour* one *with* a visit.
(*l*) **To Favour** : — To *favour* one *with* a letter.
(*m*) **To Oblige** : — To *oblige* one *with* a reply.

(*n*) **To Accomodate** : — To *accomodate* one *with* a loan.
(*o*) **To Trouble** : — To *trouble* one *with* complaints.
(*p*) **To Entrust** : — To *entrust* one *with* some matter.
(*q*) **To Trust** : — To *trust* one *with* something precious.
(*r*) **To Present** : — To *present* one *with* a watch.

EXERCISE : — *Substitute some specific term.*

Your letter has *given* me much pleasure. You have *given* me much anxiety. I am sorry to *give* you so much trouble. My uncle *gives* me my school-expenses. He *gives* me twenty yen a month. Will you *give* me permission to attend your lecture? The earth *gives* us food. The sun *gives* us light. The cow *gives* us milk. Have you any one to *lend* you the necessary funds? It is the object of the club to relieve the poor, and *give* them food and clothing. He has *given* me letters of recommendation to some people of influence. He has *written* me a letter. *Give* me an early reply. Can't you *lend* me the money? Heaven has *given* man the gift of speech. He was *given* the highest authority in the realm. Heaven *gave* him a good son. Will you *give* me the pleasure of your company at dinner?

The passive of verbs of *supplying* is equivalent to the verb of *possession*, etc. : —

He *is blest with* (= *has*) a good son.
Man *is endowed with* (= *has*) the gift of speech.
A cow *is furnished with* (= *has*) two horns.

EXERCISE : — *Substitute the passive of verbs of "supplying."*

She *had* an undutiful son. I have *received* a visit from him. I *have* frequent headaches. I *have* letters of recommendation to some men of influence. Nearly every respectable Japanese house *has* a bath-room. The infantry *have* Murata rifles. Man *has* reason. He *has* a good constitution. She *has* a bad temper. A cat's paw *has* sharp nails. The town I was born in *had* a good school. He *has* many talents. He *has* an extraordinary eloquence.

§ 2. Dative Verbs of "Telling" and "Showing."

(*a*) **To Tell** : — To *tell* one a story, a secret, or some news.
(*b*) **To Read** : — I will *read* you a story.
(*c*) **To Sing** : — *Sing* us a song.
(*d*) **To Show** : — To *show* one the way, etc.
(*e*) **To Teach** : — He *teaches* us English.
(*f*) **To Ask** : — I *asked* him a question.
(*g*) **To Answer** : — He *answered* me nothing.

§ 3. Dative Verbs of "Rendering."

(*a*) **To Render :** — To *render* one service.
(*b*) **To Do :** — To *do* one a favour, a kindness, an honour, etc.
(*c*) **To Show :** — To *show* one kindness, mercy, etc.
(*d*) **To Pay :** — To *pay* one a visit, a compliment, etc.
(*e*) **To Make :** — To *make* one a bow, a present, etc.

Idioms with the Dative "Do" : —

(*a*) **To do** one **good :** — Exercise will *do* you *good.*
(*b*) **To do** one **harm :** — A little wine will *do* you *no harm.*
(*c*) **To do** one **honour :** — Your conduct *does* you *honour.*
(*d*) **To do** one **credit :** — The performance *does* him *great credit.*
(*e*) **To do** one **justice :** — *To do* him *justice,* he is not a bad man.
(*f*) **To do** one **injustice :** — You *do* me *wrong ;* I am not what you take me for.

§ 4. Dative Verbs of "Winning" and "Losing."

The Dative of Favour is idiomatically used with verbs of *getting* or *losing :* —

I will *get you* a ticket.
= I will *get* a ticket *for you.*
This ticket will *gain you* admission.
= This ticket will *gain* admission *for you.*
= *You* will *gain* admission by means of this ticket.

The following are used with Personal Subjects : —

(*a*) **To Get :** — Please *get* me a copy of this book.
(*b*) **To Secure :** — I will *secure* you a position.
(*c*) **To Procure :** — I will try to *procure* you good terms.

The following are used with Impersonal Subjects : —

(*d*) **To Gain :** — His misfortune *gained* him much sympathy.
(*e*) **To Win :** — The book *won* him a reputation.
(*f*) **To Lose :** — His slowness *lost* him the chance.

§ 5. Occasional Datives.

(*a*) **To Allow :** — Passengers are *allowed* 30 lbs. of luggage.
(*b*) **To Forbid :** — I have *forbidden* him my house.
(*c*) **To Refuse :** — I hope you will not *refuse* me the favour.
(*d*) **To Deny :** — They *deny* me justice.
(*e*) **To Save :** — I did it for you to *save* you trouble.

(*f*) **To Spare :** — I did it myself to *spare* you the trouble. Can you *spare* me a few minutes ?
(*g*) **To Charge :** — Her landlord *charged* her no rent.
(*h*) **To Fine :** — They *fined* me 10 yen.
(*i*) **To Forgive :** — We willingly *forgive* him his faults.
(*j*) **To Remit :** — I have orders to *remit* them their fees.
(*k*) **To Grudge :** — They *grudged* me even my pittance.
(*l*) **To Envy :** — How I *envy* you your good health !
(*m*) **To Owe :** — What do I *owe* you ? You *owe* me 10 yen. I *owe* you everything.
(*n*) **To Bear :** — To *bear* one love, hatred, good-will, ill-will, malice, etc.
(*o*) **To Wish :** — To *wish* one a happy New Year, a safe journey, etc.
(*p*) **To Bid :** — To *bid* one farewell, adieu, etc.

Note 1 : — *To refuse* = *not to grant. To deny* = *not to give.* Supply *refuse* or *deny* properly : —

He said he was obliged to — me the favour. The whites — the natives the protection of the law. The porter — us admittance. I must — myself the pleasure of seeing you. Misers — themselves the ordinary comforts of life. Such a chance was — me.

Note 2 : — *To save* = *to obviate. To spare* = *not to give.* Supply *save* or *spare* properly : —

I will do it for you to — you the trouble. I will do it myself to — you the trouble. I find the man very useful ; he — me much trouble. The master does everything himself, and — s his servant all trouble. I will — you the trouble of going. You may — you the trouble. The new method — s the teacher much trouble. This trouble might have been — d me.

§ 6. Idiomatic Datives.

There are a few verbs which take only the dative case without the direct object : —

(*a*) **To Become :** — The dress *becomes* you very well. Modesty *becomes* a young man.
(*b*) **To Behove :** — It *behoved* him to keep on good terms with his pupils.—*Irving.*
(*c*) **To Befall :**—I am prepared for the worst that can *befall* me.
(*d*) **To Cost :** — This house *cost* me three thousand yen.

(*e*) **To Take :** — How long did it *take* you to master English?
(*f*) **To Last :** — This coat has *lasted* me five years.
(*g*) **To Avail :** — Skill would *avail* us nothing against numbers.
(*h*) **To Serve :** — This room *serves* me for a study.
(*i*) **To Fail :** — My heart *failed* me at the sight.
(*j*) **To Stand** one **in** :—The cloth *stands* me *in* ten yen per yard.
(*k*) **To Stand** one **in stead :** — My knowledge of English stood me *in good stead.*

EXERCISE : — *Paraphrase the expressions marked.*

(*α*) I *gave you credit for* more sense. The rascal has at last been caught, after long *giving* the police *the slip*. *To give the devil his due,* John Calvin was a great man.— *Berkeley*. She *was cursed with* a fool tongue. I beg you will *do me the honour* of accepting this present. It *does* me *good* to see you so happy. A little innocent diversion will *do* them *no harm*. *Much good may it do you! To do him justice,* however, he was always a good husband and a good father. I can not *do* the subject *justice*. The picture does not *do* her *justice*.

(*β*) Will you *make me a present of* your photograph? Circumstances *denied* me the consolation of seeing my friend before he died. He *denies himself* the ordinary comforts of life. You *might have spared yourself* the trouble. I do not *envy* the rich their wealth, which *causes* them so much auxiety. I *owe* you many thanks. They have no sense of the duty which they *owe* their country. She would be glad to die, but for the love she *bears* her child. I *wish you joy* of your success.

(*γ*) His memory often *plays him tricks*. He made faces at me, and *called me names*. You have *led me a dance* all over town. It does not *become* a gentleman to tell an untruth. Too much learning does not *become* a woman. It *behoves* me to keep the matter a secret. A great misfortune *befell* me. He *cost* his mother her life. My tongue *failed* me. Her strength *failed* her, and she fell powerless to the ground. It is an ill-wind that *blows nobody good.* — *Proverb*.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1)自轉車ヲ買ツテ遣ロウ (2)お前ノ爲メニ心配シタ (3)御心配ヲ掛ケテ濟ミマセン (4)御面倒ヲ掛ケテ濟ミマセン (5)アナタハ其ンナ馬鹿トハ思ハナカツタ (6)貴重品ハ亭主ニ預ケタ (7)明日迄品物ヲ貸スコトが出來ナイカ (8)アノ男ハ大金ヲ委セルニハ少シ頼呑ダ (9)私ハ彼ノ歸國スルヰ名刀ヲ一振贈リマシタ (10)彼ハ息子遠ニ月三十圓ヅツ送リマス (11)アナタハ

壯健デ羨マシイ子 (12)アノ人ニハ何ヲ賴マレテモ斷ルコトが出來ナイ (13)彼ハ私ニ職ヲ得テ呉レタ (14)アノ人ノ位置ハ幾ラ收入がアルカ (15)年ニ二千圓這入ル (16)父が宜シク申シ上ゲテ呉レト申シマシタ (17)御主人ニ宜シク御禮ヲ申シ上ゲテ呉レ (18)私ハ中學ノ敎員ニ成ランカト云フテ相談ヲ受ケタ (19)御尋ヲ申シタイ事がアル (20)御願ヒ申シ度イコトがアル (21)今度此樣ナ事がアツタラ容赦ナク罰シマス (22)人ハ目下ノ者ニ模範ト成ル可キモノダ (23)私ノ願フコトヲ叶ツテ呉レマスカ (24)溫泉ハ實際効能がアルモノカ (25)湯治其物ヨリモ轉地ヲスルノが効キメがアルノダ (26)少シ位酒ヲ飮ンダトテ身體ニ害ニハナラヌ (27)今度ノ手際ハ大ニ彼ノ價値ヲ上ゲタ (28)本が御入用ナラ一部進呈シマセウ (29)ソレデハ一部讓ツテ下サイ (30)私ハアナタニ幾ラ借リがアリマスカ (31)十圓アリマス (32)試驗ニ及第シタソウデス子御目出度ウ (33)サラバ道中恙ナク (34)君ハ洋服が能ク似合フ (35)私ハ此本ヲ書クノニ三年掛ツタ (36)其レ丈ケ金がアツタラ一生澤山ダ (37)食フ物モ食ハズニ金ヲ溜メル程愚ナコトハナイ (38)彼ノ兩親ハ食フ物モ食ハズニ彼ニ學資ヲ續ケタ (39)來月暇ヲ遣ルト彼ニ斷リマシタ (40)私ハアナタノ爲メニ迷惑ヲ爲タ (41)誰カ學資ヲ出シテ呉レル人ハ無イカ (42)東京市ニハ玉川カラ水ヲ供給スル (43)面白イ話ヲ讀ンデ聞カセヨウ (44)アナタハ二三年モ米國ニ行クト大層利益ニナル (45)アナタノ寫眞ヲ一枚下サイマセンカ (46)私ハアノ男ニ出入ヲ禁ジタ (47)アノhotelデハ葡萄酒一本飮ムト二圓取ル (48)皆がアナタノ運ノ好イノヲ羨ンデ居ル (49)私ハアナタニ借金がアル (50)私ハアナタニハ御恩ニ成ツテ居ル (51)私ハ彼レニ對シテ惡意ハ無イ (52)彼ハ不幸ニ會フタ

CHAPTER XXI.

Passive Construction.

The combination of *Be* and the Past Participle is not the only Passive Form in English. Nor can *be* be called a Passive Auxiliary,

since it is the Past Participle that possesses the passive meaning. In fact, all combinations of Incomplete Verbs and Past Participial Complements treated of in Part IV., are so many passive forms. Of said forms, those requiring especial attention are the passives formed by means of *Be*, *Become*, *Get*, *Have*, and *Make*.

§ 1. Passive with "Be."

The Ordinary Passive Form with *Be* has two uses: —

(*a*) The Passive with *Be*, in its ordinary use, corresponds in Tense to the Active Verb: —

The door *is opened.* = They *open* the door.
The door *was opened.* = They *opened* the door.
The door *will be opened.* = They *will open* the door.
The door *has been opened.* = They *have opened* the door.
Etc. *etc.*

(*b*) The Passive with *Be* has another use, in which the Past Participle is to be regared as a True Adjective Complement, denoting some state resulting from the action: —

The gate *is shut* (= *not open*); it was shut just now.
The work *is finished* (= *ready*); it was finished long ago.

Here —

The work *is finished.* = { The work *has been finished.* / They *have finished* the work.
The gate *is shut.* = { (not) — They *shut* it. / (but) — They *have shut* it.

EXERCISE (*a*): — *Change into the Active Form.*

The door is not open; it *is shut*. It *is shut* at ten o'clock. Have you the book still? — No, it *is sold*. Very well *done!* This *is done* every day. Your composition *is* very well *written*. The window *is broken*. My knife *is broken*. Your trousers *are torn*. Straw hats *are worn* in summer. They have eaten all up; there *is* nothing *left*. I *am surprised* at your ignorance. I *am convinced* of the truth of your statement. These houses *are built* very strong. Japanese houses *are built* of wood. The lamps *are lighted*. They *are lighted* at six o'clock. The matter *is settled*. She *is* generally *dressed* in black. She *is not dressed* in black to-day. The lady *was dressed* in white. What *is done*, *is done*. *Are you convinced?*

EXERCISE (*b*): — *Change into the Secondary Passive, where possible.*

I *have hurt* my finger. You *have made* my shoes too tight. You *have written* you composition very well. They *have lighted*

the lamps. You *have torn* your trousess. They *have eaten up* everything. They *have left* nothing. They *have destroyed* everything. They *have left* nothing standing. You *have done* very well. Somebody *has broken* my knife. Somebody *has taken* my dictionary. I *have not settled* my bill yet. They *have finished* the work very quickly. Nature *has endowed* him with many talents. We *have not agreed upon* the terms yet.

§ 2. Absolute Passives.

The Ordinary Passive with *Be* represents the subject as receiving the action from some agent. The Passive with *Become*, *Grow* or *Get* is used, when the action is not, or can not be, attributed to any definite agency. Compare: —

{ He *was killed* by his enemy. / He went to the war, and *got killed.*
{ The flour *is mixed* with salt (by some one). / The flour *became mixed* with the salt (by accident).

These forms are therefore called Absolute Passives, and express either an *Inceptive* or a *Causative* meaning: —

(1) INCEPTIVE PASSIVE.

Some Passive Verbs with *Be* denoted continuous states, as — *to be known, be acquainted, be used, be accustomed, be drunk, be intoxicated, be interested, be tired, be wound, be entangled, be confused,* etc. The participles in these combinations are not so much passive verbs, as a sort of adjective complement denoting some states or conditions. When we wish to express an *inceptive* meaning, some verb of *becoming* [*become, grow, get*] must be used in place of *be*: —

To become known.	**To become intoxicated.**
To become (or **get**) **acquainted.**	**To become** (or **get**) **drunk.**
To become (or **get**) **used.**	**To become** (or **grow**) **tired.**
To become (or **grow**) **accustomed.**	**To become** (or **get**) **mixed.**
To become (or **get**) **excited.**	**To become** (or **get**) **wound.**
To become (or **get**) **interested.**	**To become** (or **get**) **entangled.**
To become (or **get**) **discouraged.**	**To become** (or **get**) **confused.**
Etc.	*etc.*

I found teaching hard work at first, but I soon *got used* to it.
Are you acquained with him? — Yes, I *became acquainted* with him in America.

Each of then carried a long web, and when that *gets wound* around a boy or a girl, it is a very difficult thing *to get rid of*.
If your sense of indignation *gets blunted* you forget that you hurt the feelings of others.

(2) CAUSATIVE PASSIVE.

The Passive with *Get*, besides its inceptive meaning (as in *get used, get drunk*, etc.), is also used with a causative meaning : —

I want to *get shaved.*
I tried to catch a bee, and *got stung*.

To get hurt, burned, drowned, shot, kicked, bitten, stung, etc.
To get shaved, dressed, etc.
To get scolded, laughed at, reproved, etc.
To get plucked, expelled, dismissed, punished, reprimanded, etc.
To get rid, acquitted, etc.
To get obeyed, elected, married, etc.
To get beaten, get thrashed, etc.

The causative meaning of the form with *get* is to be traced to the reflexive meaning of the incomplete verb *get*. There are some shades of meaning in the causative use of the form with *get* : —

(*a*) **Direct Causation : —**

To get shaved = *to have oneself shaved.*
To get obeyed = *to have oneself obeyed.*

He tries all he can, but he can not *get obeyed.*
So Benjy tried everything he could think of *to get set up* (= *to have himself cured*).— *Hughes.*

(*b*) **Indirect Causation : —**

To get kicked = *to put oneself in the way of being kicked.*
To get punished = *to put oneself in the way of being punished.*

He went boating, and *got drowned.*
He disobeyed his teacher, and *got punished.*
He always throws himself in the way of *getting thrashed.* — *Aldrich.*

§ 3. Indirect Passive.

A Passive Verb sometimes represents an action as directly suffered by a thing, and indirectly suffered by its owner or possessor. In such cases, it is more expressive to use the passive form with *have* with a personal subject, which is the indirect recipient of the action. Compare : —

My pocket *was picked*.....I *had* my pocket *picked.*
My watch *was stolen*.....I *had* my watch *stolen.*

Note 1 : — *Get* may take the place of *have* : —
I *had* (or *got*) my arm *broken.*

Note 2 : — The Indirect Passive Form is frequently used with Dative Verbs, since the Dative Case denotes the indirect recipient of the action : —

Active : —	..... They	.....**offered** me a position.
Passive : —	(*a*) .....A position	**was offered** me.
	(*b*) I.....	**was offered** a position.
	(*c*) I **had** a position.....	**offered** me.

EXERCISE : — *Change into the Indirect Passive.*

(*α*) Our school *was burnt down* last September. There *was* no water *left* on board. Ten yen is all there *is left.* My work *must be done* in haste. My house *was broken into* last night. Your wound *must be dressed.* His leg *must be cut off.* Your bad teeth *must be extracted.* His head *was cut off.* His throat *was cut.* His leg *was shot off* in the action. Our rights *will be trodden* underfoot. Our innocent sports *will be forbidden.* The country *will be laid waste* by the enemy. Our cities *will be razed* to the ground. Our homes *will be burnt down.* Our wives and sisters *will be dishonoured.* Our children *will be butchered* before our eyes.

(*β*) He *gave* me a piece of paper. My teacher *lent* me the book. My uncle *has sent* me these books from England. He has *promised* me a position. They *offered* him a position in the Foreign Office. They *cheated* me and *sold* me an unsound horse. My father *allows* me twenty yen a month. He *wrote* me this impertinent letter. They *granted* (*refused*) me my request. They *deny* him justice. They *charge* me no rent for the house. The man *saves* him much trouble. They might have *spared* me the trouble. Her husband *left* her ten thousand yen. They *showed* me much kindness. I will *show* him no mercy. They *presented* a sword to the general. He *asked* me an impertinent question. I will *do* him justice. He *made* me a present of a gold watch.

§ 4. Reflexive Passive.

Have or *Make* followed by a Reflexive Pronoun forms a sort of Causative Passive : —

(*a*) "**Have oneself** + *Past Participle*" signifies Inducement (Request or Command), and is equivalent to the Absolute Passive with *get* : —

Have oneself shaved = *get* (*oneself*) *shaved.*
Have oneself obeyed = *get* (*oneself*) *obeyed.*

(*b*) "**Make oneself** + *Past Partieiple*" signifies Effort, and the use of this form is confined to verbs denoting mental or sensuous activities. Compare : —

I could not **make** them **understand** me.
I could not **make myself understood.**

Exercise : — *Change into the Reflexive Passive.*

You can not recover, unless you *are operated upon.* Have you any objection to *being operated upon?* His voice began *to be heard.* I could not *be heard* on account of the uproar. He *was feared* because of his cruelty. He knows enough English *to be understood.* The blind man made himself a scholar by *being* constantly *read to.* I must *be obeyed.* I must *be listened to.* They would not believe me ; I could not *be believed.* You must try to *be respected.*

§ 5. Idiomatic Passive

There are many Passive expressions in English which are Active in Japanese : —

(1) Most Verbs of Emotion are Transitive in English, so that the Japanese Intransitive must be rendered by means of the English Passive (or Reflexive). Compare : —

(*a*) **To please** : — One must *please* one's employer.
To be pleased : — I *am pleased* with my new man.

(*b*) **To delight** : — To *delight* the eye, the ear, etc.
To be delighted : — I shall *be delighted* to do so.

(*c*) **To rejoice** : — A good son *rejoices* his parents.
To be rejoiced : — I *am rejoiced* to hear of your success.

(*d*) **To grieve** : — A bad son *grieves* his parents.
To be grieved : — I *am grieved* to learn of your conduct.

(*e*) **To amuse** : — A trick to *amuse* children.
To be amused : — I *was amused* at the sight.

(*f*) **To satisfy** : — To *satisfy* one's hunger, demands, *etc.*
To be satisfied : — I *am satisfied* with your explanation.

(*g*) **To content** : — A very little *contents* me.
To be contented : — I *am contented* with my lot.

(*h*) **To disappoint** : — I am sorry to *disappoint* you.
To be disappointed : — I *am disappointed* in you.

(*i*) **To interest** : — Politics *does not interest* me.
To be interested : — I *am not interested* in politics.

(*j*) **To anger** : — The measure *angered* the people.
To be angered : — The people *were angered* at the measure.

(*k*) **To vex** : — His idleness *vexes* me.
To be vexed : — I *am vexed* at my own failure.

(*l*) **To provoke** : — His impudence is enough to *provoke* a saint.
To be provoked : — I *am provoked* at his impudence.

(*m*) **To surprise** : — Your ignorance *surprises* me.
To be surprised : — I *am surprised* at your ignorance.

(*n*) **To astonish** : — The news *astonished* us.
To be astonished : — We *were astonished* at the news.

(*o*) **To amaze** : — You *amaze* me.
To be amazed : — I *am amazed* to hear you say so.

(*p*) **To frighten** : — A story to *frighten* children.
To be frightened : — The children *were scared* at the story.

(*q*) **To alarm** : — I see no danger to *alarm* us.
To be alarmed : — We *were alarmed* at the rumour.

(*r*) **To tire** : — He stories never *tire* me.
To be tired : — I never *get tired* of hearing his stories.

(*s*) **To fatigue** : — Fever *fatigues* the system.
To be fatigued : — I *am fatigued* with sitting up all night.

(*t*) **To convince** : — He has *convinced* me of my error.
To be convinced : — I *am convinced* of my error.

Etc. *etc.*

(2) The following verbs are also originally Transitive, and their Passive is equivalent to the Japanese Intransitive : —

(*a*) **To be taken** ill.
(*b*) **To be seized** with an illness, a panic, a desire, *etc.*
(*c*) **To be troubled** with a toothache, a headache, *etc.*
(*d*) **To be afflicted** with a painful disease.
(*e*) **To be addicted** to drinking.
(*f*) **To be given** to boasting.
(*g*) **To be subjected** to some treatment, operation, torture, *etc.*
(*h*) **To be drowned.** (*i*) **To be wrecked.**
(*j*) **To be revenged** on any one.
(*k*) **To be possessed** of anything.

Etc. *etc.*

(3) Some Passive Verbs denote modes of *existence* or *occurrence* : —

(*a*) **To be found** : — Where *is* gold *found*?
(*b*) **To be met with** : — This plant *is* occasionally *met with* here.
(*c*) **To be had** : — The book is *not to be had* in Japan.
(*d*) **To be fought** : — When *was* the battle of Waterloo *fought*?
(*e*) **To be felt** : — An earthquake *was felt* last night.
Etc. *etc.*

Translation Exercise.

(1) お前ハ如何シテ叱ラレタカ (2)此處ハ足ニ苔ガ辷マルカラ危險ダ (3)酒ヲ飲ムモ宜イガ醉フ程飲ンデハイケナイ (4)彼ハ如何シテ怪我ヲシタノカ (5)銃獵ニ行ツテ誤マツテ擊タレタ (6)熱イ茶ヲ飲ンデ口ヲ火傷シタ (7)此書類ガ混ラナイ樣ニシテ下サイ (8)アノ五月蠅イ奴ヲ如何カシテ遠ザケタイ (9)彼ハ犬ヲ喃弄ツテ咬マレタ (10)此事實ハ如何シテ初メテ分ツタカ (11)私ハ英語ガ面白ク成ツテ來タ (12)其樣ナ事ヲスルト人ニ笑ハレル計リダ (13)彼ハ職務ヲ怠ツテ譴責ヲ受ケタ (14)お前ハ如何シテ退校ヲ命ゼラレル樣ナ事ヲシタ (15)奮發シナイト負ケルゾ (16)アノ人ハ先達ノ火事デ家ヲ燒イテ今普請ヲシテ居ル (17)私ノ家ニ昨夜賊ガ這入ツタ (18)アナタハ足ヲ切斷シナケレバナラヌ (19)アナタハ此ノ齒ヲ拔カナケレバナラン (20)彼ハ落馬シテ腕ヲ折ツタ (21)人ヨリ尊敬セラレル樣ニセヨ (22)アナタハ英語デ用ガ分リマスカ (23)盲目デモ人ニ讀マセテ聞ケバ學問ガ出來ル (24)分ニ安ンズル者ハ幸福デアル (25)猛虎ハ何處ニ居ルモノカ (26)此本ハ東京中ニ無イ (27)アノ樣ナ漢學者ハ當節ハ滅多ニ無イ (28)黃海ノ海戰ハ何時ナリシカ (Sept. 17th, 1894.) (29)父ガ私ノ成功シタコヲ聞イテ喜ビマシタ (30)彼ハ失敗シタノヲ口惜シガテツ居ル (31)私ハ其樣ナ辯解デハ滿足シナイ (32)私ハアノ人ガ如何シテ失敗シタカト思フテ驚ク (33) Shakespeare ハ何時讀ンデモ善イ (34)過チヲ悟リマシタ改メマス (35)船ハ大島デ破船シタ (36)人死ガアツタカ (37)溺死シタモノハ一人モナイ

CHAPTER XXII.
Reflexive Construction.

The Reflexive Verbs requiring special consideration are —

I. Verbs which are **Always in the Reflexive Form**;
II. Verbs which acquire a **Special Meaning** when used in the Reflexive Form;
III. Vorbs whose **Reflexive Form** corresponds to the **Japanese Intransitive**;
IV. Verbs used **Reflexively** and **Non-Reflexively** with greater or less difference in meaning;
V. **Synonymous Verbs**, which are **Reflexive** and **Non-Reflexive.**

Note : — Verbs used in the Reflexive Sense, with the Reflexive Object omitted, have been treated of in Chapter XVII.[SeePages 547—549.]

§ 1. Permanent Reflexives.

The following verbs are always used reflexively, either generally or in a particular sense : —

(*a*) **To Avail oneself** (of) : — I shall *avail myself* of your kind offer.
(*b*) **To Absent oneself** : — He often *absents himself* from school.
(*c*) **To Bethink oneself** (of) : — He *bethought himself* of a good stratagem.
(*d*) **To Betake oneself** (to) : — His threats proving of no avail, he *betook himself* to entreaties.
(*e*)
- **To Pride oneself** (on) : — He *prides himself* on his learning.
- **To Value oneself** (on) : — In short, I *valued myself* on being a strict monogamist.—*Goldsmith.*
- **To Plume oneself** (on) : — What business have I to *plume myself* because the Duke of Wellington beat the French in Spain?—*Thackeray.*
- **To Pique oneself** (on) : — We Japanese *pique ourselves* on being the most patriotic nation on earth.

(*f*)
- **To Conduct oneself** : — You have *conducted yourself* nobly.
- **To Bear oneself** : — He has *borne himself* manfully.
- **To Demean oneself** : — He shall not be molested, so long as he *demeans himself* peaceably.
- **To Acquit oneself** : — He has *acquitted himself* to his credit.

(*g*)
- **To Misconduct oneself** : — He got drunk, and otherwise *misconducted himself.*
- **To Misdemean oneself** : — He had his allowance stopped for *misdemeaning himself.*

(*h*) **To Overwork oneself** : — You will make yourself sick by *overworking yourself*.
To Overeat oneself : — He makes himself sick by *overeating himself*.
To Oversleep oneself : — I am afraid I have *overslept myself*.

§ 2. Special Reflexives.

Some verbs acquire a special meaning when used in the Reflexive Form : —

(*a*) **To Help oneself** : — Heaven helps those who *help themselves*.
(*b*) **To Help oneself** (to) : — *Help yourself* to the cake.
(*c*) **To Lose oneself** : — I am afraid I shall *lose myself* among these passages.
(*d*) **To Forget oneself** : — The beggar *forgot himself* and said, "I have been dumb from my birth."
(*e*) **To Recollect myself** : — I was going to tell him all, when I suddenly *recollected myself*.
(*f*) **To Deceive oneself** : — You *deceive yourself* as to your son's abilities.
(*g*) **To Flatter oneself** : — I *flatter myself* that I shall be able to give you satisfaction.
(*h*) **To Thank oneself** : — If you do not succeed in life, you will *have to thank yourself* for your failure.
(*i*) **To Congratulate oneself** : — They were *congratulating themselves* on their providential escape.
(*j*) **To Excuse oneself** : — It is no use trying to *excuse yourself*.
(*k*) **To Commit oneself** : — Officials are afraid of *committing themselves*.
(*l*) **To Assert oneself** : — His genius began to *assert itself* at an early age.
(*m*) **To Report oneself** : — I shall *report myself* at the proper time.
(*n*) **To Devote oneself** : — On his return from abroad, he *devoted himself* to literature.
(*o*) **To Apply oneself** : — He *applied himself* to his studies with great assiduity.

§ 3. Idiomatic Reflexives.

We have already seen that some Transitive Verbs, having no Intransitive Counterparts, must be put in the Passive or the Reflexive form to express the Intransitive meaning : —

(*a*) **To Amuse** : — We *were amused* at his stories. / We *amused ourselves* by reading.
(*b*) **To Delight** : — I *am delighted* with his works. / I *delight* (*myself*) in novels.
(*c*) **To Rejoice** : — I *am rejoiced* to hear of his success. / I *rejoice* (*myself*) to hear of his success.
(*d*) **To Grieve** : — I *am grieved* at his conduct. / I *grieve* (*myself*) for him.
(*e*) **To Content** : — How can you *be contented* with.....? / How can you *content yourself* with.....?
(*f*) **To Addict** : — He *was addicted* to drinking and gambling. / He *addicted himself* to drinking.
(*g*) **To Revenge** : — I resolved to *be revenged* on him. / I resolved to *revenge myself* on him.
(*h*) **To Conceal** : — He *was concealed* in a farm-house. / He *concealed himself* in a farm-house.

The following Reflexives correspond to Japanese Intransitives : —

(*a*) **To Enjoy oneself** : — I have *enjoyed myself* very much to-day.
(*b*) **To Exert oneself** : — He *exerts himself* to gain my confidence.
(*c*) **To Overwork oneself** : — Japanese students are apt to *overwork themselves*.
(*d*) **To Overeat oneself** : — You must not *overeat yourself*.
(*e*) **To Oversleep oneself** : — I *overslept myself* and rose late.
(*f*) **To Give oneself up** : — We *gave ourselves up* for lost.
(*g*) **To Give oneself up to justice** (or **to the authorities**).

§ 4. Reflexive and Non-Reflexive Uses of Verbs.

(1) Some Verbs express different meanings when used with or without the Reflexive Object : —

(*a*) **To Avail** one much or little. / **To Avail oneself** of an opportunity.
(*b*) **To Possess** anything. / **To Possess oneself** of another's property.
(*c*) **To Apply** to some one for information, employment, etc. / **To Apply oneself** to some task with assiduity.
(*d*) **To Prepare** for a journey. / **To Prepare oneself** for an examination.
(*e*) **To Rest** from labour. / **To Rest oneself** after some labours.
(*f*) **To Submit** to necessity. / **To Submit oneself** to discipline.

(*g*) { **To Trust** to one's honour.
To Trust oneself to one's care or guidance.

(*h*) { **To Break off** a negotiation.
To Break oneself of a habit.

(*i*) { **Te Turn** traitor.
To Turn oneself into anything foreign to one's character.

(*j*) { **To Feel** glad, happy, sad, etc.
To Feel oneself flattered, bound, obliged, etc.

(*k*) { **To Prove** useful or useless.
To Prove oneself worthy of confidence.

(*l*) { **To Engage** in business.
To Engage oneself in quarrels or disputes.

(*m*) { **To Associate** with an individual.
To Associate oneself with a party.

(*n*) { **To Join** some person or party.
To Join oneself to the rival party.

Etc. *etc.*

(2) Some verbs, which are generally used with the Reflexive Object omitted, become slightly emphatic when it is expressed : —

(*a*) **To deliver (oneself of)** an opinion.
(*b*) **To keep (oneself) to** or **from** anything.
(*c*) **To guard (oneself) against** a habit.
(*d*) **To strip off** (or **oneself of**) one's clothes.
(*e*) **To dress (oneself)** well or ill.
(*f*) A river **empties (itself)** into the sea.
(*g*) The men **hide (themselves)** behind some bushes.
(*h*) A fire **spreads (itself)** quickly.
(*i*) A crowd **disperses (itself)**.

Etc. *etc.*

(3) Some verbs retain or drop the Reflexive Object idiomatically.

(*a*) { **To set about** doing anything.
To set to work to do anything.
To set oneself to do anything.

(*b*) { **To make sure** of anything.
To make free with anything.
To make bold, make merry.
To make oneself easy or **uneasy.**

§ 5. Synonyms Reflexive and Non-Reflexive.

(*a*) { **To Take to** some occupation.
To Betake oneself to some occupation.

(*b*) { **To Think of** a plan.
To Think oneself of a plan.

(*c*) { **To Hide** behind the door.
To Conceal oneself behind the door.

(*d*) { **To Behave** well.
To Conduot oneself properly.

(*e*) { **To Endeavour** to gain one's confidence.
To Exert oneself to gain one's confidence.

(*f*) { **To Submit** to one's fate.
To Resign oneself to one's fate.

(*g*) { **To Engage** in some work.
To Occupy oneself with some work.

Etc. *etc.*

§ 6. Idiomatic Reflexives with Complements.

We have seen [Chapter XVII.] that some intransitive verbs [*talk, laugh, cry, look, sleep, run,* etc.] are used transitively in combination with a complement [adverb, adjective, or phrase]. Such intransitive verbs are used reflexively in a causative or factitive sense : —

To talk oneself hoarse = { *to make oneself hoarse by talking.* / *to talk till one is hoarse.*

To cry oneself to sleep = { *to cause oneself to go to sleep by crying.* / *to cry till ones goes to sleep.*

EXERCISE (*a*) : — *Paraphrase the expressions marked.*

He will *sleep himself sober.* I *walked myself lame.* He *laughed himself red in the face.* He *coughed himself into fits.* Don't *cry yourself to death.* He *drunk himself to death.* His brother *worked himself to death.* She *worried herself into consumption.* He *laughed himself into convulsions.* I *ran myself out of breath..* You have *talked yourself out of breath.* He has *gambled himself out of house and home.* You may *look yourself blind,* but you will find no blemish or flaw in it. He has no end of hampers from home, with wine and game in them ; so he *toadied and fed himself into favour. — Hughes.*

EXERCISE (*b*) : — *Change into the Idiomatic Reflexive Form.*

He always drinks till he gets dead drunk. I ran so hard that I was soon out of breath. I talked till I was hoarse. He killed himself by drinking too much. You will kill youself by working too hard. No one put out the fire, which went on burning till it went out of itself. I looked and looked till I was nearly blind, but could see nothing. Let him alone ; he will get sober if he is allowed to sleep.

EXERCISE : — *Paraphrase the expressions marked.*

I *bethought myself of* a promise I had made Having no other means of getting a living, he *betook himself to* teaching languages. Be strong, and *quit yourselves* like men. — *Bible.* Let us gird up our loins, and *quit us* like men. — *Blackie.* We must learn to *help ourselves.* When the trader had opened his goods, and was ready to trade, the Indians coolly *helped themselves* to all he had and walked off. You are too much concerned in the affair not to *deceive yourself.* I *flattered myself* with the hope that all would be well in time. We are *congratulating ourselves* on our good fortune. The fundamental truths *assert themselves* before all induction. — *Blackie.* He wanted to *possess himself of* my money.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 有ラユル好機會ヲ利用スル (2) 彼ハ英語ガ得意ダ (3) 無断缺席者 (4) 御膳濃ニ御取リナサイ (5) 私ハうつゝリシテ秘密ヲ洩ラシタ (6) 彼ハ私ノ爲メニ盡力シテ呉レタ (7) 私ハ助カラヌモノト思ツテ諦メテ居ツタ (8) 犯人ガ到底逃ゲ果スコトガ出來ヌト斷念シテ自首シタ (9) 船デハ何チシテ慰ムカ (10) 今日ハ面白カツタ (11) 私ハ金ハ多クハ入ラナイ少シアレバ滿足スル (12) 彼ハ時々食ヒ過ギテハ病氣チスル (13) 彼ハ旅行ニ行クノデ準備チシテ居ル (14) 彼ハ試驗ノ用意ニ忙ガシイ (15) 證文ハ入ラナイ君ノ名譽ニ委ス (16) 私ハ如何シテモ朝寢ノ癖ガ直ホラナイ (17) 私ハ飛ビ起キテ急イデ着物チ着タ (18) アノ人ハ何時モ仕度ガ巧イ (19) 目チ泣キ潰ス (20) 彼ハ聲チ枯シテ饒舌ツテ居ル (21) 子供ガ泣キ寢入ツタ (22) 彼ハ餘リ勉强シテ肺病ニナツタ (23) 彼ハ息チ切ラシテ走ツテ來タ

CHAPTER XXIII.

Impersonal Construction.

§ 1. True Impersonal Verbs.

A True Impersonal Verb is one that denotes an action which can not be attributed to any agent, and is used with the Indefinite Pronoun *It* as Subject : —

(*a*) **To Rain** : — *It* never *rains* but it pours.
(*b*) **To Snow** : — *Does it snow* much in the Hokkaido?
(*c*) **To Thunder** : — *It thunders* nearly every day there in summer.

Etc. *etc.*

There are many other verbs which may be used with the subject *it*, which vaguely refers to the *weather*, *the time*, etc. Such are Verbs of Impersonal Construction : —

It is clearing up. It is getting warmer. It was blowing a gale. It fell calm. It froze last night. *It is dawning. It grows light. It grows dark. It is getting late. It has struck twelve. It wants ten minutes to one. It lacks ten minutes of one.*

§ 2. Verbs of Impersonal Construction.

Compare the Personal and Impersonal Constructions : —

(*a*) **To Fare** : — { *He fared* well (ill).
It fared well (ill) *with him.*

Compare : —
{ *He will fare very ill.*
It will go hard with him.

(*b*) **To Seem** : — { *I think*.....that the story is probable.
It seems (*to me*) that the story is probable.

Note : — Compare the archaic impersonal forms *meseems* and *methinks* ; also —

{ *I thought* .....that it might be possible.
It occurred to me that it might be possible.
{ *I thought it* strange.
It struck me as strange.

(*c*) **To Take** : — { *He took* long to get used to the work.
It took him long to get used to the work.

Compare : —
{ *I gave* ten yen for this book.
This book *cost me* ten yen.

(*d*) **To Behove** : — { A man *must* please his employer.
It behoves a man to please his employer.

Compare : —
{ Young men *should* be modest.
It becomes young men to be modest.

(*e*) **To Please** : — *If you please* = if it please you.

(*f*) **To Rejoice:** —
- I *am rejoiced* to hear of your success.
- *I rejoice* (*myself*) to hear of your success.
- *It rejoices me* to hear of your success.

(*g*) **To Grieve:** —
- *I am grieved* to hear of your conduct.
- *I grieve* (*myself*) to hear of your conduct.
- *It grieves me* to hear of your conduct.

(*h*) **To Irk:** —
- *I am annoyed* to have to do it.
- *It irks me* to have to do it. [Obs.]

(*i*) **To Matter:** —
- *I do not care* whether I succeed or not.
- *It does not matter* (*to me*) whether I.....

(*j*) **To Say:** —
- The papers *say* that there is likely to be a war.
- *It says* in the papers that there is likely.....

EXERCISE: — *Recast into the Impersonal Form.*

I will let you know how *I fare* in the enterprise. *I took* long to master English. What *did you give* for your bicycle? *I gave* a hundred yen for it. One *must* please one's employer. A gentleman *ought not* to tell an untruth. The papers *say* that he is dangerously ill. *I don't care* what I get for my work.

§ 3. Impersonal Uses of "It is."

I. "**It is**" is used in speaking of *Weather*, *Time*, and *Distance*: —

It is fine, bad, or wet weather. *It is* cold to-day. But *it is* warmer than it was yesterday.

What time *is it*? *It is* late. *It is* past twelve. *It is* time to go to bed. *It is* high time we should do so. *It is* never too late to mend. — *Proverb.* *It is* midnight, and all is still. *It was* the dead of winter, and snow lay deep on the ground.

How far *is it* from here to N? *It is* a long way from here.

Note: — "*It is*" of Time forms the following idioms: —

(*a*)
- **It is** a long time **since** he left.
- = He left *a long time ago.*

(*b*)
- **How long is it since** he left?
- = *How long ago* or *when* did he leave?

(*c*)
- **It was** some time **before** I learned the truth.
- = I did *not* learn the truth *for some time.*

(*d*)
- **It will be** some time **before** the work is ready.
- = The work will *not* be ready *for some time yet.*

(*e*)
- **It was not long before** I learned the truth.
- = I *soon* learned the truth.

(*f*)
- **It will not be long before** the work is ready.
- = The work will *soon* be ready.

(*g*)
- **How long will it be before** the work is ready?
- = *When* will the work be ready?

EXERCISE: — *Recast into the Impersonal Form.*

I came here *three years ago.* He did *not* understand me *for a long while.* I shall *not* be quite well *for some time yet.* I *soon* found out my mistake. I met him *only a few days ago.* He left school *a long time ago.* I took the wrong train by mistake and did *not* become aware of the fact *for an hour.* *No* opportunity occurred *for a fortnight.* *Soon* a good opportunity presented itself. The mystery was *not* cleared up *for several years.* *When* did you begin English? *When* shall I get well, doctor?

II. "**It is**" is frequently used to denote any *person*, *thing*, or *matter* in question, without regard to Number or Gender: —

Is that you, Mr. S? Yes, *It is* I.

Who is that? *It is* only the servant.

I thought *it was* I, we, you, he, she, they, etc.

Note 1: — Therefore "*it is*" may be used to emphasize any part of the sentence. Compare: —

(*a*) He left Tokyo yesterday.

(*b*) *It is he* that left Tokyo yesterday.

(*c*) *It is Tokyo* that he left yesterday.

(*d*) *It is yesterday* that he left Tokyo.

In (*b*) and (*c*) *that* is a Relative Pronoun; in (*c*) *that* is a Conjunction. When *that* is a Relative Pronoun, the verb agrees, not with the true antecedent *it*, but with the noun or pronoun immediadely preceding *that*: —

It is not *I that* (or *who*) *am* wrong.

It is *you that* (or *who*) *are* wrong.

EXERCISE: — *Emphasize the words marked.*

I owe you everything. I owe *you* everything. I owe you *everything.* We learn more *by imitation* than by precept. The mind betrays itself *in trifles.* *Want* does not create avarice, but rather abundance. *Work* does not kill men, but rather worry. A man is really free *only when he is alone.* We arrived *very late.* We arrived *after twelve.* The accident happened *here.* *Therefore* I can not agree. *What* do you want? I want *that.* *The beard* does not make the philosopher. I did *not* learn the truth *till the next day.* I learned it *then.*

Note 2: — There is a similar construction with "*It is,*" in which some meaning is implied beyond mere emphasis: —

{ **It is** an ill wind **that** blows nobody good.
{ (= A wind, however ill, blows somebody good.)

EXERCISE (*a*) : — *Paraphrase the following proverbs.*

It is a long lane that has no turning. It is a poor heart that never rejoices. It is a good divine that follows his own instructions. It is a good horse that never stumbles, and a good wife that never grumbles.

EXERCISE (*b*) : — *Recast into the Impersonal Form.*

A father, however wise, does not know his own child. A man, however wise, sometimes makes mistakes. A rain, however long, ceases in time. A workman, however skilful, blunders sometimes.

III. "**It is**" is frequently used in speaking of *welfare*, the Personal Subject being indicated by the preposition *with* : —

{ *Personal* : — *He is* well (*or* all right).
{ *Impersonal* : — *It is* well (*or* all right) *with him.*

Change into the Personal Form : — How *is it* with him?
Not so with him.

IV. **Idioms with "It is" : —**

(*a*) **It is all over** (or **all up**) **with** the poor fellow.
(*b*) **It is a mercy that** I was not there.
(*c*) **It is a pity that** the child is a girl.
(*d*) **It is a wonder how** he could have succeeded.
(*e*) **How is it that** you are always behind time?
(*f*) **Is it that** you are not satisfied with anything?
(*g*) **It is not that** I am dissatisfied with anything.
(*h*) (it is) **not that** I loved Cæsar less, **but** (It is) **that** I loved Rome more.—*Shakespeare.*

§ 4. "There is."

This is the generic expression for *existence* and *occurrence*, and is thus conjugated : —

	[*Singular.*]	[*Plural.*]
Ind. Present : —	**There is**	**There are**
Ind. Past : —	**There was**	**There were**
Ind. Future : —	**There will be**	
Ind. Pres. Perf. : —	**There has been**	**There have been**
Ind. Past Perf. : —	**There had been**	
Ind. Fut. Perf. : —	**There will have been**	

Subjunctive Present : —	If **there be**,....
Subjunctive Past : —	If **there were**,....
Subjunctive Future : —	If **there should be**,....
Subjunctive Pres. Perf. : —	If **there have been**,....
Subjunctive Past Perf. : —	If **there had been**,....
Subjunctive Fut. Perf. : —	If **there should have been**,....

Conditional Future : —	**There would be**, if....
Conditional Past : —	**There would have been**, if....

Potential Present : —	**There may (must, can not) be**
Potential Past : —	**There might (must, could not) be**
Pot. Pres. Perf. : —	**There may (must, can not) have been**
Pot. Past Perf. : —	**There might (must, could not) have been**

Imperative : — **Let there be.** *Participle* / *Gerund* : — **There being**
Infinitive : — **There....to be.**

Note : — The quantitative predicate in Japanese (何ガ有ル。無イ。多イ。少ナイ。etc.) is generally to be translated into "*there is*," especially when the principal statement contains a negative : —

There is nothing that can not be conquered by perseverance.

There are many things that can not be conquered by perseverance alone.

EXERCISE : — *Change into the Impersonal Construction with "There is."*

Few Japanese speak English so well as he. Many of those men do not know how to read or write. Several people will receive a severe blow from the new law. I want to have a few things in the book altered. Many would have been glad to have accepted the offer. A few of the members did not consent to the proposal. Several of us have been there. Many people would be glad of such an opportunity.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

(1) 未ダ降ツテ居マスカ (2) 晴レマシタ (3) 運ク成ルカラ歸ラウデハナイカ (4) 今九時打ツタ計リダ未ダ早イ (5) 大風ガ吹イテ船ハ前後左右ニ搖レタ (6) 其ノ時ハ丁度日曜デ稽古ガナカツタ (7) 英語ヲ御始メニ成ツテカラ幾年ニ成リマスカ (8) 六年ニ成リマス (9) 新築ガ落成ニハ未ダ中々間ガアリマス (10) 暫クシテ漸ク其男ノ云フ事ガ分ツタ (11) 彼ハ一時間程立ツテ漸ク來タ (12) 議會ガ開ケテカラモウ十年以上ニ成ル (13) 病氣ハモウ大概宜シイガ全快ニハ未ダ少シ間ガ掛ル (14) 程久シカラズシテ好機會ガアツタ (15) 最初ハ中々骨ガ折

レマシタガ二三年掛ツテ漸ク慣レテ來マシタ (16) 一時間時一
以上經ツテ漸ク間遠ニ氣ガ付イタ (17) 御入用ナノハ何本デス
カ (18) 彼ニ會フタノハ一昨日デシタ (19) 彼ガ死ンダノハ三
年前ダ (20) 彼ガ死ンデカラモウ三年ニ成ル (21) 著イタノハ
一時過ギデアツタ (22) 彼ノ成功ハ抑モ放アルカナ (23) ヤツ
ト近頃遣ツタ計リダモノ (24) 其翌日初メテ本當ノ事ガ分カ
ツタ (25) 弘法モ筆ノ過リ (26) 如何云フモノデアノ人ハ何事
ニモ成功出來ヌノダロウ (27) 私ハ仕事ガ氣ニ入ラヌト云フ
譯デハナイガ直段ガ餘リ安イ (28) 今日天氣ノ能クナイノハ如何
ニモ殘念ナ事ダ (29) アノ男ハモウ駄目ダ (30) 語學ヲ充分
ニ修メルニハ多年ヲ要スル (31) 新聞ニ知事ガ辭職シタト出
テ居ル (32) 此評判ガ本當デアロウト無カロウト私ハ構ハヌ
(33) 今月ハ火事ガ少ナカツタ (34) 今ノ學生ニハ英語ヲ知ラヌ
モノハ殆ト無イ (35) 今度ノ改革ニ不平ヲ抱イテ居ルモノガ
多イ

THE END.